

#### Colloquial

### **Finnish**

Colloquial Finnish is easy to use and completely up to date!

Specially written by an experienced teacher for self-study or class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Finnish. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes this new edition of *Colloquial Finnish* your best choice in personal language learning?

- Interactive lots of exercises for regular practice
- Clear concise grammar notes
- Practical useful vocabulary and pronunciation guide
- Complete including answer key and reference section

Whether you're a business traveller, or about to take up a daring challenge in adventure tourism; you may be studying to teach or even looking forward to a holiday – if you'd like to get up and running with Finnish, this rewarding course will take you from complete beginner to confidently putting your language skills to use in a wide range of everyday situations.

Accompanying audio material is available to purchase separately on two CDs or in MP3 format, or comes included in the great value *Colloquial Finnish* paperback and CDs complete course. Recorded by native speakers, the audio material complements the book and will help develop your listening and pronunciation skills.

### THE COLLOQUIAL SERIES Series Adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans German Romanian Albanian Greek Russian

Amharic Gujarati Scottish Gaelic

Arabic (Levantine) Hebrew Serbian
Arabic of Egypt Hindi Slovak
Arabic of the Gulf Hungarian Slovene
Basque Icelandic Somali
Bengali Indonesian Spanish

Breton Irish Spanish of Latin America

Bulgarian Italian Swahili Cambodian Japanese Swedish Cantonese Korean Tamil Catalan Latvian Thai Chinese (Mandarin) Lithuanian Turkish Croatian Ukrainian Malay Czech Mongolian Urdu

DanishNorwegianVietnameseDutchPanjabiWelshEnglishPersianYiddishEstonianPolishYoruba

Finnish Portuguese Zulu (forthcoming)

French Portuguese of Brazil

#### COLLOQUIAL 2s series: The Next Step in Language Learning

Chinese German Russian
Dutch Italian Spanish

French Portuguese of Brazil Spanish of Latin America

All these Colloquials are available in book & CD packs, or separately. You can order them through your bookseller or via our website www.routledge.com.

## Colloquial Finnish

# The Complete Course for Beginners

### Daniel Abondolo

with dialogues by Hanna Björklund, Elina Multanen, and Riitta-Liisa Valijärvi



Second edition published 2012 by Routledge 2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge

711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2012 Daniel Abondolo

The right of Daniel Abondolo to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition published by Routledge 1998

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data Abondolo, Daniel Mario.

Colloquial Finnish: the complete course for beginners / Daniel Abondolo; with dialogues by Hanna Björklund, Elina Multanen and Riitta-Liisa Valijärvi. — 2nd ed.

p. cm. — (The colloquial series)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Finnish language—Spoken Finnish. 2. Finnish language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. 3. Finnish language—Self-instruction. 4. Finnish language— Sound recordings for English speakers. 5. Finnish language—Study and teaching— Audio-visual aids. I. Björklund, Hanna. II. Multanen, Elina. III. Valijärvi, Riitta-Liisa. IV. Title.

PH135.A26 2011 494'.54183421-dc22 2010044466

ISBN: 978-0-415-49966-8 (pbk) ISBN: 978-0-415-48627-9 (audio CDs) ISBN: 978-0-415-49968-2 (pack) ISBN: 978-0-415-49967-5 (MP3) ISBN: 978-0-203-81794-0 (ebk)

Typeset in Avant Garde and Helvetica by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong

### **Contents**

	Acknowledgements	vii
	Abbreviations and symbols	viii
	About this book	xi
	The sounds of Finnish	1
1	Tutustutaan	7
	Making contact	
2	Ei, kiitos!	28
	No thanks	
3	Ole hyvä!	48
	Help yourself!	
4	Paikasta toiseen	63
_	Getting around and about	
5	Mitä me ostetaan?	82
_	What'll we buy?	
6	Mennääks kiskalle!	105
_	Let's go to the kiosk!	400
7	Eiks ookki ihana päästä kotiin joulunviettoon!	128
0	Isn't it great to get home for Christmas!  Huonosta vielä huonommaksi	140
8		148
9	From bad to worse	167
9	Aika ja tila Time and space	107
10	Mitä tehtäs tänään?	186
10	What'll we do today?	100
11	Yhä nopeammin	205
• •	More and more quickly	200
12	Maton alla tuntuu olevan jotain	223
_	There seems to be something under the carpet	
	There seems to be something under the carpet	

vi Contents

13	Mikä laulaen tulee	238
	Easy come	
14	Karhut voi kai olla vaarallisiakin	254
	Bears can be dangerous, I suppose	
15	Vakavia asioita	269
	Serious matters	
16	Älköön sanottako!	288
	Let it not be said	
	Key to exercises	305
	Appendix A: Overview of Finnish verb inflection	321
	Appendix B: Overview of Finnish nominal inflection	323
	Appendix C: Finnish names	325
	Finnish-English glossary	327
	English-Finnish glossary	338
	Glossary of grammatical terms	345
	Index	351

### **Acknowledgements**

I wish to thank the following people for help I have received during the preparation of this book. Among the many native speakers who have helped me, Hanna Björklund and Elina Multanen deserve special mention: it is they who provided most of the dialogue materials, on which the grammar sections are largely based, and with whom I have had many profitable discussions over points of suitability and style. For encouragement and assistance with the preparation of this second edition I am especially indebted to Riitta-Liisa Valijärvi, who read the entire manuscript and made many helpful suggestions. I also thank Anki Mölläri, Marika Äijälä, and Iida, Jenni, and Sirpa Salminen for additions, updates, and improvements to dialogues.

Other native speakers who have helped me over the years are Matti Koskiala, Eeva and Heikki Sarmanto, Tuomo Lahdelma, and, more recently, Tapani Salminen. I also thank the numerous teachers of Finnish who have helped me, first and foremost Aili Flint, who is a language-teaching paragon, but also Eila Hämäläinen, Pentti Soutkari, Fred Karlsson, Hannele Branch, Carol Rounds, and Sirkka Betts. This is also the place to express my gratitude to those colleagues, conversant with both language teaching and with Finnish, who made valued contributions, namely Stefan Pugh, lan Press, Peter Sherwood, and especially Péter Simoncsics; and, at Routledge, to the superb editing team of Andrea Hartill, Gary King, Samantha Vale Noya, and Helena Power.

Daniel Abondolo

### Abbreviations and symbols

### **Abbreviations**

The names of the cases are always abbreviated with upper case letters, as follows:

```
ILL
ABL Ablative
                         Illative
ACC Accusative
                   INF
                         Inessive
ADE Adessive
                   N
                         Nominative
ALL Allative
                         Partitive
FLA Flative
                   PRO Prolative
ESS
     Essive
                        Translative
                   TRA
G
      Genitive
```

Singular and plural are indicated by a preposed lower case s or p, e.g. sG = genitive singular, plLL = plural illative.

The codes s1 s2 s3 p1 p2 p3 refer to first, second, and third persons singular and plural.

Other abbreviations:

```
active
ac
       adiective
adi
adv
       adverb
cd
       conditional
       coniunction
ci
dir
       directive
ind
       indefinite (subject person)
inf
       infinitive
itr
       intransitive
pass
       passive (participle)
       potential
pn
PP
       postposition/preposition
       present
ps
```

pt past ptcpl participle sl slang

sup supine (past active participle)

tr transitive

#### Examples:

s1 pt first person singular past, e.g. **mä men**|i|n 'l went' s2 plNE second person singular form of plural inessive, e.g. **tasku**|i|ssa|si 'in your pockets'

### Symbols

- | (upright line) is used to separate the morphemes, i.e. the minimal meaningful units, of words, e.g. English 'tree|s', 'friend|li|ness', Finnish puu|t, ystävä|is|yys. To help you to distinguish derivational suffixes, which make words from words, an equals sign will be used: see Unit 1 for your first set of examples.
- + separates the members of a compound, e.g. English 'apple'+'tree', 'sun'+'set', Finnish **omena+puu**, **auringo**|**n+lask**|**u** ('sun|'s+sett|ing').
- In grammatical sections, stands for 'changes to' or 'is read as', for example, pp > p formulates the change from pp in kauppa 'shop' to p in kaupa|n 'of the shop'.

in vocabulary sections, refers the reader to the standard, literary Finnish form, for example, the notation **paljoks** > **paljonko** 'how much?' indicates that the standard, literary Finnish form corresponding to colloquial **paljoks** is **paljonko**.

- **A**, **O**, **U** are used to capture regular correspondences between vowels due to vowel harmony, for example, **O** stands for o or  $\ddot{o}$ , and u stands for u and v.
- E, K, T, and other upper case letters signal morpheme-specific alternations between certain pairs of sounds, for example, both t and e alternate with zero in the inflexion of the word for 'beer': sN olut, sG olue|n. The shape of this word can thus be formulated as oluTE. You'll learn more about how all this works gradually as you work your way through the book.

- # indicates lengthening of the preceding vowel; see Unit 2.
- **Q** is found at the ends of morphemes (or as a morpheme in its own right), and stands for a variety of phonetic and grammatical effects: see Unit 2.
- X see Q.

### About this book

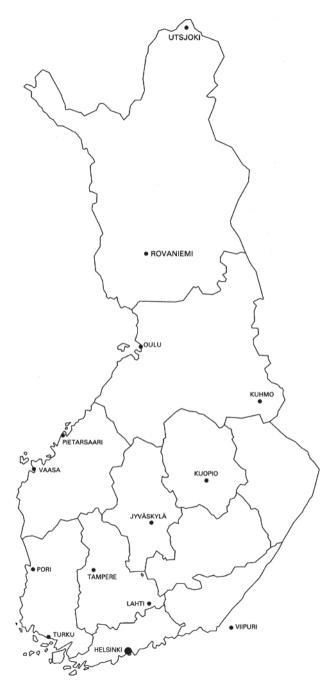
This book aims to provide you with the basics you need to communicate in Finnish. That means grammatical nuts and bolts, some useful vocabulary, and an idea of how to guess at the meanings of words you haven't heard or seen before. It's not a phrase-book or a tourist's guide to Finland; plenty of those are already available, and besides, all the phrase-books in the world won't get you communicating if you aren't equipped with the rules. On the other hand it is not a reference grammar; it is a textbook, so many of the more complex aspects of Finnish are presented gradually, in sections spread over several units. For ease of revision, a few topics are presented in summary, overview fashion, for example, consonant compression in Unit 1, or uses of the genitive in Unit 14.

Finnish is the first language of some five and a half million people. Most speakers live in Finland, but there are also significant enclaves in Sweden, Estonia, and Norway, and in the area around Lakes Michigan and Superior in the United States and Canada.

In the European context, Finland presents a rich paradox: geographically northern, it is culturally like neither Sweden nor Norway; geographically eastern, it is like neither Poland nor Ukraine. The main reason for this uniqueness is Finnish culture, which permeates and is borne by the Finnish language.

Neither Germanic (like Swedish, German, or English) nor Slavonic (like Polish and Ukrainian), Finnish is a Uralic language, and is thus related to Estonian and the Saami languages, and, more distantly, to Hungarian, as well as to Khanty, Mansi, and other languages spoken in the Russian Federation. Most Finnish vocabulary will therefore probably be new to you; the learning curve flattens out fairly soon, however, because once you enter the intermediate stages you will find Finnish vocabulary richly systematic and therefore relatively easy to learn.

xii About this book



Map of Finland

About this book xiii

Finnish pronunciation presents few novel challenges, and the spelling is for the most part perfectly consistent. For English speakers, there are few unfamiliar sounds. Many will be relieved to learn that Finnish word-stress is predictably always on the first syllable.

Some of the grammar, too, is quite different from that of most European languages. But there is nothing intrinsically difficult about it; it is simply unfamiliar. If you keep an open mind as you work through this book, you may well discover that grammar can be interesting in itself; here, however, we'll just hit a few of the high spots to give you some idea of what's in store.

Finnish words take on many forms, and some Finns like to try to frighten foreigners with tales of sesquipedalian adjectives and case systems with fifteen-plus members. And in fact, Finnish nouns can and do take some fifteen different endings depending on their role in the sentence. The word for 'Finland', for example, **Suomi**, can also be **Suomesta**, **Suomeen**, and **Suomessa**, corresponding to English 'from Finland', 'to Finland', and 'in Finland'. But nothing as complicated as Latin or even Russian or German need be feared, for the endings, or suffixes, which appear at the end of this word (and which we shall segment in this book as **Suome|sta Suome|en Suome|ssa**) are essentially the same for all nouns, in both singular and plural. There is no grammatical gender, even in the third person singular pronoun: Finnish does not distinguish 'she' from 'he', or 'her' from 'him'. The Finnish verb is also quite straightforward, particularly when compared with that of English, French, or Spanish. Only one verb is truly irregular.

The Finnish lexicon is exceptionally rich, in part because of the built-in machinery which the language has for making and modifying words, in part because of its openness to foreign borrowings and the creativeness of its slang. If you are interested in folk poetry, you probably already know that Finnish is the key to one of the world's largest archives of orally transmitted verbal art. This oral tradition is also a source of extensive synonymy.

It is perhaps useful to stress that like any language, Finnish is more than a means of communication. It is also an object which can be studied for its own sake. You don't need to devote the rest of your life to studying it – though you may be tempted! – but the more thought and work you invest into Finnish itself, the more communication will become not only easier but more pleasurable.

### The sounds of Finnish



(CD1; 1)

The basic rule is this: don't rush; give all the sounds their due time and attention. (If you think you're holding a sound much too long, it's probably about right.)

### Vowels (CD1; 2)



The letters **i e a o u y ä ö** when written single stand for sounds which are always pronounced fairly *short*, *but never mumbled or clipped*, regardless of position. *Always long* are the sounds written **ii ee aa oo uu yy ää öö**, i.e. the same eight letters doubled.

The vowels may be classified roughly according to their manner of articulation as high ( $i \ y \ u$ ), mid ( $e \ \ddot{o} \ o$ ), and low ( $\ddot{a} \ a$ ); front ( $i \ y \ e \ \ddot{o} \ \ddot{a}$ ) vs. back ( $u \ o \ a$ ); and rounded ( $y \ \ddot{o} \ u \ o$ ) vs. unrounded ( $i \ e \ \ddot{a} \ a$ ). Rounded here refers to the position of the lips, which are then pursed and slightly protruded. High, mid, and low, and, in parallel fashion, front and back refer to the relative positions of the tongue.

Listen to the recording and do your best to imitate these samples, concentrating on the vowel marked with italics. Remember to stress the first syllable, regardless of what else is going on later on in the word.

	Finnish	Meaning	Pronounced as in German	Pronounced as in English
i	k <i>i</i> va	smashing	bitte	'bit' (especially Australian)
ii	k <i>ii</i> tos	thanks	biete	'bead'
u	k <i>u</i> va	picture	gucke	'cook' (especially Australian)
uu	k <i>uu</i> ma	hot	Schuhe	(billed and) 'cooed'
У	kylä	village	Hütte	_
уу	t <i>yy</i> li	style	müde	_

ee	veteen	into the water	gäbe	'square', but with no trace of an <i>r</i>
00	taloon	into the house	_	'north', but with no trace of an <i>r</i>
öö	keitti <i>öö</i> n	into the kitchen	Höhle	_
aa	pat <i>aa</i> n	into the pot into the nest	Ahnung	'palm'
ää	pes <i>ää</i> n		—	'ban', but longer
e	keli	road conditions	Bett	'bet'
o	Koli	(place name)	solle	—
ö	köli	keel	Hölle	—
a	k <i>a</i> la	fish	knapp	'palm', but shorter
ä	k <i>ä</i> si	hand	—	'bat'



The letter sequences **ie uo yö** represent diphthongs. You may first attempt them by simply pronouncing a good Finnish **i**, **u**, or **y** followed by a good Finnish **e**, **o**, or **ö**. Avoid allowing the diphthong to 'centre', i.e. do not pronounce the second vowel as a *schwa* (as in Leeds or New York 'near', 'cure'). Avoid, also, the temptation to lengthen the second vowel at the expense of the first (as in Italian *miele*, *buono*).

ie	kieli	language	 cf. Jamaican 'face'
uo	Suomi	Finland	 cf. Jamaican 'goat'
yö	syödä	to eat	 _

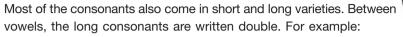


Here are some more examples to practise. Make sure you can clearly hear the difference in length (of the vowels, again, in italics):

English	short	long	English	contrast
pig	s <i>i</i> ka	s <i>ii</i> ka	herring	i : ii
of a row	riv <i>i</i> n	riv <i>ii</i> n	into a row	i : ii
of a name	nimen	nimeen	into a name	e:ee
of a fish	kalan	kal <i>aa</i> n	into a fish	a:aa
of a poem	runon	runoon	into a poem	0:00
of sorrow	sur <i>u</i> n	sur <i>uu</i> n	into sorrow	u : uu
expenses	k <i>u</i> lut	k <i>uu</i> lut	you belong	u : uu
summer cabin	mökki	rööki	fag, cigarette	ö:öö
wrinkle	ryppy	ryyppy	(alcoholic) drink	у: уу

### Consonants

#### (CD1; 5)





who?	kuka	kukka	flower
worm	mato	matto	rug
help	apu	vappu	May Day
heap	kasa	kassa	cash register
beer	olut	ollut	been

When two different consonants occur next to one another, either the first or the second is long. Length is indicated in spelling as follows.

#### (CD1; 6)

1 If the first consonant is pronounced short and the second consonant is pronounced long, the second consonant is written double. Examples:



linssi	lens	lamppu	lamp
kantta	lid (sP)	valssi	waltz
kartta	map	palkka	salary
ankka	domesticated duck	teltta	tent
helppo	easy	kirppu	flea
marssi	march	herkkä	sensitive, touchy

#### (CD1; 7)

2 In the reverse scenario, that is, if the first consonant is pronounced long and the second is pronounced short, *both consonants are written single*. Practise these examples:



länsi	west	tylsä	stupid
tunti	hour	halko	log
hanki	snowcrust	pelto	field
lampi	pond	halpa	cheap
norsu	elephant	itse	self
korpi	backwoods	yskä	cough

### (CD1; 8)

Special attention should be paid to the following letters:



**h** represents a sound much like English 'h' in 'hut', except when written to the left of another consonant letter, when it represents a voiceless velar fricative (as in German *Bach*) or a voiceless palatal fricative (as in German *ich*), depending, as in German, on the preceding vowel. Listen to these words and try to copy the differences:

sohvasofalahtibaykirahvigiraffekarahvicarafepihvisteaktyhjäempty

**b, d, g** represent sounds much like those of English 'bait', 'date', and 'gate', except that the sequence **ng** stands for a long velar nasal  $[\eta \eta]$ , not a sequence of velar nasal  $[\eta]$  plus [g]. If you distinguish the medial sounds of 'finger' and 'singer', it's the latter sound you want, but with a longer pronunciation. Examples:

**Helsingissä** in Helsinki **ongelma** problem

In **nk**, the **n** stands for velar  $[\eta]$  as in English 'bank'.

Note: Many speakers often substitute other sounds for  $\mathbf{d}$ : you will probably hear  $\mathbf{j}$  and  $\mathbf{r}$  most often.



### Glottal stop and its consequences (CD1; 9)

The Finnish alphabet has no symbol for the glottal stop, which is pronounced by most Finnish speakers at the ends of forms such as **istu!** 'sit!' or **palaute** 'feedback'. (Glottal stop is commonly heard in London, e.g. instead of **t** in 'city' and 'not a lot'). In Finnish, the glottal stop often attaches to following consonants, making them longer; it has other, grammatical effects as well. To help you to acquire a good pronunciation and to render Finnish grammar more transparent, this book writes the glottal stop in grammatical sections and in the vocabularies as **Q**: for example, the two forms given above may be written **istuQ**, **palautteQ**.

### Nuts and bolts, and a few symbols

Many Finnish words will look long to you at first, but in most instances they break up readily into smaller, recurring parts with which you will quickly become familiar. To help you to see these smaller parts clearly, the vertical stroke (|) is liberally applied throughout this book, e.g. marking off the Finnish suffix **sto** in both **kirja**|**sto** 'library' and **laiva**|**sto** 'fleet' – words that are easy to remember once you've learned that **kirja** is 'book' and **laiva** 'ship'.

In grammatical sections, a right-pointing arrowhead (>) will indicate change, as you might expect (an English example would be 'y' > 'ie' in 'library' > 'librarie|s'), but in the vocabulary sections the arrowhead leads you from a *colloquial* form to a *more formal* Finnish form.

### A note on slang

The 'Colloquial Finnish' (puhekieli) presented in this book is in fact a range of varieties of Finnish as spoken by younger people in Finland today, particularly in urban areas, when they are speaking casually and naturally. Very little slang is presented, as this would simply double one of your first tasks, namely the acquisition of the working parts of a basic vocabulary; and once you have learned the basic (colloquial and formal) word for 'hand', käsi, you will not find it especially difficult to slot in slang terms for the same thing, e.g. tassu, handu, känny.

### Dictionaries and other grammars

The glossaries at the back of this book provide the essential forms you'll need to complete the course. Soon enough, however, you'll want to find out more, and you're in luck: Finns are excellent dictionary-makers, and a wide range of sizes and types are available. If you go to Finland you can nose around in the second-hand bookshops (divari|t) you'll find in every city in search of bargains.

It is usually well worthwhile to have a look at alternative descriptions of a language. While working with this book, or after you've finished it, you might want to refer to Fred Karlsson's *Finnish: An* 

Essential Grammar (second edition, Routledge 2008). If you can find it, you'll definitely benefit from Meri Lehtinen's Basic Course in Finnish (1963, 1967), which abounds in detail of description and has vast quantities of examples and exercises.

#### Web links

Some Wikipedia pages give reliable information about Finnish.

Once you have finished this book, you should be able to start using the excellent big online Finnish grammar on the website of the Research Institute for the languages of Finland at http://scripta.kotus.fi/visk/etusivu.php.

### Unit One

### **Tutustutaan**

### Making contact

### In this unit you will learn:



- how to say what country you're from, what you do, and how to ask the same about others
- how to ask and answer yes/no questions
- · one way to express possession
- how vowels in a Finnish word cooperate with one another (vowel harmony), and how consonants fight (consonant compression)

### Dialogue



### Esittäytyminen Introducing yourself (CD1; 10)



Juuso and Paul introduce themselves to each other.

JUUSO Hyvää päivää. Juuso Virtanen.

PAUL Hyvää päivää. Paul Smith. Hauska tutustua.

JUUSO Hauska tutustua.

JUUSO Good day. (I'm) Juuso Virtanen.

PAUL Good day. (I'm) Paul Smith. Pleased to meet you.

JUUSO Pleased to meet you.



### Language point

(CD1; 11)

To introduce yourself in Finnish, you say your name. It's polite to preface your name with a greeting such as

Hyvää huomenta! (lit. 'Good morning'), said in the morning

Hyvää päivää! ('Good day'), said throughout the day,

until it's time for

Hyvää iltaa! ('Good evening'), said in the evening

and to offer to shake hands. Usually, the phrase **Hauska tutustua** 'Pleased to meet you' gets thrown in, as well. Here's another example, with the 'I'm' (**Mä olen**) explicitly stated:

(CD1; 12)

IRMA Hyvää päivää. Mä olen Irma Ojala.

SOPHIE Hyvää päivää. Sophie Grant. Hauska tutustua.

IRMA Good day. I'm Irma Ojala.

SOPHIE Good day. I'm Sophie Grant. Pleased to meet you.



#### (CD1; 13)

In less formal contexts, the greetings **hei** or **moi** are used, and surnames dispensed with:

MASA Moi. Mä olen Masa.

HANNU Moi. Hannu.

MASA Hi. I'm Masa. HANNU Hi. (I'm) Hannu.

Follow-up will usually consist of saying where you're from and what you do for a living. Let's go back to Paul and Juuso:

JUUSO Oletteko te englantilainen?

PAUL Olen.

JUUSO Are you English?
PAUL Yes. (lit. 'I am.')

Here's the follow-up to the conversation between Irma and Sophie:

IRMA Oletteko te opettaja?

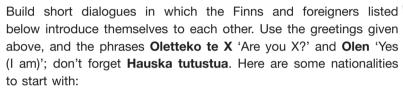
SOPHIE Olen.

IRMA Are you a teacher? SOPHIE Yes. (lit. 'I am.')

Formal Finnish doesn't really have a word that works like English 'yes'. Instead, the key word in the question is repeated. See also below, 'Answering "yes" to yes/no (-kO) questions'.

### Exercise 1

skotlantilainen



suomalainen Finnish, a Finn ruotsalainen Swedish, a Swede venäläinen Russian, a Russian eestiläinen Estonian, an Estonian englantilainen English, an English person amerikkalainen American, an American kanadalainen Canadian, a Canadian australialainen Australian, an Australian ranskalainen French, a French person saksalainen German, a German belgialainen Belgian, a Belgian puolalalinen Polish, a Pole unkarilainen Hungarian, a Hungarian sveitsiläinen Swiss, a Swiss egyptiläinen Egyptian, an Egyptian Somali, a Somali somalilainen saamelainen Sa(a)mi, a Sa(a)mi romani Romany, a Rom Welsh, a Welsh person walesilainen

Scottish, a Scot

Some Finnish names

Women Men

Marja Mäkinen Hannu Huttunen
Satu Salokangas Pekka Pitkänen
Eila Elstelä Kalevi Koponen
Raija Nieminen Samu Santala
Tiia Talvela Heikki Karapää

Some foreigners' names

Nigel Baker Yuri Yavlinsky
Albert O'Rourke Jorge González
Wilfred Owen Seiji Nakamura
Angus Salmon Szilvia Farkas
Françoise Peugeot Annike Rätsep
Renate Porsche Wang Wei

Sergio Lamborghini

### Language points

To make statements like 'I am English' or 'I am an engineer', you have to know (1) how to use personal pronouns; (2) how to use the verb 'is'; (3) vocabulary for nationalities, countries, and occupations. These are the three areas which we shall explore in the next three sections.

### Personal pronoun basics

English pronouns distinguish three subject persons, 'I' - 'you' - '(s)he/it' and singular from plural ('I' v. 'we', 'he' v. 'they'). So do Finnish pronouns, but the gender distinction 'he/she' is absent. On the other hand, other distinctions are important. We'll summarize these distinctions under four points:

- 1 Full v. cropped: 'l' is either minä or mä; 'you', if addressed to a friend, is either sinä or sä. In other words, alongside the full-length forms minä and sinä are shorter, or 'cropped' forms; the cropped forms are more colloquial.
- 2 'He', 'she', 'it' are all se in colloquial Finnish, and 'they' is ne. In more formal style, se and ne are used only when referring to animals or things; for humans, hän is used in the singular and he in the plural.

- 3 The third person pronouns (hän, he, se, ne) are not usually omitted; the others may be omitted if they are not stressed, but to include them (in their cropped forms, of course) is more colloquial.
- 4 When speaking to one person, you may express distance, politeness, or formality by using the second person plural. (In colloquial contexts, you use the second person plural only when addressing more than one person.)

The singular subject pronouns are a bit complex, so we'll overview them diagrammatically:

	s1	mä	minä		
Cubicat mayor	s2	sä	sinä	( <b>te</b> + p2)	
Subject person					humans
	s3	s	e	se	other
		colloquial ↔ formal contexts			

### How to say 'am', 'are', and 'is': the verb ole- 'be'

The most frequently used verb in Finnish is the verb **ole**- 'to be'. Here are its present tense forms in more formal Finnish:

Singular		Plural	
1 (minä) ole n	I am	(me) ole mme	we are
2 (sinä) ole t	you are	(te) ole tte	you are
3 hän/se on	(s)he/it is	he ovat	they are

Finnish has no future tense, so English equivalents of **minä olen** also include 'I will/shall be'. You'll learn about a way to explicitly express future in Unit 6.

As mentioned in the preceding section, the p2 form (te) ole|tte is used not only when addressing more than one person, but also to express politeness when addressing a single person.

As mentioned in the previous section, colloquial Finnish uses **se** to refer to people, as well, and the cropped pronoun forms **mä** and **sä** are frequent. There are also two other differences: for 'they are', colloquial Finnish has **ne on** instead of **he ovat**; and for 'we are', colloquial Finnish has **me ollaan**. More on these forms in later units.

### Vocabulary building: Danish engineers and so on

#### Countries and nationalities

You have already met several names of nationalities above, and you will probably have noticed that they all end in either **lainen** or **läinen**. This is because **lainen/läinen** is a suffix by means of which Finnish derives nationality names from simpler, shorter words, usually names of countries. The form with **a** is used if the word to which the suffix is added contains an **a**, **o**, or **u** (thus **tanska|lainen**, **puola|lainen**) and the form with **ä** is used elsewhere (thus **venä|läinen**, **sveitsi|läinen**). This sort of matching-up of vowels is called *vowel harmony*; you'll learn more about it later on in this unit.

For now, you can use the list below to revise nationality names while you learn the country names on which they are based; if in doubt, refer back to the exercise at the beginning of this unit. Notice the irregularities – unexpected -a-, -jä – in the words for 'Finnish', 'Swedish', and 'Russia'.

Nationality	Country	Nationality	Country
suoma lainen	Suomi	skotlanti∣lainen	Skotlanti
ruots <i>a</i>  lainen	Ruotsi	saksa lainen	Saksa
venä∣läinen	Venä <i>jä</i>	belgia lainen	Belgia
eesti∣läinen	Eesti	puola lainen	Puola
englanti∣lainen	Englanti	unkari∣lainen	Unkari
amerikka lainen	Amerikka	sveitsi∣läinen	Sveitsi
kanada∣lainen	Kanada	egypti∣läinen	Egypti
australia∣lainen	Australia	somalia lainen	Somalia
ranska∣lainen	Ranska	saame lainen	NB
walesi∣lainen	<b>Wale</b> s	romani	NB

As the example **Wales/walesilainen** (pronounced [valesilainen] or [veilsiläinen]) shows, an -i- is added to foreign words which end

in a consonant in order to ease the attachment of the suffix; further examples are **Niger/nigeriläinen**, **Gabon/gabonilainen**.

### Occupations

Like names of nationalities, names for occupations are usually derived words. Such words are derived from simpler words by means of derivational suffixes, which we shall distinguish by prefixing them with an equals sign (=). Common derivational suffixes which form occupation names are =isti and =ikko, both of which are usually added to stems which you will either recognize or be able to guess:

pianisti pianist (piano 'piano')

klarinetisti clarinetist (klarinetti 'clarinet')

kontrabasisti double-bassist (kontrabassi 'double-bass';

note -s- v. -ss-!)

muusikkomusicianmatemaatikkomathematicianmekaanikkomechanicbotaanikkobotanistpoliitikkopoliticianakateemikkoacademic

*Tip:* The vowel in the syllable immediately preceding the occupation-forming suffix =ikko is usually long: muusikko, matemaatikko, poliitikko. Contrast musiikki 'music', matematiikka 'mathematics', and politiikka 'politics', with the vowel lengths reversed.

Also easy to recognize and remember are:

**diplomaatti** diplomat **insinööri** engineer

poliisi(konstaapeli) police (constable)

but probably not:

tulkki interpreter

The ending **ri** is frequent:

tuomari judge maalari painter leipuri baker lääkäri doctor

The suffix =**jA**, which is added to verbs, is the closest Finnish equivalent to the English =**er** of *writer* or the =**or** of *director*. In later units,

you will meet some of the verbs from which these occupation names are derived:

opetta|jateacherkirjaili|jawriterrunoili|japoet

asianaja|ja solicitor, lawyer
ohjaa|ja (film) director
valokuvaa|ja photographer

maanviljeli|jä farmer sairaanhoita|ja nurse tarjoili|ja waiter

toimisto-työnteki|jä office worker

opiskeli|ja student

The compound-element **mies** ('man; husband'; stem **miehe**-!) is also common, whether the person is a man or a woman:

laki|mies jurist (laki 'law')
meri|mies sailor (meri 'sea')

posti|mies mail carrier (posti 'post, mail')

palo|mies firefighter (palo 'fire which destroys a building')

lehti|mies journalist (lehti 'leaf; newspaper')

Finally, some older terms are made with seppä 'smith':

puu|seppä joiner (puu 'tree; wood') lukko|seppä locksmith (lukko 'lock')

kello|seppä watchmaker (kello 'clock, watch')

### Putting it all together

You have now met the three basics you need to know in order to say 'I am English', 'Harriet is an engineer', even 'The Frenchman is a musician'. The neutral, normal way is to string the three items together, subject-verb-predicate, in precisely that order. Thus we have subject (minä, Harriet, ranskalainen), then verb (olen, on, on), and finally predicate (englantilainen, insinööri, muusikko):

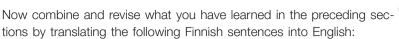
Minä olen englantilainen.

Harriet on insinööri.

Ranskalainen on muusikko.

Notice that both subject and predicate are in the nominative.

### Exercise 2





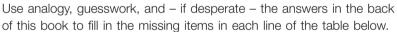
- 1 Minä olen englantilainen.
- 2 Minä olen insinööri.
- 3 Mä olen skotlantilainen muusikko.
- 4 Sä olet ulkomaalainen.
- 5 Te olette italialainen diplomaatti.

### Exercise 3

Put into Finnish:

- 1 Are you a doctor?
- 2 She is a Hungarian director.
- 3 I am an English businessman.
- 4 He is a French mathematician.
- 5 Lam a Canadian student.

### Exercise 4





	Nationality	English	Country	English
1		Danish	Tanska	Denmark
2	kreikkalainen	Greek		Greece
3		Norwegian	Norja	Norway
4		Dutch	Hollanti	Holland
5	albanialainen	Albanian		Albania
6		Ukrainian	Ukraina	Ukraine
7		Turkish	Turkki	Turkey
8		Portuguese	Portugalia	Portugal



### Language point

### Asking yes/no questions: -kO (and vowel harmony)

As you have seen, the Finnish for 'Are you?' is **oletteko**, in other words: the verb form **olette** 'you are' plus a suffix -ko. This is the standard way to form yes/no questions in Finnish: you attach this suffix to the word you're asking about. Thus **Onko se suomalainen?** simply asks whether or not someone is Finnish, but **Suomalainenko se on?** singles out 'Finnish', something like 'Is (s)he *Finnish*? (and not Norwegian, or . . .)'.

Now, this suffix is not always -ko. Like =lainen/=läinen and indeed like most Finnish suffixes it has two shapes. The difference between the two shapes lies in the vowel: for this suffix the shapes are -ko and -kö. Which shape you use depends on the vowels of the word to which the suffix is attached. The rule may be stated quite simply in two parts: (1) if the word has any of the vowels u, o, a, you use -ko, e.g.:

Onko se italialainen?	Is (s)he Italian?	(Italialainen contains a, so -ko)
Pariisiko?	Paris?	(Pariisi contains a, so -ko)
Lontooko?	London?	( <b>Lontoo</b> contains <b>o</b> , so -k <b>o</b> )
Turkuko?	Turku?	( <b>Turku</b> , the name of Finland's former capital, contains <b>u</b> , so - <b>ko</b> )

Similarly:

Ranskalainenko te olette? Are you French? Huomennako? Tomorrow?

(2) otherwise, you use -kö:

Sveitsikö? Switzerland? (no u, o, a in Sveitsi, so -kö)

Similarly:

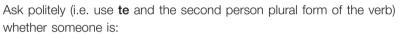
Helsinkiläinenkö sä olet? Are you a Helsinkian?

In compound words, it is the vowels of the last word which are decisive. For example, the word **lukko|seppä** 'locksmith' takes -kö because the last member of this word, **seppä** 'smith' has no **u**, **o**, **a**: **Lukkoseppäkö te olette?** 'Are you a *locksmith*?'

To save time and space, we shall refer to the question suffix as -kO, with the upper case O to serve as a reminder that the vowel is o or  $\ddot{o}$  depending on vowel harmony. Similarly, whenever a suffix has o or  $\ddot{o}$  depending on vowel harmony, we shall write o, and upper case o will refer to the vowel pair o and o.

For a minor refinement of the vowel-harmony rule given above, see Unit 10.

### Exercise 5



- 1 Finnish
- 2 a locksmith
- 3 Russian
- 4 a policeman
- 5 French

### Exercise 6

Ask these questions in Finnish, laying emphasis on the italicized words by attaching the appropriate form of  $-\mathbf{kO}$ :



- 2 Are you an engineer?
- 3 Is he a firefighter?
- 4 Are you German?
- 5 Is she a politician?

Answering 'yes' to yes/no (-kO) questions

You answer in the affirmative by repeating the verb form, if this is what was being questioned:

Oletteko te suomalainen? Are you Finnish? Olen. Yes.





If the yes/no-question suffix -kO was added to any word other than the verb, you say **niin**; it is more polite to repeat the questioned word, as well:

Ruotsalainenko sä olet? Are you Swedish?

Niin, ruotsalainen. Yes, I am.

Finally, there is simple **joo**. This corresponds more to English 'yeah' than to 'yes', i.e. it is used only in informal, colloquial contexts:

Oletsä suomalainen? Are you Finnish?

**Joo.** Yeah.



# How to say 'Irma's friend' and 'the capital of France': the genitive case and an introduction to nominal stem-types

Have a look at these sentences:

Mikä sen opettajan nimi on? What's that teacher's name?

Kuka tuo on? Who's that?

Se on *Irman* ystävä. That's *Irma*'s friend.

The words **se**|**n**, **opettaja**|**n**, and **Irma**|**n** are all in the genitive case. The Finnish genitive does the work of the 's' in English 'Irma's friend' and the 'of' in 'the capital of France'.

To form the genitive of any Finnish nominal (= noun or adjective) you add the suffix -n. So 'Irma's friend' is Irma|n ystävä (where ystävä is 'friend') and 'the capital of France' is Ranska|n pääkaupunki (where pääkaupunki is 'capital'). The rest of this section shows you how to do this.

### Non-alternating stems

For thousands of nominals like **Irma** and **Ranska**, you just add the -n to the 'citation form'. (This is the form of the nominal which is listed in dictionaries. It is also called the nominative singular, so we shall use the abbreviation **sN**.)

These nominals all have citation forms ending in vowels, and their shapes do not vary, or at least they vary in predictable ways (for the most widespread predictable way see 'consonant compression', below). We shall call them *non-alternating* stems because their stem endings remain unchanged to the left of the genitive singular (sG) suffix -n. All nominals that end in a, ä, o, ö, u, and y (or their long equivalents aa, ää, oo, öö, uu, yy) are non-alternating. Examples:

Citation		
form (sN)	sG	English
kala	kala∣n	fish
kesä	kesä∣n	summer
talo	talo n	house
hölmö	hölmö∣n	fool
savu	savu∣n	smoke
levy	levy∣n	record, disk

Any adjective modifying a noun must agree with that noun in case. So both 'green' and 'house' are in the genitive in **vihreä**|**n talo**|**n ovi** 'the door of the green house' (**vihreä** 'green') and both 'green' and 'door' are in the nominative in **talo**|**n vihreä ovi** 'the green door of the house'.

### Exercise 7a

Have a go at translating these possessive phrases into English. You'll need the words listed just above, plus these: **pyrstö** 'tail', **ovi** 'door', **maku** 'taste', **loppu** 'end', **pöllö** 'owl', **siipi** 'wing', **koko** 'size'.

1 kala|n pyrstö
2 talo|n ovi
3 kala|n maku
4 kesä|n loppu
5 pöllö|n siipi
6 levy|n koko
7 Liisa|n huone
8 klarinetisti|n tulkki

### Alternating stems

These are nominals whose shape changes when to the left of the genitive singular suffix. Most are easy to spot, once you know what

to look for. In this unit you have already met one very common type: nominals ending in =IAinen such as ranskalainen 'French', egyptiläinen 'Egyptian'. These and all Finnish nominals (except kymmenen 'ten') that have a citation form ending in nen have a stem that ends in se, and it is to this stem that case suffixes are added. Have a look at these forms:

sN	ranskalainen	egyptiläinen
sG	ranskalaise n	egyptiläise n

It's best to learn the groupings of alternating stems gradually; we'll discuss them as they come up. For another important group of alternating stems see the section on e-stems later in this unit.



### Language point

### Boxes with tight lids: consonant compression

In the preceding section, you saw how adding the genitive singular -n can trigger changes in alternating stems. This section introduces you to another kind of alternation which this and other suffixes can trigger.

If you examine the nominative and genitive singular of the following three stems, you will notice that something is happening to the t.

Citation form (sN)	sG	English	Consonant alternation
katu	kadu∣n	street	t ~ d
hattu	hatu∣n	hat	tt ~ t
hinta	hinna∣n	price	nt ~ nn

The -t- of **katu** 'street' is said to 'weaken' to -d- in the genitive **kadu**|**n** 'of a street'; in parallel fashion, the -tt- of **hattu** 'hat' weakens to -t- in the genitive **hatu**|**n** 'of a hat', and the consonant cluster -nt- of **hinta** is -nn- in the genitive **hinna**|n.

One way to think of this 'weakening' is that it is a kind of *compression*. It is as if Finnish words were boxes full of various consonants and that suffixes like -**n** were tight-fitting lids: putting such a 'lid' onto

the top of a 'box' that is already full crams the 'consonant contents' of that word into a tighter, more compressed shape.

What kind of word is a 'full box'? One that has very little 'space' at the end, i.e. any word ending in a short vowel.

What kind of suffix is a 'tight lid'? Any suffix which consists of a single consonant (like our -n) or begins with two consonants. With certain exceptions which we will detail as we go along, adding any such suffix causes compression of any p, t, or t inside the 'box'.

For example, long **pp** compresses to **p**:

kauppa shop kaupa|n sG

and short **p** preceded by a vowel compresses to **v**:

apu help avu|n sG

On the other hand, the **p** of **vapaa** 'free' is not compressed when we add the 'tight lid' -**n**, because the long vowel (**aa**) at the end provides plenty of vowel space:

vapaa free vapaa|n sG

These and other, parallel alternations (which we shall call consonant compression) are quite regular. Consonant compression is not difficult to learn, because (1) it is regular (the rules will be introduced as we go along), and it is pervasive: it occurs throughout most of the grammar and lexicon of the Finnish language; (2) it operates in parallel (for example, all longs compress to shorts); (3) it is restricted: every alternation-pair involves a **p**, **t**, or **k**; apart from some slang vocabulary, no other consonants are involved in compression.

For ease of reference, all consonant changes due to compression are set out below. Do read it through now, but *not* with the aim of memorizing it! Read it through merely in order to familiarize yourself with the kinds of changes that are involved.

The changes are illustrated here by the form of the genitive, so what we have is a list of possessive noun phrases. Each consists of a noun in the genitive singular followed by another in the nominative singular. The consonant compression which is illustrated in each case is listed in the column on the right.

Compression

1 Long pp, tt, kk, compress to short p, t, k:

kauppa shop	kaupa n ovi the door of the shop	pp > p
lukko lock	luko n hinta the price of the lock	$\mathbf{k}\mathbf{k} > \mathbf{k}$
tyttö girl	tytö n nimi the girl's name	tt > t

Since this type (pp > p, kk > k, tt > t) involves the *length*, i.e. the quantity, of the consonants, we shall call it *quantitative* compression. Quantitative is the only kind of compression which affects personal names (**Pekka** 'Peter', **Peka**|n 'Peter's') and most foreign words.

All other types of compression are qualitative. They are:

2 To the right of a nasal (**m**, **n**, [η], see p. 4), compressed **p**, **t**, **k** assimilate, i.e. they copy the nasal:

rumpu drum	ru <i>mm</i> u∣n pärinä	mp > mm
	the beating of the drum	
<b>Helsinki</b> Helsinki	Helsi <i>ng</i> i∣n historia	$\mathbf{nk} > \mathbf{ng} \ [\eta \eta]$
	the history of Helsinki	
hinta price	hinna n romahdus 'the	nt > nn
	collapse in (lit. 'of')	
	the price	

3 Otherwise, **p** (unless preceded by **s**) compresses to **v**:

avu n tarvitsija a needer	p > v
(i.e., one in need)	
of help	
halva∣n hotelli∣n osoite	p > v
the address of a	
cheap hotel	
	(i.e., one in need) of help halva n hotelli n osoite the address of a

4.1 A k between two u's or y's also compresses to v:

puku dress, suit	puvu n hinta the price of the dress	k > v
kyky ability	kilpailukyvy n ylläpitäminen the	$\mathbf{k} > \mathbf{v}$
	sustaining of the ability to	
	compete	

4.2 but between other vowel combinations, compressed **k** melts into the surrounding vowels:

**lai** | **n** periaate the principle of the law  $\mathbf{k} > \text{(melts)}$ laki law

(Pronunciation note: the -i- of lai|n is quite long, as if in memory of the **k** which has been compressed.)

4.3 If preceded by I or r, single k either compresses to nothing:

härkä ox häräln häntä the tail of the ox k > 0

4.4 or (if followed by e) to i:

**solki** buckle **solje**|**n hinta** the price of the buckle k > i

5.1 A t preceded by a vowel compresses to d:

**koti** home **kodiln kalusto** the furniture of the home t > d

5.2 Preceded by an I or r, compressed t assimilates to those consonants:

> kulta gold kulla n hinta the price of gold |t>|I|parta beard parra n ajelu the shaving rt > rr of (one's) beard

### Exercise 7b

Practise compressing consonants by forming the genitive of these nouns Remember: only **p**, **t**, and **k** are affected!

1 tukka 'hair' 2 silta 'bridge' 3 arkki 'sheet of paper' 4 tyyppi 'type' 5 pöytä 'table'

6 laiva 'ship'

7 Englanti 'England'



9 kenkä 'shoe'

10 Saksa 'Germany' 11 Turku 'Turku, Åbo'

12 paikka 'place'

13 virta 'current, power'

14 jalka 'foot, leg'

# Language point

#### More alternating stems: e-stems

E-stems are an important class of alternating stem; most are central to Finnish vocabulary. They are all bisyllabic nominals whose citation form ends in i, but which have e in the genitive singular. This kind of





24 Unit 1: **Tutustutaan** 

alternating stem is more difficult to spot than the **ranskalainen** type because there are plenty of imposters, i.e. bisyllabic nominals with citation forms ending in **i** which have **i** in the genitive singular. Compare these three pairs of nominals:

	Non-alternating	Alternating (e-stems)
sN	rivi row	kivi stone
sG	rivi n	kive n
sN	torvi horn	järvi lake
sG	torvi n	järve∣n
sN	tuoli chair	nuoli arrow
sG	tuoli∣n	nuole∣n

From a citation form in final i you cannot be sure whether a nominal is an e-stem or not, so brute memorization is in order. When you learn a new nominal, you should make at least a mental note of its genitive singular. To assist you in this, all alternating stems are clearly marked in the vocabularies in this book. E-stems are marked with an extra e; thus 'arrow' is listed as **nuoli** e.

Tip: A good rule of thumb will help, however: the older the concept expressed by the word, and the more central it is to traditional Finnish culture, the greater the chance that it will be an **e**-stem; have another look at the six examples given above. (Counterexamples exist, of course, but they are few. Among the more egregious: the word for 'oxygen', **happi**, is an **e**-stem, but 'mother', **äiti**, isn't!)

There is one more vital complication which concerns **e**-stems. Most of them which have a citation form ending in **si** have stems ending in **te**. For example, the stem of **käsi** 'hand' is **käte**-; its genitive singular is therefore **käde**|**n**, with regular **t** > **d** compression; contrast non-alternating **lasi** 'glass' (stem: **lasi**-), with sG **lasi**|**n**. In the vocabularies, nouns like **käsi** will be marked with an extra *te*; thus 'hand' is listed as **käsi** *te*.

Here's a short list of some of the most common **e**-stems and **te**-stems:

e-Sie	HIS
nimi	е

imi e name nuoli e arrow

väki e people lehti e leaf, newspaper henki e spirit. life, person kivi e stone

henki espirit, life, personkivi estonetuli efirepilvi ecloudhetki emomentjärvi elake

mieli e mind sieni e mushroom, sponge

kieli elanguage, tonguesiipi ewingääni evoice, soundlapsi echildpieni esmallkuusi espruce

suuri e great, large suomi e Finland, Finnish

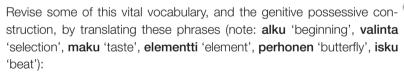
nuori e young language

puoli e half, side veri e blood

#### te-stems:

vesi te	water	tosi te	true, truth
käsi te	hand	kansi te	lid, cover
uusi te	new	viisi te	five
vuosi te	year	kuusi te	six

### Exercise 8a



- 1 järven nimi
- 2 sienen maku
- 3 uuden vuoden alku
- 4 lapsen nimen valinta
- 5 veden ja tulen elementit
- 6 Suomen uusi lehti
- 7 uuden veren maku
- 8 perhosen siiven isku



26 Unit 1: **Tutustutaan** 



### Exercise 8b

Practise forming the genitive singular and revise vocabulary by translating these phrases into Finnish. (Don't forget to apply consonant compression as needed!):

1 the taste of French wine

2 the colour (väri) of money

3 the door of the small house

4 the house's small door

5 the capital of Sweden

6 the doctor's Italian friend

7 the history of London

8 the new price of the dress

9 the price of a new dress

10 the musician's beard



### Language point

# How to say where people are from: the elative Case (-s†A)

Mi|stä maa|sta sä olet kotoisin? Mä olen Espanja|sta kotoisin. What country are you *from*? I'm *from* Spain.

To say what country you are originally from, you use the adverb **kotoisin** 'by domicile', but you must also put the name of the country into the *elative case*.

The suffix of the elative case is -stA. The upper case A means that its vowel is susceptible to vowel harmony changes. The two consonants st at the beginning of this suffix mean that it is a 'tight lid' and will therefore cause consonant compression.

Let's look at a few more examples:

Me olemme sveitsi|stä kotoisin.

Se on Hollanni∣sta kotoisin.

(nt > nn compression)

Ne on Amerika|sta kotoisin.

(kk > k compression)

We are from Switzerland. (S)he is from Holland.

They are from America.



### Exercise 9

Make up short exchanges in which people ask each other what country they're from. Use the vocabulary given in the section above about nationalities. Don't forget to harmonize your vowels and to compress your consonants, as appropriate!

# Reading



Try to understand as much of these short snippets of Finnish as you can without peeking at the glossary at the back of the book. The only new words are **ja** 'and' and **mutta** 'but'.

- 1 Pekka on suomalainen. Se on insinööri. Pekan ystävä, Jeanne, on pianisti. Jeanne on Belgiasta kotoisin.
- 2 Hyvää päivää! Mä olen Jorge Rodriguez. Hyvää päivää! Satu Pennanen. Hauska tutustua. Hauska tutustua.

Oletteko te Espanjasta kotoisin?
Nimi on espanjalainen, mutta mä olen Amerikasta kotoisin.

### Unit Two

# Ei, kiitos!

#### No thanks!



#### In this unit you will learn:

- · about expressing likes and preferences
- more about nominal stems
- how to say 'before' and 'after'
- how to talk about 'doing things' to things and people: expressing the direct object
- · how to say 'not', and to express dislike
- basic numeracy
- another way to express possession



# Language points

# Expressing likes and preferences: the present tense of verbs

Minä pidä|n kahvi|sta. I like coffee.
Minä pidä|n tee|stä. I like tea.

To say that someone likes something, you use the verb **pitä**- and put the person or thing liked into the elative case (-**stA**), which you have already met in the preceding unit. As you would expect from having studied the verb **ole**- 'to be', the present tense forms of the verb **pitä**- vary according to person, number, and formality.

These three dimensions are summarized in the chart below. The forms within the grey shading are relatively formal, and those outside

the grey shading are relatively informal and colloquial. The dotted line separates forms with a singular subject (to its left) from those with a plural subject (to its right).

	colloquial/informal		formal	
person				
1	pid	län	pidetään*	pidämme
2	pidät		pidätte	
3	pitää			pitävät
	sing	jular	plu	ıral

<sup>\*</sup> You will learn how to build and use forms like pidetään in Unit 5.

Thus 'I like coffee' is **M**(in)ä pidä|n kahvi|sta, and '(S)he likes gold' is **Hän/Se** pitä|ä kulla|sta (remember that the personal pronouns have full and cropped forms, and that hän is more formal than se when referring to people).

You should notice two things about these verb forms. One is nothing new: the -t- of pitä- is compressed to -d- whenever a 'tight-lid' suffix is added. The other is the form pitää for the third person. This form is made by lengthening the vowel at the end of the verb stem; contrast the form on of the verb ole- 'is', which you learned in the previous unit.

This lengthening is the regular ending of the third person present tense for all verbs other than **ole**-. Here are some more examples, given in colloquial style:

#### (CD1; 14)



se etsi i	(s)he is searching	ne etsi∣i	they are searching
se näke∣e	(s)he sees	ne näke∣e	they see
se kestä∣ä	it lasts	ne kestä∣ä	they last
se puhu∣u	(s)he speaks	ne puhu∣u	they speak
se sano∣o	(s)he says	ne sano∣o	they say

Since this notion of 'lengthening of the preceding vowel' is often useful in talking about Finnish, we shall use a symbol for it: #, and we shall refer to all the various forms of the third person suffix (-i, -e, -ä, -u, -o, etc.) as -#.

More formal Finnish has a distinct suffix for the third person plural: -vAt. Thus in more formal contexts you will hear and see:

hän pitä∣ä	(s)he likes, holds	he pitä∣vät	they like, hold
hän puhu∣u	(s)he speaks,	he puhu∣vat	they speak,
	talks		talk
hän näkele	(s)he sees	he näkelvät	thev see



### Exercise 1

Here are the Finnish names of some things to like:

kahvi	coffee	talvi e	winter
tee	tea	kesä	summer
viini	wine	syksy	autumn
viina	spirits		

Now put into Finnish:

- 1 I like coffee.
- 2 Do you like tea?
- 3 She likes summer(time).
- 4 I like spirits, he likes wine.
- 5 We like Finland.



### Exercise 2

To practise some of the verb forms introduced above, put the following into Finnish. Don't forget to compress consonants as necessary!

- 1 I say
- 2 We see
- 3 Do you (polite) like Paris?
- 4 They are looking for a flat (asunto).
- 5 She is talking about (use -stA) Finland.
- 6 Do you see?

#### Preferences

To state preferences such as 'I prefer coffee', you use the adverb **mieluummin** 'more gladly' with whatever verb is appropriate. So 'I prefer coffee' is **Mä juo**|n **mieluummin kahvia**, more closely translated 'I drink coffee more gladly'. Study these examples:

Mä pidän televisio|sta, mutta mä kuuntelen mieluummin radio|ta.

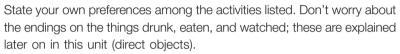
Ne pitää vede|stä, mutta ne juo mieluummin viini|ä.

I like television, but I prefer to listen to the radio.

They like water, but they prefer to drink wine.

You'll learn more about comparative adverbs in Unit 11.

### Exercise 3



Model: **Mä pidän ranska**|**sta, mutta mä puhun mieluummin ruotsi**|**a**. I like French, but I prefer speaking Swedish.

- 1 drinking (juo-) water or milk (maito|a).
- 2 eating (syö-) fish or cheese (juusto|a).
- 3 watching (katsele-) television (televisio|ta) or listening to the radio (radio|ta).
- 4 speaking English or Finnish.
- 5 listening to the clarinet (klarinetti|a) or the piano (piano|a).

# Language point

# More on alternating stems: X-stems and Q-stems

The capital of Finland is **Helsinki**, and the Finnish word for 'tyre' is **rengas**. Now have a look at these two words in their genitive forms:

Helsingi|n historia the history of Helsinki renkaa|n hinta the price of a tyre

X-stems (or: it seems to end in **s**, but ...)

In the previous unit you saw how the consonants of many Finnish words become compressed when certain suffixes are added, for example, the **nk** of **Helsinki** becomes **ng** when the 'tight-lid' suffix -**n** is added: **Helsingi**|**n** 'of Helsinki; Helsinki's'.





But a noun like **rengas** 'tyre', whose stem ends in a consonant, is different. The **-ng-** in this stem is *already compressed*, because the **s** at the end of the stem acts like a 'tight lid'. When you add a 'tight-lid' suffix to such a stem, the **s** changes to the vowel-copier #, yielding the long vowel sequence (**aX** > **a#** >) **aa**, and since this **aa** provides more vowel space at the end of the stem, there is room for the **ng** to 'decompress' into its plain state **nk**. The genitive singular is therefore **renkaa**|**n**, and the elative ('out of the/a tyre') is **renkaa**|**sta**. (Some descriptions of Finnish call this 'reverse gradation', but this is a misleading term. From the point of view of the sounds that are alternating, there is nothing 'reverse' about it: we have compressed versus uncompressed sounds in precisely the same environments.)

The alternation of **s** with **#** is characteristic of a large number of nominal stems. We shall use the letter **X** to refer to the alternation **s**/**#** and shall refer to stems of this kind as **X**-stems. To save space and time in the vocabularies of each unit, we shall write **renkaX** instead of spelling out both the citation form **rengas** and the genitive singular **renkaa**|**n**.



#### (CD1: 15)

Here are a few more examples, with the citation and genitive singular forms listed together for you to compare. In each instance, the compressed consonants are in *italics*:

English comb tooth sun king war slow sΝ kampa hammas aurinko kuni*ng*a|s sota hidas sG kamma|n hampaa|n auringo|n kuninkaa|n soda|n hitaa|n kuninkaX hitaX Stem kampa hampaX aurinko sota

Here are a few more very common X-stems:

patsaX statue sairaX ill

vieraX guest; visitor

kalliX expensive (and so kallis, genitive kallii|n)

kauniX beautiful

IounaX lunch; southwest

opaX guidebook (and so opas, genitive oppaa|n)

rakkaX dear (rakas, rakkaa|n) rikkaX rich (rikas, rikkaa|n)

valmiX ready

tehtaX factory (tehdas, tehtaa|n)
raskaX difficult; heavy; pregnant

Unit 2: No thanks!

Note on verbs: Many verbs, too, end in **X**; this **X** behaves slightly differently from the **X** found in nouns and adjectives. At this point you need only know that to the left of all of the suffixes you have met so far, this **X** is read as **A**. Thus from the stem **haluX**- 'wants' you may form 'I want': **mä halua**|**n**.

#### Q-stems (or: it seems to end in e, but ...) (CD1; 16)



There is also a large set of Finnish words which – like **X**-stems – have a stem which ends in a 'tight lid', but which – unlike **X**-stems, which end in **s** in the citation form – are written as if they ended in the vowel **e**. If you listen carefully, you will hear most Finns pronounce a consonant (glottal stop, in fact; see p. 4) after this **e**. We shall call these stems **Q**-stems, and write their final 'tight lid' as **Q** when giving their stems in the vocabularies.

When a 'tight-lid' suffix is added, the sequence  $\mathbf{eQ}$  is read as  $\mathbf{ee}$ . Consonant compression and decompression occur exactly as in the  $\mathbf{X}$ -stems. Compare the forms (once again, compressed consonants are in italics):

English	shore	wrist	custom	need	war	rain
sN	ranta	ran <i>n</i> e	tapa	tarve	sota	sade
sG	ran <i>n</i> a∣n	rantee n	tava∣n	tarpee n	so <i>d</i> a∣n	satee n
Stem	ranta	ranteQ	tapa	tarpeQ	sota	sateQ

Here are a few more very common Q-stems:

mistake

huoneQ	room
kirjeQ	letter
aineQ	substance; essay
esineQ	object
koneQ	machine
kappaleQ	unit

osoitteQ address (and so, perfectly regularly, citation form

osoite, genitive osoittee|n)

alueQ region

virheQ

raiteQ (and so: raide, raitee|n) railroad track



### Exercise 4a

To say 'after the lesson' you put the noun that means 'lesson', **tunti**, into the genitive and put the word for 'after', **jälkeen**, after it: thus **tunni|n jälkeen**. Develop your facility for Finnish stem-types while you learn how to say:

1 after the sauna (sauna) 2 after the war (sota)

3 after breakfast (aamiainen)

4 after the exam (koe, stem: kokeQ-)

5 after the break (tauko)

6 after the rain (sade, stem: sateQ-)



### Exercise 4b

Now translate these similar Finnish phrases, built not only with jälkeen but also with takana 'behind', takia 'because of', alla 'under', and sijaan 'instead (of)'.

#### Model:

pilven takana behind a cloud renkaan sijaan instead of a tyre

Helsingin sijaan
veden alla
uuden tehtaan takana
kokeen sijaan
tarpeen takana
kauniin patsaan alla
sairaan hampaan takia
kalliin lounaan jälkeen



# Language points

#### **Direct objects**

**Mä maksan** *lasku*|*n*. I'll pay the bill.

Mä juon kahvi|a. I'll drink some coffee.

To say things like 'I'll pay the bill' or 'I'll drink some coffee' in Finnish, you have to know how to form the *direct object* (see the Glossary of grammatical terms at the back of this book if you're feeling shaky about what that might be). In the first example, you put the word for 'bill', **lasku**, into the genitive: **lasku**|n.

Unit 2: No thanks!

But the genitive will not do for the second example. This is because 'some coffee' refers to a vague amount of coffee, not a known, specific, finite, definite portion; and it is definite direct objects that the genitive marks. Thus **Mä juon kahvi**|n would mean 'I'll drink the coffee', where a specific portion – say, a particular cup of coffee, perhaps even already poured – is meant.

To express 'some coffee' you need to use the *partitive case*. To form this, see the next section.

#### How to form the (singular) partitive

This case form is vital, but building it can be a bit complicated, so it's a good idea to start practising early. This section begins with a survey of ways in which the partitive is formed. You should read these through with the aim of getting the general picture; do *not* bother trying to memorize them. The section to follow – 'using the partitive' – is a brief introduction to some of the uses of the partitive. Once you've read that through to the end, do Exercises 6 and 7 by referring back to this section.

We may think of the suffix of the partitive singular as -TA, with A standing, as always, for a and  $\ddot{a}$  according to vowel harmony and with upper case T standing for a t which is idiosyncratic in that it alternates with zero. The suffix thus has two subtypes, -tA and -A.

You can tell which subtype of this suffix to add, -tA or -A, by knowing the stem of the nominal to which you want to attach it.

The suffix is -tA if the stem ends in a long vowel or diphthong:

earth, land moon road, way free region return fillet (stage) review high
֡֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜

Stems that end in any	single vowel	other than	e take -A:
-----------------------	--------------	------------	------------

kala	kala∣a	fish
kesä	kesä∣ä	summer
talo	talo∣a	house
sähkö	sähkö∣ä	electricity
katu	katu∣a	street
levy	levy∣ä	record, disk
kasetti	kasetti a	casette

If a nominal stem ends in **e** (really **e**, and not **Q**! Remember **Q**-stems, discussed above), you must examine the consonant to the left of this **e** in order to determine how to proceed:

- 1 If that consonant is a single dental consonant (s, t, T, n, I, or r) preceded by a vowel or by any of the consonants n, I, or r, delete the final e and add -tA. We'll refer to such stems as dental stems.
- 2 Otherwise just add -A, leaving the stem-final e intact.



You can revise the nominative and genitive as you compare them with the partitive singular forms of the following nominals (compressed consonants in italics):

Stem	vete	kiele	suure	suomalaise	ääne	kante	purte
sN sG sP	vesi vede n vet tä	kieli kiele∣n kiel∣tä	-	suomalainen suomalaise n suomalais ta	ääne∣n	-	pursi pu <i>rr</i> e n purt ta
English	water	language	great	Finnish (adj)	voice	lid, cover	sail

Stem	oluTe	lahte	Suome	onne	järve
sN sG sP	olut olue∣n olut∣ta	lahti lahde∣n lahte∣a	Suomi Suome∣n Suome∣a	onni onne∣n onne∣a	järvi järve∣n järve∣ä
English	beer	bay	Finland	joy	lake

If the stem ends in a consonant, the suffix is -tA; Q is read as t and X is read as s:

Stem	kirjeQ	sateQ	sairaX	hampaX
sN sG sP	kirje kirjee∣n kirjet∣tä	sade satee∣n sadet∣tä	sairas sairaa∣n sairas∣ta	ha <i>mm</i> as hampaa∣n ha <i>mm</i> as∣ta
English	letter	rain	ill	tooth

This treatment of the formation of the partitive leaves quite a few loose ends, but these will be handled individually. For example, **lohi** e 'salmon' acts like a dental stem (**loh|ta**), and **lumi** e 'snow' not only acts like a dental stem but its **m** changes to **n** (**lun|ta**). All such deviations will be noted in the vocabulary lists.

Finally, note also that a few frequently used stems have a **T** like that of the partitive in that it alternates with zero: the most important ones are **oluTe**, **olut** 'beer', **ohuTe**, **ohut** 'thin', **lyhyTe**, **lyhyt** 'short', and **kevytTe**, **kevyt** 'light', with genitives singular **ohue**|**n**, **lyhye**|**n**, **kevye**|**n**.

### Exercise 5



To say 'before the lesson' you put the word **ennen** before the noun that means 'lesson', **tunti**, and you put **tunti** in the partitive, thus **ennen tunti**|a. Practise your partitives while you learn how to say (if you have forgotten any of the vocabulary, look back at Exercise 4a):

- 1 before the sauna
- 2 before the war
- 3 before breakfast
- 4 before the exam
- 5 before the break

# Language point



### Using the partitive

The partitive has an enormous range of uses, but they may all be placed under the headings incompleteness, vagueness, and negativity. What follows here is a checklist of the more important instances of these headings; further discussion will follow in appropriate sections,

as indicated. For now, just read through this section to get a general idea of what the partitive is for.

The partitive singular marks:

- 1 The greater bulk of something of which only a part is specified, e.g. lasi olut|ta 'a glass of beer', kuudes helmikuu|ta 'the sixth of February', missä Helsinki|ä päin 'whereabouts in Helsinki?', vähäksi aika|a 'for a little while'. Here we may also place kolme poika|a 'three boys', more closely something more like 'a threesome of boy'. Note the word order of this type of construction, with the word which is in the partitive placed second. For details, see Unit 7 (numerals) and Unit 9 (time expressions).
- 2 The domain of which most prepositions (and some postpositions) are the specific: you have already met **ennen**, as in **ennen sota**|**a** 'before the war'; other examples are **ilman apu**|**a** 'without assistance', **tie**|**tä pitkin** 'along the road'. For more on prepositions and postpositions see Unit 9.
- 3 The outdone member of a comparison: **puu**|**ta kovempi** 'harder than wood', **minu**|**a vanhempi** 'older than me'. In this construction the word in the partitive comes first; you'll learn more in Unit 8.
- 4 An indefinite quantity or entity, e.g. **leipä**|**ä** '(some) bread', contrast sN **leipä** 'the bread; bread (in general); a(n entire) loaf of bread'.
- 5 Any direct object which is not fully acted upon, even if it is itself a definite quantity and entity. Thus Mä syön leipä|ä can mean not only 'I'm eating some bread' but also 'I'm eating the loaf (but haven't finished)'. Here belong activities which have no specific goal or clear outcome, as in Se rakastaa Irma|a '(S)he loves Irma', Se raapii pää|tä|än 'He scratches his head', Mä ajan auto|a 'I'll drive the car'. Contrast Mä ajan auto|n korjaamoon 'I'll drive the car into the repair shop', an activity with a clear goal and an outcome whose success can be assessed.
- 6 Any direct object whatsoever, if the verb is negated: **Mä en syö**' **leipä**|**ä** 'I won't eat any bread, I won't eat the bread', **Se ei maksa**' **lasku**|**a** '(S)he won't pay the bill'.
- 7 The partitive is also used to mark indeterminacy in an intransitive subject, provided it is of an indefinite quantity or the verb is negated, for example, Kuussa on vet|tä 'There is water on the moon', Meillä ei ole auto|a 'We don't have a car'. You'll learn more about these kinds of sentence later on in this unit.

### Exercise 6



You can't speak an entire language, you can only speak parts of it. So it is not surprising that the direct object of 'I speak Finnish' is put into the partitive: **Mä puhun suome**|a.

You have already met the names of many languages in Unit 1: they are usually identical (but note that they are not capitalized) to the names of the countries in which they are spoken by the majority. Complete these sentences by supplying the partitive form of the appropriate language name.

1	András on unkarilainen; se puhuu	
2	Irma on Italiasta kotoisin; se puhuu	
3	Poliitikko on ruotsalainen; se puhuu	
4	Poliisi on ranskalainen; se puhuu	
5	Victor on Hollannista kotoisin; se puhuu	

### Exercise 7



Since the partitive marks direct objects which are not completely affected, one way to express the idea that someone is still in the middle of doing something is to put the direct object in the partitive. Thus: **Heikki maksaa laskula.** 'Heikki is paying the bill (right now; he hasn't finished yet)', or **Anna lukee lehtelä** 'Anna is reading the newspaper'.

Use the following vocabulary to build similar sentences with incompletely affected direct objects:

Subjects: Jari, Anna, Jussi, Satu

#### Verbs:

katso-	look at, watch	etsi-	look for
pese-	wash	maalaX-	paint
luke-	read	kirjoitta-	write
kuuntele-	listen to	syö-	eat

#### Direct objects:

omena	apple	kynä	pen
lattia	floor	lehti e	newspaper
kirja	book	kasetti	casette
postikortti	postcard	levy	record; disk
televisio	television	talo	house
taulu	blackboard	puuro	porridge



# How to say 'not': the negative verb and its associates

At the beginning of this unit you learned that 'I like coffee' is **Mä** pidän kahvista. But what if you don't? You will want to be able to say 'I don't like coffee', and for this you need to know how to negate verbs in Finnish.

There are two parts. The first is the negative verb,  $\mathbf{e}$ -; it is to this little stem that you attach the personal endings. Here is the paradigm for colloquial Finnish:

	Singular	Plural
1	e n	e mme
2	e t	e tte
3		e i

Once again, one form serves for both singular and plural in the third person (more formal Finnish has plural ei|vät). Just the word ei on its own is used to mean 'no', as in Ei, kiitos 'No, thanks'.

The second part is called the *connegative*. To form this, you add the suffix  $-\mathbf{Q}$  to whatever verb you want to negate. So, the connegative of **pitä**- is **pidä** (with compression  $\mathbf{t} > \mathbf{d}$  because of the 'tight-lid' suffix  $-\mathbf{Q}$ ; compare the  $\mathbf{d}$  of **sade** 'rain' in the section on  $\mathbf{Q}$ -stems, above).

Put the two parts together and you have a negated verb, for example: **Mä en pidä kahvista**. 'I don't like coffee.' Such a statement is a bit blunt, so it is best to preface it with something like **Anteeksi, mutta**... 'Sorry, but...', or **Valitettavasti** 'Unfortunately'.

Pronunciation note: In the speech of most Finns, the **Q** at the end of the connegative copies any consonant to its right. It is as if we were to write **Mä en pidäk kahvista**; from time to time, as a reminder of this pronunciation, we shall use superscript consonants in this book, like this: **Mä en pidä<sup>k</sup> kahvista**.

Now have a look at these short dialogues:

Juotko sä viiniä?

Ei, kiitos. Valitettavasti mä en pidä viinistä.

Will you have (i.e. drink) some wine?

No, thanks. Unfortunately I don't like wine.

#### Otatko kahvia?

Ei, kiitos. Mä juon mieluummin teetä.

Will you have (i.e. take) some coffee? No. thanks. I'd rather have some tea.

### Exercise 8





# Language points

#### The cardinal numerals and how to use them

(CD1; 18)

The basic cardinal numerals are:

- 1 yksi (stem: yhte-)
- 2 kaksi (stem: kahte-)
- 3 kolme (stem: kolme-)
- 4 neljä
- 5 viisi te
- 6 kuusi te
- 7 seitsemän (stem: seitsemä-)
- 8 kahdeksan (stem: kahdeksa-)
- 9 yhdeksän (stem: yhdeksä-)
- 10 kymmenen (stem: kymmene-)
- 100 sata
- 1000 tuhat (stem: tuhante-; sG tuhanne|n, sP tuhat|ta)

Notice the rather unexpected forms of the stems of the words for 'one', 'two', 'seven' to 'ten', and the partitive of 'thousand'.

The teens are made by adding +toista to the names of the integers: thus 'eleven' is **yksitoista** and 'eighteen' is **kahdeksantoista**.

To use the numerals with nouns, you put the noun which refers to the thing counted into the partitive singular. For example:







#### (CD1; 19)

kaksi talo|atwo houseskolme tyttö|äthree girlsneljä nime|äfour namesviisi suomalais|tafive Finns

'Twenty' is **kaksi|kymmentä**, i.e. 'two tens': 'two' plus the partitive of **kymmenen** 'ten'; note that the phrase is written together. Similarly:

kolme|kymmentä|viisithirty-fiveneljä|kymmentä|seitsemänforty-sevenviisi|sataa|kuusi506kahdeksan|sataa|neljä|toista814tuhat|yhdeksän|sataa|kolme|kymmentä|seitsemän1937

You'll learn more about numerals in Units 7 and 11.

#### More on possession: how to say 'I have a cat'

You have already learned that to say something like 'Irma's cat' in Finnish you must put the owner, Irma, into the genitive case: Irma|n kissa. In this section we shall be looking at how Finns express things like 'Irma has a cat'.

From an English perspective it's not at all straightforward, since Finnish doesn't have a verb 'to have'. What Finnish speakers do instead is this. They simply say that the possession 'is', and put the possessor into the adessive case (suffix -IIA, attached just like the elative -stA). So 'Irma has a cat' is Irma|IIa on kissa.

Here are some more examples:

**Lapse**|**Ila on koira.** The child has a dog.

(lapsi e 'child'; koira 'dog')

Kaisa|lla ei ole koira|a. Kaisa doesn't have a dog.

Mei|llä on aika|a. We have time.

Onko su|lla aika|a? Do you have time?

Häne|llä ei ole laisi|a. (S)he doesn't have a glass.

Peka|lla ei ole raha|a. Pekka hasn't any money.

Minulla on kaksi siskola. I have two sisters.

Notice the adessive forms of the personal pronouns: **mei|llä** for the first person plural (and similarly, **tei|llä** and **hei|llä** for the second and third persons plural); and **minu|lla** for the first person singular (cropped

form: **mu|lla**) and **sinu|lla** (**su|lla**) for the second person singular. The (formal) third person singular pronoun **hän** is a dental stem: **häne|llä**. Informal **se** and **ne** have the adessives **si|llä** and **nii|llä**.

If both possessor and possession are thought of as concrete and inanimate, the possessor goes into the *inessive case*. This is formed with the suffix -ssA, which you attach just like the elative -stA.

Tä|ssä ruua|ssa ei ole makua. Tä|ssä pöydä|ssä on vain kolme ialkaa.

Kiele ssä on paljon tuntohermoja.

This food has no flavour. This table has only three

legs.
The tongue has a lot of sensory nerves.

#### Contrast:

Mikä ero on sano|i|lla 'järvi' ja 'lampi'? What difference do the words 'järvi' and 'lampi' have? (i.e. What's the difference between 'järvi' and 'lampi'?)

Miksi si|llä tehtaa|lla on se nimi?

'Why does the factory have that name?'

The inessive is also used for personal and abstract, rather than physical and concrete, attributes, as in **Häne**|ssä on tyyli '(S)he's got style' or Sinu|ssa ei ole mikään vikaa 'There's nothing wrong with you'. Contrast **Häne**|Ilä on jotain outoa '(S)he has something strange' with **Häne**|ssä on jotain outoa 'There's something strange about her/him'.

Lastly, when personal pronouns are the possession, they take the suffix -t, for example:

Su|lla on aina minu|t. You'll always have me.

You will learn more about this -t suffix in Unit 5.

### Exercise 9

This exercise is designed to help you to acquire facility in discussing possession. The task is to convert, say, 'Irma's cat is white' to 'Irma has a white cat' (or the reverse).

Model: Irman kissa on valkoinen. → Irmalla on valkoinen kissa.

- 1 Presidentin auto on iso.
- 2 Onks meillä tummaa olutta?



- 3 Talossa on vihreä ovi.
- 4 Baarimikon vaimo on ruotsalainen.
- 5 Onko Teillä pieni asunto?
- 6 Szilvian ääni on kaunis.



#### (CD1; 20)

These further examples are chiefly for later reference, but don't be afraid to have a look at them now:

Minu|lla on parempi ajatus. Minu|lla on lippu|j|a. Minu|lla on lipu|t. Lipu|t on minu|lla. Mu|lla on sulle jo|tain kiinnostava|a.

Heil|lä ei ole mi|tään sanomis|ta. Kuinka mon|ta las|ta tei|llä on?

Rouva Salmise|lla on suku|a Ruotsissa.

Häne llä on koko yö edessään.

Onko tei llä aivan oma sauna?

Jokaise Ila on oma makunsa.

Kaike|lla on rajansa. Onks su|lla mun osoitteeni? Eikö häne|llä ole velikin?

Onko tei|llä kaikki muu|t huonekalu|t? Haluan että se on jo|llaku|lla. Häne|llä on veitsi kädessään.

Sen miehe|llä on suu kuin kala|lla.

I have a better idea.

I have some tickets.

I have the tickets.

I have the tickets.

I have something interesting for you.

They have nothing to say. How many children do you have?

Mrs Salminen has family in Sweden.

(S)he has the whole night ahead of him/her.

Do you have your very own sauna?

Everyone has his/her own taste.

Everything has its limits.

Do you have my address?

Doesn't (s)he have a brother,
as well?

Do you have all the rest of the furniture?

I want someone to have it. (S)he has a knife in his/her hand.

Her husband has a mouth like a fish (has).



Bus tickets

### EXERCISE 10a

#### Translate:

- 1 Hänellä on paljon ('a lot') aikaa.
- 2 Meillä on vähän ('a little') aikaa.
- 3 Hänellä ei ole rahaa ('money').
- 4 Tässä pöydässä ei ole tilaa ('space, room').
- 5 Minulla on viisi koiraa.
- 6 Onks sulla suosikkibändiä ('favourite band')?
- 7 Suomessa on paljon puuta ('wood').

### Exercise 10b

#### Say in Finnish:

- 1 (S)he has a lot of money.
- 2 Pekka has lots of time.
- 3 We have family (use suku|a 'some kin') in Lappi.





- 4 Do you have a dog?
- 5 I have seven dogs.
- 6 I have no favourite band.
- 7 There's room (space) in this room.



### Exercise 11

Make up three sentences naming things you do and don't have. Use the -IIA ole- construction.

Model: Minulla ei ole omaa asuntoa, mutta mulla on rahaa pankissa.



### Exercise 12

Study this model:

#### Minulla on radio, mutta siinä ei ole kelloa.

I have a radio, but it doesn't have a clock/there's no clock in it.

The form **siinä** is the inessive of **se**. Use this to make up similar sentences on the model above. Take pairs from among the following words:

auto	car	kuppi	cup
raha	money	lompakko	billfold, wallet
kahvi	coffee	musteQ	ink
postimerkki	stamp	bensiini	petrol
kynä	pen	kuori e	envelope



### Language point

#### The two basic constituent orders

In Unit 1, you met one basic constituent order for Finnish declarative clauses, namely subject – verb – rest of the clause, as in **Minä olen englantilainen** 'I am English', **Kahvi on kylmää** 'The coffee is cold'. Direct objects fit in the rest-of-the-clause slot, e.g. **Minä syön voileivän** 'I'll eat a sandwich', **Minä syön voileipää** 'I'm eating a/the sandwich'. Polar questions (inviting an affirmative or negative response) invert the subject and verb (**Onko kahvi kylmää?** 'Is the coffee cold?') but

Unit 2: No thanks! 47

content questions (asking things like **kuka** 'who', **mikä** 'what', **milloin** 'when', **missä** 'where', **kuinka** 'how', **miksi** 'why') leave the basic subject-verb order unchanged (**Miksi kahvi on kuumaa?** 'Why is the coffee cold'?).

In this unit, you have met the other basic Finnish constituent order, namely X – verb – subject, as in **M**(in)u|lla on kaksi kissaa 'I have two cats'. The 'X' here can be any word or expression that is not the verb; it usually refers to a person, place, or time. This order is neutral and normal not only in clauses that express ownership, but also in any context in which the presence of the subject at that place and time is more important than what the subject is doing; this is why the most common verb in this kind of clause is the verb 'to be' (on, ole-), used in the sense 'exists, there is' as in Lattialla on vettä 'There's water on the floor'. You'll learn more about these constructions in Units 4 and 6.

# **Unit Three**

# Ole hyvä!

Help yourself!



#### In this unit you will learn:

- how to make, accept, and decline offers, and other common conversational formulae
- how to make requests and how to give commands (imperative)
- how to ask who, what, where, when, why
- · how to form and use the first infinitive



## 🙆 Language point

### Making and accepting offers



(CD1; 21)
Two short exchanges

Saisko olla kahvia? Kiitos

Would you like some coffee? Thanks.

Ota kahvia. Kiitos.

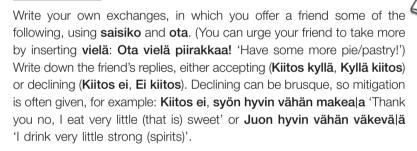
Have some coffee.

Thanks.

In the first exchange above, someone is offering his or her guest some coffee. Since it's *some* coffee, we have the partitive **kahvi**|a. The actual offering is being done by the little formulaic word **saisiko** (more colloquial variants include **saisko**, **saiskos**). This construction is always polite and thus never out of place.

The second exchange illustrates another common way of offering something, especially food or drink. Once again, we have **kahvi**|**a** in the partitive; but this construction is different in that **ota** is a command: it is the imperative of the the verb **otta**- 'takes'. Later on in this unit you will find an outline of the various forms of the imperative and an overview of verbal stem types, but for now you should practise making various offers.

### Exercise 1





A few more short exchanges

Saisinko voileivän? Totta kai!

Could I have a sandwich? (Indeed you may.) (= Yes.)

Saanko sokeria? Olkaa hyvä.

May I have some sugar? Here you are. (or: Help yourself.) To request something, you use **saa**|**n**|**ko**, or, more politely, **sa**|**is**|**n**|**ko**. These are both first person forms of the verb **saa**- 'get' and would translate more closely into something like 'May I (get)?' and 'Might I (get)?' (You'll find out about the **isi** of **sa**|**isi**|**n**|**ko** in Unit 10.) The thing requested is the direct object of the sentence, and is therefore put into the accusative (which, so far, is the same as the genitive; but see below) or the partitive.

It is put into the accusative (i.e. the genitive) if it is a whole, individual, countable, self-contained thing such as a sandwich (**voileivä**|**n**, 'butter bread', above); it is put into the partitive if it is something which comes in various indefinite quantities, like sugar (**sokeri**|**a** above). The difference is basically one of whole versus part, and English usually handles this with 'a(n)' or 'the' versus 'some':

the glass?

Saisinko vet|tä? May I have some water? Compare Saisinko lasi|a May I have some glass?

(at the glazier's)



### Exercise 2

Now write your own short exhanges, in which you request the following, using the genitive or partitive direct object form as appropriate. Have your collocutor accede, either with **Totta kai!** 'Yes indeed' or **Olkaa hyvä**, a formula you use whenever you hand anything to anyone.

sämpylä	roll	leipä	bread
kahvi	coffee	lusikka	spoon
voi	butter	lautanen se	plate
hillo	jam	suola	salt



#### Issuing commands: the imperative

At the beginning of this unit, you learned that **ota!** 'take!' is grammatically an imperative. This section shows you how to make imperative verb forms.

There are two forms commonly used, singular and plural. As in other tenses and moods of the verb, you use the plural form when talking to more than one friend, or to be polite when speaking to one or more relative strangers; you use the singular form only when talking to one friend.

The suffixes of these two types of imperative are **-Q** for the singular and **-kAA** for the plural. Study the imperatives of these four verbs:

(CD1; 22)

Stem	Imperative		English
otta-	ota! otta kaa!	singular plural/formal	take!
tilaX-	tilaa! tilat∣kaa!	singular plural/formal	order!
mene-	mene! men∣kää!	singular plural	go!
vie-	vie! vie∣kää!	singular plural	take (away)!



As these forms show, adding singular imperative  $-\mathbf{Q}$  to a verb stem can have two kinds of effect. It compresses consonants (e.g. the  $\mathbf{tt} > \mathbf{t}$  in  $\mathbf{ota!}$ ) and it changes  $\mathbf{X}$  to  $\mathbf{A}$  (e.g. the second  $\mathbf{a}$  of  $\mathbf{tilaa!}$ ).

On the other hand, the suffix of the plural imperative -kAA causes no compression (since by virtue of its shape it is not a 'tight lid') and it changes X to t (e.g. tilatkaa!). It also deletes any e at the end of a verb stem, provided that this e is preceded by I, n, r, or s, as in men|kää, above.

#### Direct objects, again

Before you begin to practise using verbs in the imperative, a further word about direct objects is in order. So far, you have seen that a direct object that is conceived of as completely affected is put in a form which – so far – has been the same as the genitive, e.g. **Mä syön voileivä**|n 'l'll eat the sandwich'. We have called this case the accusative in order to distinguish it from those occasions when the direct object is only partly affected or the activity is vague in some way, e.g. **Mä syön leipä**|ä 'l'm eating the bread (but haven't finished)'

or 'I'll eat some bread'. In this latter scenario, the direct object goes into the partitive case.

In imperative sentences, things are slightly different. The partitive is used in the same way, e.g. **Syö leipä**|**ä**! 'Eat some bread!'; but the accusative which marks the complete direct object of an imperative verb does not resemble the genitive. Instead, it is identical to the citation form, e.g. **Syö voileipä!** 'Eat the sandwich!'

The personal pronouns are yet another matter. Once again, these are put in the partitive if the activity is incomplete or vague, e.g. **Auta minu|a!** 'Help me!' (autta- 'helps'), but they take their own special suffix, -t, when they are completely affected objects or the activity is easily assessed or measured, e.g. **Vie minu|t ulos!** 'Take me outside!'

Don't worry about all these details just now; they will coalesce in your mind as you work through other points, and all will be revised in Unit 5. For now, have a look at a few more examples of direct objects with the imperative.

#### Complete direct objects

Täyttä|kää tämä lomake! Fill in this form! (täyttä- 'fills', lomakkeQ 'form to be filled in')

Sammuta lamppu! Turn out the lamp! (sammutta- 'extinguishes', lamppu 'lamp')

Avaa suu! Open (your) mouth! (avaX- 'opens', suu 'mouth')

#### Incomplete direct objects

Avaa suu|ta vähän enemmän! Tuo kuuma|a vet|tä!

Tuo kuumaja vetita:

Bring some hot water!
(tuo- 'brings', kuuma 'hot')
Follow him! (seuraX- 'follows')

Open your mouth a little more!

#### Seuraa hän∣tä!

## Exercise 3

To practise what you have learned, try telling first a friend, then a relative stranger to do the following things. Remember to soften the command by telling them to 'be good': **Ole hyvä** (singular and informal) or **Olkaa hyvä** (plural and/or formal).

#### Tell him/her to:

1 follow you

2 bring some juice

3 open the door (ovi e)

4 close (**sulke**-) the window (**ikkuna**)

5 put (pane-) the cat out

6 fetch (hake-) a doctor

7 take the television away

(pois)

8 eat some cake

9 help the police

10 forget (unohta-) it

## Language point

#### **Prohibition**

To tell someone not to do something, you need the negative imperative, or prohibitive. Like the negative forms you have met so far, this is made up of two parts.

For the singular prohibitive, you use **älä** followed by the connegative, a form you already know. Since the verb is negative, *any* direct object will be in the partitive, whether incomplete or not:

(CD1; 23)

Älä mene! Don't go!

Älä suutu! Don't be (get) angry!

(suuttu- 'becomes angry')

Älä syö leipä|ä! Don't eat any bread or Don't eat the bread!

To build the plural prohibitive, you use **älkää** instead of **älä**, and add -**kO** to the main verb, instead of the usual connegative -**Q**. The plural prohibitives corresponding to the examples above are therefore:

Älkää menkö! Älkää suuttuko! Älkää syökö leipää!

*Tip*: Notice that the suffixes of the connegative and of the singular imperative are identical in shape: they are both -**Q**, a 'tight-lid' suffix. Another pair of lookalikes is the -**kO** used to form the plural prohibitive and the -**kO** which makes yes/no questions; since -**kO** is not a 'tight-lid' shape, these suffixes do not cause compression. Compare:

Ota viiniä! Have some wine! (pronounce: otav viiniä)
Älä ota viiniä! Don't have any wine! (pronounce: otav viiniä)





Ota|tte|ko viiniä? Will you have some wine? (plural) Älkää otta|ko viiniä! Don't have any wine! (plural)



### Exercise 4

Practise both singular and plural prohibitions by redoing the previous exercise, but this time prohibiting rather than issuing commands: say 'Don't follow me!', etc.



### Exercise 5

Get Finns talking about something by asking them to tell (kerto-) you about (use the elative -stA) it. For example: Kerro Suomen talvesta! 'Tell (me) about the Finnish winter!' ('... Finland's winter'). For such purposes you can turn any verb into a noun by adding =minen (=mise-) to the stem. Example: Kerro jotain saunomise|sta. 'Tell (me) something (jotain) about going in the sauna' (sauno- 'uses the sauna').

Here are some topics to get you started: Helsingi|n historia; hiihto 'skiing' Suome|ssa; urheilu 'sport' Suome|ssa; elämä kaupungi|ssa 'life in the city'; suosikkimusiikki 'favourite music'; Ritva.



### Language point

# Content questions: asking who, what, when, where, and why (CD1; 24)

You form this type of question by first saying the question word, then the rest of the sentence. Notice that Finnish doesn't invert the way English does:

Kuka se on?Who is it? (lit. 'Who it is?')Mikä tämä on?What is this? (lit. 'What this is?')Milloin se saapuu?When does it/(s)he arrive?

(lit. 'When it arrives?')

Mitä sä sanot? What are you saying?

Mitä ne ottaa? What'll they have? (lit. 'take?')

Miksi te lähdette? Why are you (plural or formal) leaving?

Missä ne asuu? Where do they live?

Missä ne asuu? Where do they live?

Minne ne menee? Where are they going?

Mistä se tulee? Where does it come from?

Study these further examples in order to become more familiar with the pattern and to pick up some more useful vocabulary:

Kuka puuttuu?
Mistä ne puhuu?
Mitä sä teet joka aamu,
ennen kun lähdet kotoa?
Milloin se tulee takaisin?
Miksi ne menee pois?
Se tietää, kuka sä olet.

Who's missing?
What are they talking about?
What do you do every morning
before you leave the house?
When is it/(s)he coming back?
Why are they going away?
(S)he knows who you are.

The most frequently used question words are the various forms of **kuka** 'who?', which is used of people, and **mikä** 'what?', which is used of things. Both of these words have slightly irregular paradigms: they keep their second syllable (**kuka**, **mikä**) only if they would otherwise become monosyllabic, and **kuka** switches to **ke(ne)**- for all cases except the citation form. Here are the case forms you have met so far, listed alongside a few personal pronouns and a noun, for comparison and revision:

sN mi kä kuka m(in)ä hän se talo sG mi n kä kene n m(in)u n häne n se n talo n sP mi tä ke tä m(in)u a hän tä si tä talo a sELA mi stä kene stä m(in)u sta häne stä sii tä (!) talo sta sADE mi llä kene llä m(in)u lla häne llä si llä talo lla		what	who	I, me	(s)he	it, (s)he	house
SACC RETER HUHBUIL HAHER	sG sP sELA	mi n kä mi tä mi stä mi llä	kene n ke tä kene stä	m(in)u n m(in)u a m(in)u sta	häne∣n hän∣tä häne∣stä	se n si tä sii tä (!) si llä	talo n talo a talo sta talo lla

<sup>\*</sup> Remember that the accusative forms of **milkä** and **se**, like those of all nouns in the singular (like **talo** 'house'), are identical to either their genitive or their nominative singular.

Where are you now? Where are you (coming) from?

As the sentences in the previous section illustrate, the Finnish equivalents of English 'where' are actually case forms of the word for 'what?', **mikä**:

'from where' is simply the elative, mi|stä, as in Mistä sä olet kotoisin? 'Where are you from?' Compare Mistä maasta sä olet kotoisin? 'What country are you from?', more closely: 'From-what from-country you are by-domicile?'

'(located) where' is in a case called the *inessive*, with 'tight-lid' suffix -ssA. Examples: Mi|ssä sä asut? 'Where do you live?', Mi|ssä kaupungi|ssa sä asut? 'In what city do you live?', Mä asu|n Lontoo|ssa 'I live in London'.

'(going to) where' is in a case called the *illative*. You will learn how to form and use the illative in the next unit.



### Exercise 6

Put these questions into Finnish. All the vocabulary you need is in the back of the book (and some is already in your head):

- 1 He is arriving from Turku.
- 2 They live in Helsinki.
- 3 They're waiting outside.
- 4 What does she say?
- 5 Where do you (plural or formal) live?
- 6 Where do they sleep?
- 7 Why are you waiting?
- 8 When do we leave?
- 9 They know where we live.



### Exercise 7

What if you don't know the answer? If you are asked something you don't know about, you'll want to say either **Mä en tiedä sitä** 'I don't know it' (if it's a matter of facts) or **Mä en tunne sitä** 'I don't know him/her' if it's the more complex matter of people. Since the verb is negated, you specify what or who it is you don't know by putting it into the partitive, for example:

Mikä sen nimi on? Valitettavasti mä en tiedä sen nimeä.

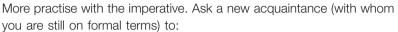
What is her/his name? Unfortunately, I don't know her/his name.

Now reply to these questions by saying you don't know the answer. To soften the blow, insert **valitettavasti** 'unfortunately' or **Mä olen pahoillani** 'l'm sorry'.

- 1 Mikä sen osoite on? (osoitteQ 'address')
- 2 Mikä sen puhelinnumero on? (puhelin|numero 'telephone number')
- 3 Minkälainen ihminen sen isä on? (minkälainen 'what kind of?', ihminen 'human being, person')

- 4 Minkä näköinen sen poika on? (minkä näköinen X on? 'What does X look like?')
- 5 Minkälainen ihminen sen vaimo on? (vaimo 'wife')

### Exercise 8





- 1 Say something in Finnish (suome|ksi).
- 2 Say something about Helsinki.
- 3 Read it to you.
- 4 Sit down.
- 5 Write you a postcard.
- 6 Wait outside (ulkona).

### Exercise 9

Ask the same things as in the previous exercise, this time of a friend (i.e. using the singular forms).



### Exercise 10

'Do you mind if I listen to the radio?' - 'Not at all, carry on!' To encourage someone to go ahead and do something, you use the imperative plus **vaan**.



#### Model:

#### Häiritseekö, jos poltan?

Do you mind (lit. 'Does it disturb') if I smoke?

#### Ei häiritse. Polttakaa vaan!

Not at all (lit. 'It does not disturb'). Carry on and smoke.

Here are some more things people might want to do. Supply the missing Finnish imperatives:

- 1 kuuntelen radiota
- 2 sammutan lampun
- 3 avaan ikkunan
- 4 imuroin (imuroi- 'hoovers')
- 5 otan tämän tuolin

58 Unit 3: Ole hyvä!



### Exercise 11

Encourage a stranger to carry on doing the same things as in the previous exercise.



# 🕜 Language point

#### The first infinitive

Yes, Finnish has more than one infinitive, but they are all easy to form if you know the shape of the verb stem. The first infinitive is the most commonly used one in Finnish, and it has more than one English equivalent. A few examples will illustrate the more common kinds of use: 'I want to go outside', 'I'm in the habit of reading the newspaper in the morning', 'You mustn't smoke in a hospital.' We'll look at more on the uses of the first infinitive later on in this unit, and in Unit 10.

You form the first infinitive by adding the suffix -TAQ directly to the verb stem. Like the partitive suffix -TA, the t at the beginning of the first infinitive suffix is idiosyncratic in that it alternates with zero.

You use the **t**-less variant, -**AQ**, if the verb stem ends in any single vowel other than **e**:

saapu∣a	to arrive	kysy∣ä	to ask
sano∣a	to say	säilö∣ä	to preserve
anta∣a	to give	etsi∣ä	to search for
tietä∣ä	to know		

The **t**-less variant is also used with verbs which end in **e** preceded by any consonant save **n**, **l**, **r**, **s**, or **X**. In fact, there aren't many verbs of this description; the most common ones are **luke**|**a** 'to read', **lähte**|**ä** 'to leave, depart', **hake**|**a** 'to fetch, seek; apply for', **koke**|**a** 'to experience', **päte**|**ä** 'to be valid', and **kylpe**|**ä** 'to bathe'.

From here on, we'll call verbs which belong to these two sets *class I verbs*.

For all other verbs you use not -AQ, but -tAQ. There are three major subgroups. When -tAQ is attached to a verb stem that ends in a long vowel or diphthong (hereafter: class IV verbs), the t of -tAQ compresses to d because of the 'tight-lid' Q to its right:

saa∣da	to get	tuo∣da	to bring
jää∣dä	to remain	syö∣dä	to eat
vie∣dä	to take (somewhere)	imuroi∣da	to hoover

But when attached to a verb stem ending in **e** preceded by **n**, **l**, **r**, **s** (hereafter: *class III verbs*), the **e** is deleted. Of the resulting clusters, **nt**, **lt**, **rt** (but not **st**, which is immune) are compressed by the **Q** at the end. Here's a step-by-step presentation of the formation of these infinitive forms:

Stem+suffix	After <b>e</b> -deletion	Actual form	Compression	English
pure-tAQ	> purtaQ	> pur ra	rt > rr	to bite to go to study to manage to get somewhere
mene-tAQ	> mentäQ	> men nä	nt > nn	
opiskele-tAQ	> opiskeltaQ	> opiskel la	lt > II	
pääse-tAQ	> päästäQ	> pääs tä	(none)	

All other verbs (*class II verbs*) follow their own set of rules. Again, there are three subtypes: verbs whose stems end in **X**, **TSE**, or **(E)XE**. To the left of the first infinitive suffix -**tAQ**, these final elements all change to **t**:

 $\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{X} & > \textbf{t} \\ \textbf{TSE} & > \textbf{t} \\ \textbf{(E)XE} & > \textbf{t} \end{array}$ 

The resulting double **tt** is then compressed to **t**. Examples:

haluX-tAQ	> haluttaQ	> haluta	to want
tarviTSE-tAQ	> tarvittaQ	> tarvita	to need
kylmEXE-tAQ	> kylmettäQ	> kylmetä	to grow cold

Verbs belonging to these three subclasses all have first infinitives that seem to end the same way, in a **t** plus an **A**; but in other parts of their paradigm, the differences are clear. To see this, compare the first infinitive forms with the third person singular present tense forms:

Stem	haluX-	tarviTSE-	kylmEXE-
1st inf	haluta	tarvita	kylmetä
s3ps	halua∣a	tarvitse∣e	kylmene∣e

Finally, the verbs 'see' and 'do' are irregular: although the shape of their stems (näke-, teke-) would lead one to believe they are class I (like luke- 'read', above), their infinitives are näh|dä, teh|dä.



### Exercise 12

One good way to firm up your knowledge of the rules given above is to run them backwards. This is exactly what you'll have to be able to do in order to use Finnish dictionaries, since these list verbs in their first infinitive form.

Tip: If a first infinitive ends in itA (ita or itä), it is almost certainly a TSE-stem like tarviTSE-. The only common exceptions to this latter pattern are the three X-stems häviX-, hävitä 'go missing, lose', selviX-, selvitä 'clear up, get away with', kerkiX-, keritä 'manage to do in a given amount of time'. On the other hand, a first infinitive ending in eta (etä) could be an X-stem (like katketa, katkeaļa 'break') or an (E)XE-stem (like kylmetä, kylmeneļe); in this latter case the meaning will usually be a clue: (E)XE-stems tend to mean things like 'become colder' (kylmetä, from kylmä 'cold'), 'become cheaper' (halveta, from halpa 'cheap'), 'become more forward' (that is: 'advance'; edetä, from the stem ete-'fore'). Notice also that a stem-internal consonantism in the first infinitive may be compressed, like the r in keritä above or like the v in ruveta rupeaļa (stem rupeX-) 'get started'.

Intelliguess the stems for these first infinitives, then check your answers in the Kev at the back of the book:

1	kieltää	'deny'	5	reagoida	'react'
2	niellä	'swallow'	6	katsoa	'look at'
3	suoda	'grant'	7	kiivetä	'creep, climb'
4	valita	'choose'	8	vanheta	'grow old'



# 💋 Language point

# Using the first infinitive: introducing modal verbs

You can simply say that you're going to buy a map (mä ostan karta|n), or you can fine-tune your statement by saying such things as 'I may buy a map', 'I want to buy a map' or 'I'm thinking of buying a map'.

We call such constructions modal expressions, and the verbs used to form them, modal verbs.

There are two basic types of modal construction in Finnish. In the first type, the subject goes in the nominative just as in a simple sentence, and the modal verb agrees with it; the verb that expresses what it is you can do, may do, want to do, or intend to do is in the first infinitive. Common modal verbs are **voi**- 'is able', **haluX**- 'wants', and **taita**- 'is capable, probably is/does':

Mä haluan osta|a uude|n I want to buy a new car.

auto|n.

Ne voi ol|la oikea|ssa. They can be right.

(= It's possible they're right.)
Pete may come home fairly late.

Pekka *taitaa* tul|la kotiin aika myöhään. Sä e*t taida* tuntela sitä.

You must not know him/her.\*

Other examples of modals which form this construction are ajattele- 'think (of doing)', aiko- 'intend', osaX- 'know how (to do)', and three very common verbs which are often used in the negative, ehti- 'have time (to do), get somewhere in time', jaksa- 'have enough strength or stamina (to do), viitsi- 'feel like (doing)', as in Se ei ehdi näh|dä kaikkea '(S)he doesn't/won't have time to see everything', Mä en jaksa enää kuunnel|la tätä ohjelmaa 'I can't stand listening to this programme any more', Etkös viitsi jää|dä vielä? 'Don't you feel like staying (= couldn't you stay) a little longer?'

You will learn about the second type of modal construction in Unit 10.

## Exercise 13



To say that one is not allowed to do something, you use the structure **Ei saa** plus the first infinitive, e.g. **Sairaalassa ei saa poltta|a** 'One is not allowed to smoke in a hospital'. To express 'one shouldn't' you use **ei pitäis**, as in **Ravintolassa ei pitäis nukku|a** 'One shouldn't sleep in a restaurant'. To express impossibility, you use **ei voi**-: **Ilman vettä ei voi elä|ä** 'One cannot live without water'.

Now match up activities (verbs) and circumstances which are mutually inappropriate, then specify why by using ei voi, ei saa,

<sup>\*</sup> or: You probably don't know him/her; or: I guess you don't know him/her.

or **ei pitäis** with the first infinitive. Here is some vocabulary to start you off:

#### activities

hyppi- hop, jump about

syö- eathuuta- shoutaja- drives

#### circumstances

veneessä in a boat

ravintolassa in a restaurant ennen uimista before swimming

ilman ajokorttia without a driver's licence



### Exercise 14

One of the many uses of English 'must' is to convey the idea that we feel certain, on the basis of evidence or gut feeling, that something is the case: 'You must be tired' expresses commiseration, not a command. This kind of 'must' is conveyed by Finnish taita-, e.g. Sä taidat olla väsynyt 'You must be tired.'

Practise this construction by putting these into Finnish:

- She must be Swedish.
- 2 They must have a big house.
- 3 You (p/formal) must need (tarviTSE-) some coffee.
- 4 You (informal) must be new here (täällä).
- 5 You must have an old version (vanha versio).

# Unit Four

## Paikasta toiseen

## Getting around and about

### In this unit you will learn:

- how to get about: giving and understanding directions
- how to say where people and things are, where they're from, and where they're going
- about communicating at the post office, in bars, at railway stations and at passport control

# Dialogue 1



### Kadulla On the street (CD1; 25)



In the street, Nigel asks a stranger, in this case a native of Helsinki (helsinkiläinen) for directions.

NIGEL Anteeksi, voisitteko sanoa, missä rautatieasema

on?

HELSINKILÄINEN Hetkinen . . . se on tuolla, tuon suuren talon takana.

Menkää tästä yli ja sitten kääntykää oikealle

sanomalehtikoiun edessä.

NIGEL Onko se kaukana?

HELSINKILÄINEN Ei ole, sinne on vain noin 300 (kolme sataa) metriä.

NIGEL Kiitoksia paljon.

HELSINKILÄINEN Ei kestä.

NIGEL Excuse me, could you tell me where the railway

station is?

HELSINKIAN Hmm... It's over there, behind that big building.

Cross over here and then turn to the right in front

of the news-stand.

NIGEL Is it far?

HELSINKIAN No, it's only about 300 metres.

NIGEL Thanks very much. HELSINKIAN Don't mention it.



# Vocabulary

anteeksi	excuse me	noin	about, approximately
voisitteko	could you ?	tuo	that
rautatie+asema	railway station	X∣n takana	behind X
sano-	say	tä∣stä	this way, via here
mi∣ssä	where?	yli	across, over
hetkinen se	moment	sitten	then
tuo∣lla	there	käänty-	turn
sanoma+lehti e	newspaper	oikea lle	to the right
koju	booth, small	metri	metre
	stand	Kiitoksia	Many thanks!
X∣n edessä	in front of X	paljon!	
kaukana	far away	Ei kestä	You're welcome/
si∣nne	(to) there		Don't mention it.
vain	only		

### Additional vocabulary: trains and stations

Here are the types of trains you will probably encounter:

kiito+juna more commonly called an intercity; long-

distance train

henkilö+juna passenger train (as opposed to goods train,

tavara|juna)

pika+juna long distance, stopping at main stations

paikallis+juna local service, stops at all stations

#### Other useful train vocabulary includes:

info information office

matkusta|ja passenger tullo arrival läht|ö departure matka+tavara+säilvtvs baggage room ravintola+vaunu restaurant car odotus+huone

konduktööri conductor; officially: junailija

waiting room

hätä|jarru emergency brake

meno- paluu|lippu return (round-trip) ticket meno+lippu single (one-way) ticket

makuu+vaunu sleeping car laituri platform raide (stem: raiteQ) track



Train tickets

women's WC

Some signs you are likely to see at railway stations:

LÖYTÖ|TAVARAT lost and found
LÄHI|LIIKENNE|LIPPUJA local tickets

KAUKOLIIKENNE long-distance traffic
VAIN PARRANAJOKONETTA VARTEN for shavers only
SAAPUVAT arriving (trains)
LÄHTEVÄT departing (trains)
MIESTEN|HUONE men's WC

And here are some phrases that will come in handy:

NAISTEN/HUONE

Minä matkustan junalla.

I'll travel/I'm travelling by train.

Miltä asemalta juna lähtee?

From what station does the

train leave?

Miltä raiteelta juna lähtee? From what track (= platform)

does the train leave?

Mille raiteelle saapuu juna At what track is the Jyväskylä Jyväskylästä? At what track is the Jyväskylä train arriving?

Miten pääsen asemalle? How can I get to the station? Viekää minut rautatieasemalle. Take me to the railway station.

Milloin seuraava juna lähtee When does the next train leave for Turku?

Onko aikaisempaa/ Is there an earlier/later train

myöhempää junaa? at all?

Mistä saa aikataulun? (From) where can one get a timetable?

Onko tämä paikka vapaa/ Is this seat free/reserved?

varattu?
Saanko avata ikkunan?

May I open the window?

Sulkekaa ovi! Close the door!

Once on board and underway, you will probably meet the **konduktööri**, who will call out:

Liput, olkaa hyvät! Tickets, please!

More useful phrases on board:

Pysähtyykö tämä juna X-ssA?

Montako minuuttia vielä on junan lähtöön?

Montako minuuttia juna seisoo?

Montako tuntia matka kestää?

Monesko asema X on?

Koska saavumme Turkuun? Milloin tullaan perille? Onko juna ajassaan? Pitääkö vaihtaa juna? Juna saapuu aikataulun mukaan.

Me ollaan perillä.

Does this train stop at X?

How many minutes (are there) still until the train's departure?
How long will the train be

stopping?

How many hours does the journey take?

How many stations does this make? (This is the what-th station?)

When do we arrive in Turku?

When do we (lit. 'does one') arrive?

Is the train on time?

Is it necessary to change train(s)? The train is arriving according to

timetable.
We are there. (= We've arrived.

lit. 'One is . . .')

# Language point

# Saying where things and people are: the local cases -ssA and -IIA

Lasi|ssa on mehua. There's some juice in the glass.

Lasi on hylly|llä. The glass is on the shelf.

(Note, in passing, the two basic constituent orders illustrated by these sentences; if you're not sure about this, look back at Unit 2.) Just as in English we can distinguish between 'in' and 'at' and 'on', so in Finnish, too, we can fine-tune our statements and questions about the locations of things and people. One of the ways to do this in Finnish is to use *local* suffixes. This and the next two sections present one pair of local suffixes each; they are revised in overview towards the end of this unit.

You have already met the adessive (-IIA) and inessive (-ssA) in connection with expressing possession (Unit 2); their use in expressing location is even more frequent.



Normally, location 'in' something is expressed by means of the inessive suffix -ssA, for example:

Suome|ssa in Finland
Englanni|ssa in England
Helsingi|ssä in Helsinki
hotelli|ssa in the/a hotel
iso|ssa lauku|ssa in a/the big bag

and 'at' or 'on' is expressed by the adessive suffix -IIA, for example:

oikea|llaon the rightvasemma|llaon the leftmere|lläat sea

asema|llaat the stationkadu|llaon the streettoise|lla puole|llaon the other side

Generally speaking, forms with -ssA refer to closer, more intimate contact than forms with -IIA: thus kaivossa is 'in the/a well', but kaivolla is 'at the/a well'. Larger, relatively open, public places tend to be used with -IIA (asema|IIa 'at the station', lentokentä|IIä 'at the airport').

Often the shades of meaning are quite subtle, e.g.

Ruoka on pöydä|ssä. Dinner is served.

(lit. 'The food is "in" the table.')

Pöydä|llä on ruokaa. There is some food on the table

(as it happens).

Note also **maa**|**lla** 'in the country' (as opposed to 'in town'), but **maa**|**ssa** 'on the ground'.

As the example **vuode**|ssa 'in a year' shows, the local cases are used in time expressions as well. For example, the amount of time it takes for a certain amount of activity to take place is expressed with -ssA, as in

#### Se juo kuusi kuppia kahvia päivä|ssä.

(S)he drinks six cups of coffee a day.

Less specific time expressions are often built with the -IIA suffix:

päivä|IIä during the day(-time)

talve|lla in winter

#### Notice also:

ensi/viime/tällä viikolla next/last/this week ensi/viime/tässä kuussa next/last/this month

More on time expressions in Unit 9. Here are some more examples of the local cases in their spatial meanings:

Mi|ssä sinä olet työ|ssä? Where do you work?

(lit. 'Where are you in work?')

Toinen pullo on vielä The other bottle is still on

hylly|llä. the shelf.

Mä asun Oulu|ssa. I live in Oulu.

Tamperee | Ila | ko sinä asut? Is it in Tampere that you live?

You will notice that some Finnish place names (like **TampereQ**) take -**IIA**, others (like **Oulu**) take -**ssA**. There is no hard and fast rule, and even Finns often disagree! Follow the locals. (All cities outside Finland take -**ssA**: **Lontoolssa**. **Pariisilssa**.)

### Exercise 1a

Give Finnish equivalents for the words in italics:

- 1 I live in Helsinki.
- 2 The wine is still in the bottle.
- 3 Her gloves are on the table.
- 4 They're still at the station.
- 5 She read 50 letters in one day.
- 6 in Finland.
- 7 in England.
- 8 in the summer.
- 9 next month.
- 10 on the right.

## Exercise 1b

The adessive -IIA is also used to express the means or instrument by which we get something done, for example, Mä kirjoitan sen uude|IIa kynä|IIä 'I'll write it with a new pen'. Try translating these phrases and sentences:

- 1 poliisin avulla (apu 'help').
- 2 bussilla.



- 3 isolla lusikalla (lusikka 'spoon').
- 4 Mausta se voilla! (mausta- 'season').
- 5 Ne matkustaa junalla.

# 💋 Language point

# Saying where people and things are from: source cases -stA, -ltA

Study the following pairs of sentences:

Witold asuu Puola|ssa.
Witold on Puola|sta kotoisin.

Witold lives in Poland.
Witold is (originally) from
Poland

Pullo on hylly|llä. Ota pullo hylly|ltä! The bottle is on the shelf.

Take the bottle (down)

from the shelf!

Parallel in meaning and form to the suffixes -ssA and -IIA, which indicate location, are -stA and -ItA, which indicate origin or source, i.e. the place from which someone or something has moved. Here are some more examples:

Ota kahvipannu kaapi∣sta!

Mä odotan postikorttia Moskova|sta/Heiki|ltä. Oletteko te kaupungi|sta vai maa|lta? Se puhuu ranskaa, mutta se ei ole ranska|ainen. Se pyytää mei|ltä rahaa. Take the coffee-pot out of the cupboard!

I'm expecting a postcard from Moscow/Heikki.

Are you from the city or from the country?

(S)he speaks French, but (s)he isn't from France.

(S)he's asking us for money (lit. 'requesting from us money').

You will notice that the forms with -ItA, like those with -IIA, generally refer to less intimate, less concrete contact (e.g. a postcard is normally Heikiltä 'from Heikki'); Heikistä would be either 'from inside Heikki' (i.e. surgically removed, after he had swallowed it), or more likely: 'about Heikki, on the subject of Heikki'. More examples:

Mä kirjoitan kirjettä Heiki|stä. I'm writing a letter about

Heikki.

Mitä te pidätte tästä What do you think of this

kaupungi|sta? city?

Mi|stä sinä saat tätä olutta? Where do you get this beer

from? (lit. 'From where . . .')

Kene|Itä sinä saat tätä olutta? 'Who do you get this beer

from?' (lit. 'From whom . . .')

The -**ItA** suffix is also used in time expressions referring to hours and minutes of the clock, for example:

Suomen tunti alkaa kello kahde|lta. Finnish class begins at two o'clock.

## Exercise 2

Give Finnish equivalents for the words in italics:

- 1 coming from the station.
- 2 waiting at the station.
- 3 It's now at the platform.
- 4 They're already on the train.
- 5 at six o'clock.
- 6 This letter is about Juuso.
- 7 This letter is from Juuso.
- 8 Take the letter off the table.
- 9 Take the spoon out of the cup.
- 10 on the left.

## Language point



# Saying where people and things are going: goal cases - $\parallel$ e, -#n

Parallel to the locational and source suffixes are the goal suffixes -**Ile** and -**#n**. Thus just as you use the ablative -**ItA** to say 'from whom', as in

Kene|Itä tämä kirje on? Who is this letter from?



you use the allative -Ile to say 'to whom', as in

Kene|lle tämä kirje on? Who is this letter to?

The vowel of the allative suffix is always **e**, i.e. it does not vary according to vowel harmony:

**kadu**|**lle** onto the street **levy**|**lle** onto the disk

Now notice the similar parallelism of these suffixes:

Witold asuu Puola|ssa. Witold lives in Poland.

(with the inessive -ssA)

and

Witold menee Puola|an. Witold is going to Poland.

(with the illative -#n)

Just as in the third person singular suffix of the verb, the # at the beginning of the illative suffix means that you lengthen any single vowel at the end of a nominal stem:

kaivo|on into the well laukku|un into the bag

junan lähtö|ön until the train's departure

Ruotsi|in to Sweden Suome|en to Finland

The illative suffix has three variants: it is -#n after stems ending in a short vowel; so we have

viinalan into (the) alcohol (viina) viini∣in into (the) wine (viini) vete en into (the) water (vesi e) hyvä∣än kynä∣än into a good pen (hyvä, kynä) koulu|un into a/the school (koulu) into (a/the) bed sänkv vn (sänky) keittiö|ön into a/the kitchen (keittiö)

However, if the stem is a monosyllable, the illative suffix is -h#n:

tie|hen into a/the road

teelhen into tea

työ|hön to work
voi|hin into butter
puu|hun into a tree

and with all other nominals, the illative is -seen. Thus we have this form of the illative with bisyllabic nominals which end in long vowels or diphthongs, and with **Q**-stems and **X**-stems, e.g.

Lontoo|seen to London (Lontoo)

vapaa|seen matka|an into a free trip (vapaa, matka)

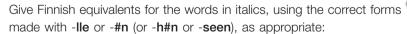
vieraa|seen huonee|seen into a strange room (vieraX, huoneQ)

If you study the similarities and differences between the two sets of forms of the words **vuosi** 'year' and **vuode** 'bed', you will notice that a form like **vuoteen** can be either a genitive or an illative, depending on what kind of stem it is built from:

Stem	vuote	vuoteQ	
sN	vuosi	vuode	
sG	vuode∣n	vuotee n	
sILL	vuote∣en	vuotee seen	

As with the other suffix pairs you have learned in this unit, the difference between -lle and -#n is one of degree of intimacy, or closeness of contact, and whether or not the place is relatively open and public. So, for example, you send a letter 'to Heikki', Heiki|lle, and you go 'to ("onto") the station', asema|lle, but you go 'into a room', huonee|seen, and pour water 'into a bottle', pullo|on.

## Exercise 3



- 1 Take me to the station.
- 2 Put it back on(to) the table.
- 3 I'll give this to Eila.
- 4 He put it on(to) the shelf.
- 5 Put your spoon in(to) the cup.



- 6 I'm going to Denmark.
- 7 They're on their way into town.
- 8 Pour some milk in(to) the tea!



### Overview: the local case suffixes

You have now met the main six cases which Finnish uses to express location and motion. Three of the cases (-IIA, -ItA, -Ile; hereafter: *I-cases*) have at least one I in their suffix, and refer to general neighbourhood or surface. The other three (-ssA, -stA, -#n; hereafter: s-cases) refer to closer proximity, even to contact or interiorness. In the following table, these six cases are represented by forms of the nouns kirjeQ 'letter' and katu 'street':

	Inside	Surface, neighbourhood
motion towards	kirjee∣seen	kadu lle
location	kirjee∣ssä	kadu lla
motion from	kirjee∣stä	kadu lta

As you study the table, notice the parallels and patterns in the forms. Which differences are due to vowel harmony? Which differences are due to stem types?

Now have a look at the following sentences, which illustrate some of the more important meanings of these forms:

#### Huomenna ne on kadu lla taas.

Tomorrow they'll be back on the street. (kadu|lla adessive: stasis at, or on surface)

#### Se tulee sisään kadulta.

(S)he comes in *from the street*. (**kadu**|**Ita** *ablative*: motion from neighbourhood or surface)

#### Se menee ulos kadulle.

(S)he goes out *onto the street*. (**kadu**|**lle** *allative*: motion towards neighbourhood or surface)

#### Kirjee ssä hän sanoo, että Heikki ei tule.

In the letter (s)he says that Heikki isn't coming. (kirjee|ssä inessive: stasis inside)

#### Valitettavasti mä en ehdi vastata kirjee|seen.

Unfortunately I don't have time to answer the letter. (Note the Finnish is more like 'into the letter', i.e. *motion towards inside*)

#### Kiitos kirjee stä!

Thanks for the letter! (lit. 'from inside' the letter, i.e. *motion from inside!*)

As the last two examples show, the notion of motion to and from is a useful model for thinking about Finnish, but you should not apply it mechanically to English constructions in the hope of creating idiomatic Finnish sentences. For example, in Finnish you find things from out of (-stA) or from off (-ltA) places, and you leave them into (-#n) or onto (-lle) places:

street.

Se aina löytää rahaa kadu∣lta.

kadu∣ita. Mä jätän mun takin

I'll leave (jättä-) my jacket (takki) in the entrance hall (eteinen se).

(S)he's always finding money on the

## Exercise 4a

eteise|en.

#### Translate:

- Haen sinulle vettä.
- Minusta tämä ei ole tärkeää.
- 3 Kaks ihmistä puhuu samaan aikaan.
- 4 Sano se sille!
- 5 Kysyt väärältä tyypiltä. (tyyppi 'guy')
- 6 Kaikki tässä huoneessa tietää sen.

## Exercise 4b

Give Finnish equivalents. Try to remember the Finnish word before peeking back at the vocabularies or resorting to the Glossary at the back of this book:

- 1 Leave the bag in the entrance hall.
- 2 I'll put the glass back in(to) the cupboard.
- 3 Aila is still on the train.





- 4 I'll write a letter to Juuso.
- 5 Send a postcard to Heikki in ('into') London.
- 6 The timetable is behind the shelf.
- 7 The car is in front of the station.
- 8 Take me to Paris.
- 9 When do we arrive?
- 10 Is there any juice in the glass?



# PK Dialogue 2



Mikä sen kylä nimi on? What's the name of that village? (CD1; 26)

Celia starts to ask her friend Matti about his family, and ends up getting a quick lesson in Finnish geography.

CELIA Asuuko sinun perheesi\* Helsingissä?

MATTI Eivät asu. He asuvat maalla, pienessä kylässä.

CELIA Mikä sen kylän nimi on?

MATTI Padasjoki. He asuvat Padasjoella.

CELIA Onko Padasjoki kaukana Helsingistä?

MATTI Ei ole, ei ollenkaan. Padasjoelta ei ole pitkä matka Lahteen, joka on noin sata kilometriä Helsingistä pohjoiseen.

CELIA Anteeksi, mä en ymmärrä. Mikä se Lahti on?

Lahti on pieni kaupunki Päijät-Hämeen maakunnassa. MATTI

Vai niin. CELIA

CELIA Do your family live in Helsinki?

MATTI No they don't. They live in the country, in a little village.

What is the village called? (lit. 'What is that village's name?') CELIA

MATTI Padasjoki. They live in Padasjoki.

CELIA Is Padasjoki far from Helsinki?

No, not at all. It's not far from Padasjoki to Lahti, which is MATTI about 100 kilometres to the north of Helsinki.

CELIA I'm sorry, I don't understand. What is this 'Lahti'?

MATTI Lahti is a small city in the Päijät-Häme region.

CFLIA Lsee.

<sup>\*</sup> perhee|si is 'your family'; you'll learn about forms like this in Unit 10.

#### Vocabulary resides, dwells nimi e asuname joka every, each ollenkaan at all kauka na far away perheQ family kaupunki pitkä city, town long; tall kilometri kilometre northern pohjoinen se kylä Päijät-HämeQ region in southern village Finland maa+kunta region understand matka journey, trip; distance ymmärtä-

### **Additional vocabulary**

mother

Have a look at these basic kinship terms, so you can ask people about their families and tell them about your own.

täti

aunt

aiti	111011101	tati	dant
isä	father	iso+äiti	grandmother
vaimo	wife	sisko	sister
mies	husband	veli	brother
	(! stem: miehe-)		(! stem: velje-)
poika	son, boy	iso+isä	grandfather
	(! sG poja n)		
tytär	daughter	nai mis i ssa	married
	(! stem: <b>tyttäre</b> -)		
serkku	cousin	leski e	widow(er)
en o	maternal uncle	leski+mies	widower
setä	paternal uncle	orpana	orphan

## Exercise 5

äiti

Make up your own short dialogues, in which people ask one another about their families and where they live. Make sure to ask and say what people do for a living, whether or not they're married, and how many children they have.





# 🥦 Dialogue 3



#### Baarissa In a bar (CD1: 27)

Kalle would like to order some cider, but they are completely out of it, so he reverts to the default setting and has a beer instead.

Onks teillä siiderii? **KALLE** 

Sori, sitä tulee huomenna. BAARIMIKKO

KALLE Yks pitkä sit.

BAARIMIKKO Meillä on Koffia,\* Lapin Kultaa ja Karlsbergia.\*

**KALLE** Lapin Kultaa. Paljoks se maksaa?

BAARIMIKKO 5,30.

**KALLE** Do you have any cider?

BARMAN Sorry, there'll be some coming tomorrow.

**KALLE** A large one (= beer) then.

We have Koff, Lapland Gold and Carlsberg. BARMAN (Make it) Lapland Gold. How much is that? KALLE

BARMAN Five (euros and) thirty (cents).

Notice how Finnish handles foreign nouns that have not yet adjusted to Finnish ways, such as Koff with its final f, and Karlsberg with its final g: before adding Finnish suffixes such as (here) the partitive, an extra -i- is inserted: so Koff, partitive singular Koffi|a.

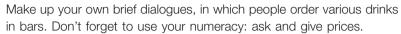


## **V**ocabulary

From here on more formal forms, which you will be able to find in Finnish dictionaries (and at the back of this book), are given in the vocabularies to the right of the symbol >. For example, sit > sitten means that sit is a colloquial form of sitten. Rules to help you form and recognize such colloquial forms will be introduced as we go.

euro	euro	siiderii >	cider (sP)
maksa-	cost, pay	siideri∣ä	
paljoks >	how much?	sit > sitten	then
paljonko		sori!	sorry! (More 'proper'
pitkä	a large ('long') beer		Finnish has olen
siideri	cider		pahoillani.)

### Exercise 6





## Dialogue 4



### Postissa At the post office (CD1; 28)



Anneli has gone to the post office to buy some stamps. A **virkailija** is an 'official'.

ANNELI Päivää, mitä maksaa postimerkki Englantiin?
POSTIVIRKAILIJA Ensimmäisen luokan tavallinen kirje on 75 senttiä.
ANNELI Kaks merkkiä Englantiin ja sitte vielä kolme

kotimaan sisäiseen postiin.

POSTIVIRKAILIJA Ja se tekee\* €3,75.

ANNELI Kiitos. Missä mahtaa olla postilaatikko?

POSTIVIRKAILIJA Ovesta† ulos ja vasemmalle.

ANNELI Kiitos ja näkemiin.

ANNELI Good day, what does a stamp to England cost?

OFFICIAL A regular first-class letter is 75 cents.

ANNELI (I'll have) two stamps to England and then three for

post within Finland.

OFFICIAL And that makes 3 euros and 75 cents.

ANNELI Thank you. Where might there be a letterbox?

OFFICIAL (Go) out the door and (turn) to the left.

ANNELI Thank you and goodbye.

<sup>\*</sup> With prices, teke- can also mean 'amounts to, adds up to'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> The elative is also used to mean 'by way of'.



# Vocabulary

	ensimmäinen se	first	posti	post, mail
	kaks > kaksi		<b>sisä∣inen</b> se	internal
	kirjeQ	letter (for posting)	sitte > sitten	
	koti+maa	homeland = Finland	tavallinen se	ordinary, normal
	luokka	class	ulo s	(moving towards)
	mahta-	might		out(side)
	merkki,	stamp	vasemma lle	to the left
	posti+merkki		vielä	still, yet
I	näke m i in	goodbye		



## Exercise 7

Can you put these into Finnish without peeking at the dialogue above?

- 1 Out the door and to the left.
- 2 Where might there be a bank (pankki)?
- 3 That makes 12 euros.
- 4 How much is a stamp to England?



# 👫 Dialogue 5



### Passitarkastus Passport control (CD1; 29)

At an entry-point to Finland, Joe answers the questions put to him by an official.

VIRKAILIJA Passinne,\* kiitos.

[Joe ojentaa passin]

VIRKAILIJA Mistä maasta tulette?

Amerikasta. JOE

VIRKAILIJA Kuinka kauan aiotte viipyä Suomessa?

Kolme viikkoa. JOE

VIRKAILIJA Mikä on matkan tarkoitus?

Olen turistimatkalla. JOE

VIRKAILIJA Missä aiotte asua matkanne<sup>†</sup> aikana?

JOE Tätini<sup>‡</sup> luona Helsingissä, Kulosaaressa. VIRKAILIJA [*antaa passin takaisin*] Tervetuloa Suomeen!

OFFICIAL Your passport, please. [Joe hands over his passport.]

OFFICIAL What country are you coming from?

JOE America.

OFFICIAL How long do you intend to stay in Finland?

JOE Three weeks.

Vocabulary

ojenta-

passi

OFFICIAL What is the purpose of (your) journey?

JOE I'm a tourist. (lit. 'I'm on a tourist trip.')

OFFICIAL Where do you intend to stay during your journey?

JOE At my Aunt's house in Helsinki, on Kulosaari.

OFFICIAL [hands back the passport] Welcome to Finland!

offer, hand over

passport

X n aikana	at the time	takaisin	back (to origin)
	of X	tarkoitus	purpose, meaning,
aiko-	intend		intent
anta-	give	terveQ	healthy, sound
kuinka kauan?	for how long?	Terve+tulo∣a	Welcome
luona, X∣n	at X's place	turisti	tourist
luona		täti	paternal aunt

viikko

viipy-

week

stop, stay



<sup>\*</sup> kiitos: the official thanks Joe in advance: the implication is that Joe will comply.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> passi|nne, matka|nne: the -nne is a suffix meaning 'your', used especially in more formal contexts; for more, see Unit 10.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> täti|ni: -ni, too, is a possessive suffix; it means 'my'.

## Unit Five

## Mitä me ostetaan?

What'll we buy?



### In this unit you will learn:

- about different kinds of shopping
- about talking over the telephone
- how to be less than definite (indefinite forms of the verb)
- more about the form of direct objects
- more about word formation
- how to make plurals



# 👫 Dialogue 1



MARI

### Alkossa At the off-licence (CD1; 30)

Mitä me ostetaan sun synttäreitä varten? SUSANNA

Ku nyt kerta on kakskytviisvuotissynttärit niin pitää kai MARI

ostaa pari pulloa kuohuviiniä.

Elvseetä vai? SUSANNA

Joo ja otetaan sit samalla neljä pulloa valkkaria boolia MARI

varten.

Mitä kirkasta sä haluut, kossuu vai jotain muuta votkaa? SUSANNA

Otetaan vaikka\* kossuu ja sit saakin melkein riittää.†

Tässä onkin jo kantamista.<sup>‡</sup> Jätetään kaljat ja lonkerot

poikien huoleksi.

SUSANNA What'll we buy for your birthday party?

MARI Well, since it's my 25th, we really ought to buy a couple

of bottles of champagne.

SUSANNA Elysee?

MARI Yea, and let's buy four bottles of white white, as well,

for punch.

SUSANNA What spirits do you want, Koskenkorva or some other

vodka?

MARI Let's have some Koskenkorva and that'll probably be

pretty much enough. There's enough here to carry as it is. Let's leave the long drinks and beers for the boys

to worry about.

## Vocabulary



ALKO	Finnish state	kerta	(for) once
	alcoholic beverage	kirkkaX	clear, bright; alcoholic spirits
	monopoly sales outlet	koske n+korva	a type of spirit
booli	punch	kossu > koskenkorva	
Elysee	(brand name)	kossu u >	
haluut > haluat		kossu a	
X∣n huoleksi	in X's care	ku > kun	
jo	already	ku(n) X, niin Y	since $X, \ldots$ so $Y$
joo	yeah	kuohu+viini	sparkling wine
jo ta in	something	lonkero	long drink
jäte tään	let's leave	melkein	pretty, fairly
kai	maybe	muu	other, else
kanta mis ta	carrying (sP)	niin	so

<sup>\*</sup> vaikka: Mari uses this little word to introduce a suggestion, while leaving open the possibility that Susanna will have a different idea: 'We could get some Koskenkorva (or perhaps you'd prefer something else).'

<sup>†</sup> saa|kin . . . riittä|ä '(it'll) probably be enough'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> tässä onkin jo kantamista 'there's enough here to carry already (I'm sure you'll agree)'. In both of these expressions, Mari uses the enclitic --kin to suggest that Susanna won't disagree.

Ì	nyt	now	sit > sitten	then; so
ı	osta a	buy	su n>sinun	your
ı	oste taan	let's buy	synttäri >	birthday, pP
ı	ote∣taan	let's take	syntymä+päivä	synttäre∣i∣tä,
ı	pari	pair, a couple of		pN <b>synttäri∣t</b>
ı	pitä∣ä	be necessary;	tä∣ssä	here
ı	pitaja	hold	vai	or (used in
ı	poika	boy, pG poik ien		questions)
ı	pullo	bottle	valkkari > valkoviini	white wine
	riittä-	be enough, suffice	varten, X-TA	for X
	saa	be possible; one may	votka	vodka
	sama∣lla	at the same time, as well	X vuotis Y	Y which is X years old

# Language point

# Being less than definite: indefinite forms of the verb

Alongside the six personal verb forms you have already learned in Unit 2, Finnish has a seventh, indefinite form which has two common uses:

1 The most common use of the indefinite, in both formal and colloquial Finnish, is to place the subject of the verb in the background. You may not know exactly, or even care, who the subject is, or you may simply not like to say. In either situation, it's the indefinite you want. Contrast these sentence pairs:

Ne puhu|u suomea. He puhu|vat suomea. Suomessa puhu|taan suomea.

They speak Finnish. (colloquial; p3) They speak Finnish. (formal; p3) In Finland, people speak Finnish/ Finnish is spoken. (neutral; ind)

In the first two examples, it is assumed that we know specifically who 'they' (**ne** or **he**) are. In the third example, there is no such

- definiteness. All that is assumed is that there is more than one person who speaks Finnish.
- 2 In colloquial Finnish, the indefinite is the regular form for indicating a first person plural subject. Contrast:

Me puhu|mme suomea. We speak Finnish. (formal)

Me puhu|taan suomea. We speak Finnish. (colloquial)

Without the subject pronoun **me**, the same form is used to make suggestions, for example:

Puhutaan suomea! Let's speak Finnish!

For all verbs except those of class I, forming the affirmative indefinite is easy: just add -**#N** to the first infinitive. So for example:

	Class II	Class III	Class IV
1st inf indefinite	haluta	mennä	saada
	halutaan	mennään	saadaan
1st inf indefinite	tarvita	tulla	syödä
	tarvitaan	tullaan	syödään

Class I verbs are different, so this little trick won't work with them. Compare these infinitive and indefinite forms:

	Class I	Class I	Class I
1st inf indefinite	sano∣a	luke∣a	anta∣a
	sano∣taan	lue∣taan	anne∣taan

You'll see that the indefinite forms for these verbs are different in three ways: (1) their suffix begins with  $\mathbf{t}$ ; (2) despite its appearance, this  $\mathbf{t}$  is a 'tight lid', so it causes compression to its left ( $\mathbf{k}>0$  in  $\mathbf{lue}|\mathbf{taan}$ ,  $\mathbf{nt}>\mathbf{nn}$  in  $\mathbf{anne}|\mathbf{taan}$ ); and (3) this suffix also causes any  $\mathbf{A}$  at the end of the verb stem to change to  $\mathbf{e}$  ( $\mathbf{e}$  in  $\mathbf{anne}|\mathbf{taan}$ ,  $\mathbf{tiede}|\mathbf{tään}$ ). 'To see' and 'to do' form the indefinite thus:  $\mathbf{n\ddot{a}h}|\mathbf{d\ddot{a}\ddot{a}n}$ ,  $\mathbf{teh}|\mathbf{d\ddot{a}\ddot{a}n}$ .

Here are some more examples. They are provided with a variety of possible English equivalents in order to give you a taste of the range of possible meanings.

Class I verbs:

etsi|tään (stem: etsi-) people are looking for;

it is sought

tiede|taan (stem: tietä-) people know; it is known

kielle|tään (stem: kieltä-) it is forbidden

Class II verbs:

halu|taan (stem: haluX-) is wanted; people want

maini|taan (stem: mainiTSE-) is mentioned vaie|taan (stem: vaikEXE-) people are silent

Class III verbs:

men|nään(stem: mene-)people gool|laan(stem: ole-)people are

Class IV verbs:

saa|daan (stem: saa-) people get

vieldään (stem: vie-) get taken (away), is exported

relegoi|daan (stem: relegoi-) gets relegated

Now have a look at these further examples, given with other verb forms for comparison and revision:

Me pide|tään teestä.We like tea. (colloquial)Me pidä|mme teestä.We like tea. (formal)

Illallisen jälkeen oteltaan People have coffee after dinner.

kahvia.

Illallisen jälkeen ne They have coffee after dinner.

otta|a kahvia. (colloquial)

Milloin sä mene|t kotiin? When are you going home?

(colloquial)

Milloin me men nään kotiin? When will we go home?

(colloquial)

The negative indefinite consists of two parts: (1) the third person singular of the negative verb, **ei**, plus (2) the connegative indefinite. This latter form is not at all as daunting to form as it sounds: it is the same as the affirmative form, but with a final **-Q** instead of a final **-AN**. Note the parallels:

anne∣taan	is given	nalu∣taan	is wanted
ei anne ta	is not given	ei halu∣ta	is not wanted
pes∣tään ei pes∣tä	is washed is not washed	tuo∣daan ei tuo∣da	is brought/imported is not brought/ imported

You can hear the effects of the final **Q** in doubling such as that of **ei** tuoda<sup>p</sup> puuta 'wood isn't imported'.

## Exercise 1

Switch from formal to colloquial, and vice versa.



- 2 Me mennään maalle.
- 3 Me haluamme valkoviiniä.
- 4 Me emme pidä ooperasta.
- 5 Me ei lueta lehteä.
- 6 Me puhutaan ranskaa.
- 7 Me emme tarvitse apua.

#### The Generic

In addition to the indefinite forms of verbs there is also a generic construction built with the third person singular form of the verb but with no subject pronoun, that is, with no **hän** or **se**. Contrast

Mistä se tietää, että se on	How does (s)he know (s)he's
valmis?	ready?

with

**Mistä tietää, että on valmis?** How does (any)one know when they're ready?

Contrast also generic ei voi olla with indefinite sanotaan in Koskaan ei voi olla varma, mitä sanotaan 'One can never be sure what people will say'.

A little more on the generic later on in this unit.





# Language point

kaununki

#### **Plurals**

In this section you will learn how to form and use most of the plural forms of nouns and adjectives. We'll divide this into three subsections to make it easier to absorb.

#### Plural cases I

Stom

The plural nominative (pN) is easy to form: its suffix is -t, a 'tight-lid' suffix which attaches to the stem exactly like the -n of the genitive singular:

maa

hamnaY

rakonnukso

Sterri	каиринкі	IIIaa	паттрах	
sG pN	kaupungi∣n kaupungi∣t	maa∣n maa∣t	hampaa∣n hampaa∣t	rakennukse n rakennukse t
English	city, town	country	tooth	building
Stem	puhelime	huoneQ	katu	talve
sG pN	puhelime∣n puhelime∣t	huonee  huonee		
English	telephone	room	street	winter

The nominative plural refers to definite, known things or people, often members of a set. Here are some examples of the pN in action:

Euroopa∣n maa∣t	the countries of Europe
Rooma∣n yö∣t	Roman nights (lit. 'the nights
	of Rome')
Helsingi∣n kadu∣t	the streets of Helsinki
Suome n talve t	Finland's winters
pöydä∣n jala∣t	the legs of the table
	(jalka 'leg; foot')
Sirka∣n silmä∣t	Sirkka's eyes
Venäjä∣n uude∣t yliopisto∣t	Russia's new universities
mone t hallitukse n	many of the government's
uudistukse t	reforms

#### Note also:

Hänellä on kaunii|t hampaa|t. (S)he has (a set of) beautiful

teeth.

Pitäiskö keittää viellä toise|t Should we make another kahvilt. round of coffees?

The plural nominative is also used to mark the plural accusative; it's used in situations parallel to those of the use of the genitive in the singular, that is, when the sentence is declarative and the direct object is completely affected. So parallel to **Mä syön voileivä**|n 'l'll eat the sandwich' (Unit 3), we have **Mä syön voileivä**|t 'l'm going to eat up the sandwiches'. To say 'l'll eat some sandwiches' you need the partitive plural; see 'Plural cases III', below.

## Exercise 2

Change singular to nominative plural, and vice versa:

1	jalka	5	hampaat
2	huoneet	6	pullo
3	kaupunki	7	pojat
4	katu	8	tyttö

#### Plural cases II

For the most part, the other suffixes in the plural are the same as those you have already learned for the singular. There is one important difference: they are all preceded by a pluralizer -i-. This -i- causes certain vowel changes in the stem to its left; for comparison, here are the singular inessive (sINE) and plural inessive (pINE) forms of a few nouns:

Stem	sINE	pINE	Vowel change	Citation form	English
talve	talve ssa	talv∣i∣ssa	e > 0	talvi	winter
käte	kä <i>de</i>  ssä	käs i ssä	e > 0	käsi	hand
kaupunki	kaupungi∣ssa	kaupunge i ssa	i > e	kaupunki	city
kesä	kes <i>ä</i> ∣ssä	kes i ssä	$\ddot{a}>0$	kesä	summer
juna	j <i>u</i> na∣ssa	jun i ssa	a > 0	juna	train
koura	koura ssa	kour i ssa	a > 0	koura	hand
sana	sana∣ssa	sano i ssa	a > o	sana	word
asema	asema ssa	asem i ssa	$\mathbf{a} > 0$	asema	station

Stem	sINE	pINE	Vowel change	Citation form	English
ystävä	ystävä ssä	ystäv i ssä	ä > 0	ystävä	friend
omena	omena ssa	omeno i ssa	a > 0	omena	apple
kännykkä	kännykä ssä	kännykö i ssä	ä > ö	kännykkä	cellular phone
maa	maa ssa	ma i ssa	aa > a	maa	country, land
yö	yö ssä	ö i ssä	yö > ö	yö	night

If you study the table, you will see that to the left of the plural -i- all stem-final **e**s are deleted (> 0, e.g. **talvi**: **talve-ssa** 'in winter' but **talv-i-ssa** 'in winters'). TE-stems like **käsi** change their **t** to **s**, as in the singular nominative.

All stem-final is, as in kaupunki, change to e.

In bisyllabic words, *all* stem-final  $\ddot{a}$ s are deleted (**kesä**); but stem-final a is deleted only if u or o is the first or only vowel of the first syllable (**juna**, **koura**). Otherwise, a > o, as in **sana**.

In polysyllabic words,  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\ddot{\mathbf{a}}$  are sometimes deleted (as in  $\mathbf{asema}$  and  $\mathbf{yst\ddot{a}v\ddot{a}}$ ), and sometimes change ( $\mathbf{a} > \mathbf{o}$ ,  $\ddot{\mathbf{a}} > \ddot{\mathbf{o}}$ , as in  $\mathbf{omena}$  and  $\mathbf{k\ddot{a}nnykk\ddot{a}}$ ).

The diphthongs **ie**, **yö**, **uo** are shortened to **e**, **ö**, **o**. All long (double) vowels are shortened, e.g. **aa** > **a**, **uu** > **u**. Notice that such long vowels may themselves be from sequences with **Q** or **X** (**huoneQ**|**i**|**ssa** > **huone**|**i**|**ssa**; **hampaX**|**i**|**ssa** > **hampa**|**i**|**ssa**). Consonants to the left of such secondarily shortened vowels do not get compressed (**mp** of **hampa**|**i**|**ssa**); contrast the compressed **ng** of **kaupunge**|**i**|**ssa**.

Here are some more examples (compare with the examples given above):

Euroopa|n ma|i|ssa
Helsingi|n kadu|i|lla
Rooma|n ö|i|ssä
Suome|n talv|i|ssa
Sirka|n silm|i|ssä
Venäjä|n uus|i|lla yliopisto|i|lla
mon|i|ssa edellise|n hallitukse|n uudistuks|i|ssa

As in the singular, the illative has subtypes. Its ending is -**#n** as usual if the pluralizer -**i**- to its left is the only vowel; but if there *is* a single stem-final vowel, you use -**h#n**. Compare these plural inessive and illative forms:

	-i- alone	stem-vowel plus - <b>i</b> -
pINE	silm∣i∣ssä	talo i ssa, ma i ssa
pILL	silm∣i∣in	talo i hin, ma i hin
pINE	järv∣i∣ssä	kaupunge i ssa, tv-sarja ssa
pILL	järv∣i∣in	kaupunke i hin, tv-sarjo i hin

Finally, if the nominal takes -seen in the singular illative, its pILL is -siin:

sILL	vapaa∣seen	huonee seen	vieraa∣seen
pINE	vapa∣i∣ssa	huone i ssa	viera i ssa
pILL	vapa∣i∣siin	huone∣i∣siin	viera i siin

## Exercise 3

Convert the following from singular to plural, or vice versa:

1	kirjassa	7	taloon
2	taloissa	8	työhön
3	saarilta	9	veteen
4	lasista	10	jalkoihin
5	pankille	11	housuun
6	hampaisiin	12	huoneista

#### Plural cases III

The partitive plural refers to indefinite quantities of things or people. Building it is not so very difficult if you bear in mind that it consists of two parts: the plural suffix -i-, which is added to the nominal stem, followed by the regular partitive suffix -TA. As in the singular, this -TA suffix has two basic shapes, with and without the t: -tA and -A.

Which shape you use for any given noun is fairly predictable according to the following rules:

#### You use -tA

1a if the nominal ends in a long vowel or diphthong (vowel changes to the left of -i- apply as usual):

vapaa	vapa∣it∣a	aa > a	free
tienoo	tieno∣i∣ta	00 > 0	region
ainoa	aino∣i∣ta	oa > o	only



tie	te i tä	ie > e	road
yö	ö∣i∣tä	yö > ö	night
voi	vo∣i∣ta	oi > 0	butter
maa	ma∣i∣ta	aa > a	country

1b if the nominal ends in X or Q:

rikas	rikka∣i∣ta	(stem: <b>rikkaX</b> )	rich
huone	huone∣i∣ta	(stem: huoneQ)	room

1c and often if the noun is polysyllabic. This is true especially of words ending in ri, so from paperi, tuomari, traktori and professori we have papere|i|ta 'papers', tuomare|i|ta 'judges', traktore|i|ta 'tractors' and professore|i|ta 'professors', but it is also likely if the last syllable is nA, kkA, or rA, or ends in ijA. These stems have a > o and ä > ö before the -i- pluralizer:

kirsikka	kirsiko i ta	<b>a</b> > <b>o</b>	cherry
kynttilä	kynttilö∣i∣tä	ä > ö	candle
peruna	peruno∣i∣ta	a > 0	potato
kitara	kitaro∣i∣ta	<b>a</b> > <b>o</b>	curl
lukija	lukijo∣i∣ta	a > 0	reader

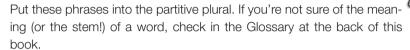
2 otherwise, you use -A. The only thing to watch for then is that the -i- pluralizer changes to -j- whenever it ends up between two vowels (as in tyttöjä and sanoja):

kala	kalo∣j∣a	a > o	fish
poika	poik∣i∣a	a > 0	boy
juna	jun∣i∣a	a > 0	train
linkki	linkke∣j∣ä	i > e	(Internet) link
<b>järvi</b> e	järv∣i∣ä	e > 0	lake
suomalainen se	suomalais i a	e > 0	Finn
opettaja	opettaj∣i∣a	a > 0	teacher
tyttö	tyttö∣j∣ä		girl
katu	katu∣j∣a		street

As the word *often* implies (above, under 1c), many polysyllabic nouns may use either -tA *or* -A (adjectives only ever use -A). You will therefore encounter plural partitives like **perunia** alongside **perunoita** 'potatoes' and **kyselyjä** alongside **kyselyitä** 'inquiries', **kaloreita** alongside **kaloreja** 'calories', **symboleja** alongside **symboleita** 'symbols'.

Note on compression: Notice that susceptible consonants are regularly compressed in partitives plural formed with -tA (kk > k in kirsikoita) but that they are not compressed in partitives plural formed with -A (kk remains in linkkejä).

### Exercise 4





2 halpa takki 7 tuore marja

3 vapaa kansa 8 kauhea asia

4 hyvä ystävä 9 sama ihminen

5 nuori opiskelija 10 hyvä numero

# Language point

# Direct object roundup: the forms of the accusative

You've already met with the several different ways Finnish has of marking the direct object of a sentence, but it'll be a good idea to round them up now and have a look at them all at once.

In fact it all boils down to two possibilities, the partitive and the accusative. The partitive is used to mark 'incomplete', that is, incompletely affected, direct objects, or if the verb is negated; and the accusative is used to mark complete direct objects.

The only real difficulty about the accusative case is that it has no one dedicated suffix. Instead, it 'borrows' the suffixes of various other cases. There are three basic scenarios:

1 For numerals, the accusative is the same as the nominative. Look at **kolme** 'three' in

Tässä on kolme voileipää. Here are three sandwiches.

(**kolme** = subject)

Mä syön kolme voileipää. I'll eat three sandwiches.

(kolme = direct object)





Words like pari 'pair, a couple of' act like numerals in this connection:

Mä ostan *pari* pulloa viiniä. I'll buy a couple of bottles of wine.

As mentioned in the previous section, nouns in the plural behave in the same way: their accusative is the same as their nominative:

Tässä on voileivält. Here are the sandwiches.

(**voileivät** = subject)

Mä syön kaikki nämä voileivä|t. I'll eat up all these

sandwiches. (voileivät =

direct object)

2 For nouns in the singular, the accusative case is marked with the genitive suffix (-n) if the verb has a person suffix (i.e. first, second, or third person, singular or plural). Note -n marking the accusative with verbs suffixed with -n, -t, and -# in

Mä syö|n voileivä|n. I'll eat a/the sandwich.

Milloin sä lähetä|t to|n kirjee|n? When are you going to

send that letter?

Ne osta|a lampu|n. They'll buy a/the lamp.

but the accusative is marked with the nominative suffix if the verb does not have a person suffix; most commonly, this means that the verb is an imperative, infinitive, or indefinite. Examples:

Kerro|Q totuus! Tell the truth!
Avat|kaa ikkuna! Open the window!
Me syö|dään voileipä. We'll eat a/the sandwich.
Sopimus allekirjoite|taan.
Mun pitää syö|dä voileipä. I have to eat a/the sandwich.

(More on this last construction in Unit 10.)

3 The personal pronouns have their own special accusative suffix, -t:

Se tunte|e *minu*|t. (S)he knows *me*.
Sä tunnelt *meidä*lt. You know *us*.

Me tunne|mme häne|t. We know him/her.

**Hänet tunne**|taan. People know her/him, (s)he is known.

Ne näke|e sinu|t joka päivä. They see you every day.

Mä näe|n *teidä*|t, kun mä palaa|n.

I'll see you (formal/plural) when I get back.

Note that the generic construction, since it is formed with the third person singular suffix on the verb, counts as having a person marker, even though the generic subject is not realized as a personal subject pronoun: contrast indefinite **ero nähdään** '(certain unspecified) people can see the difference' with generic **ero|n näkee** 'people (= anyone, including me) can see the difference'.

## Exercise 5





1	I'm going to buy a lamp.	Ma ostan
2	Let's eat some sandwiches.	Syödään
3	Open the door!	Avaa!
4	Whose car is she driving?	Kenen se ajaa?
5	In Finland cheese is eaten	Suomessa syödään
	on bread.	leivän päällä.
6	She's sending a letter to the president.	Se lähettää presidentille.
7	She's sending letters to the	Se lähettää
	queen.	kuningattarelle.
8	They'll find the letters in the loft.	Ne löytää vintiltä.

# Language point

## Noun phrase agreement

With the exception of the numerals and a few words which do not decline (see below), all modifiers which come before a noun must agree with it in number and case. So a noun phrase such as **tämä uusi talo** 'this new house' is **tä**|ssä uude|ssa talo|ssa in the singular inessive ('in this new house') and nä|i|hin uus|i|in talo|i|hin in the plural illative ('into these new houses').

Noun phrases which contain a numeral are slightly different. If the phrase is the subject or direct object, the noun and any adjectives between the numeral and the noun go into the partitive singular, while any modifier before the numeral goes into the plural, for example:



Nämä viisi vanha|a kirja|a on sinun.

These five old books are yours.

Mä maksan seuraavalt kaks kaliala.

I'll pay for the next two beers.

In the other cases, all declinable words in the noun phrase go into the same case: kolme|ssa paika|ssa 'in three places', sada|lla marka|lla 'for a hundred marks', nälilhin kymmenelen kysymkselen 'to these ten guestions', se puhuu viit|tä kiel|tä '(s)he speaks five languages'.

A few, very common, words do not decline, that is, they remain invariable while the rest of the noun phrase takes on various number and case suffixes. The most common are pikku 'little', eri 'various', joka 'each, every', itse 'none other than', ensi 'next', viime 'last (= the most recent)', koko 'the whole'. Examples: viime vaale|i|ssa 'in the last elections', eri syli|stä 'for various reasons', kahde|lla eri kanavallla 'on two different channels'.



# 👫 Dialogue 2



## **Kauppatori** An open-air (summer) market (CD1; 31)

Pia and Norman get talking about food as they walk along the Esplanadi, Helsinki's showcase east-west avenue.

Tvkkäätsä muuten silakasta? PIA

En oo koskaan maistanu!\* Mutta tykkään kyllä kalasta. NORMAN

No sittehän me mennään silakkamarkkinoille! PIA

Missä ne<sup>†</sup> on? NORMAN

PIA Tossa kauppatorin rannassa. Silakkamarkkinat on

vuosittain tähän aikaan, kun saariston kalastajat tulevat

Helsinkiin myymään saalistaan.

Joo mennään vaan sinne ja sit samalla ostetaan NORMAN

vihanneksia ja hedelmiä torilta.

PIA Illalla syödäänki sitte perunoita ja sinappisilakoita.

PIA Do you like silakka by the way?

NORMAN I've never tried (tasted) it! But I do like fish. PIA Well then, we're going to the silakka-market!

Where is it? NORMAN

e's a
hermen
catch.
y some
a.
)

<sup>\*</sup> En oo koskaan maistanu 'l've never tasted (any)'. You'll learn about these verb forms in Unit 7.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> The plural pronoun **ne** is used because **markkina**|**t** 'market' is plural in Finnish.

Vocabulary					
hedelmä	fruit, pP hedelmiä	silakka	Baltic (smaller)		
kala sta ja	fisherman		herring		
ki(n)	and, also, as well	sinappi	mustard		
koskaan	(in negative	si nne	(to) there		
	contexts) never	sitte hän >			
maistanu >		sitten∣hän			
maista nut		syö dään ki >			
muuten	by the way;	syö dään kin			
	otherwise	tori	market		
myy mä än	(in order) to sell	to ssa > tuo ssa			
no	well,	tykkäX-	like		
peruna	potato	tähän aikaan	at this time		
saaliX	catch, booty	vihannes kse	vegetable		
saar∣isto	archipelago ( <b>saari</b> e island)	vuosi∣ttain	every year, yearly		

# Language point



## On the telephone (puhelimessa)

'Telephone' is **puhelin**, *stem*: **puhelime**-. Its partitive is **puhelin**|**ta**, so 'May I use the telephone?' is

### Saanko käyttää puhelin ta?

'To call' someone is **soitta**-, the same verb used to refer to the playing of musical instruments. You call to a person (with the allative -IIe):

Mä soitan Liisalle. I'll call Lisa.

but you call into a number (with the illative):

Soita mulle tälhän numerolon. Call me at this number.

Finns answer the phone in a variety of ways: a simple Haloo; saying their name; saying the number dialled; or putting the subscriber's surname into the adessive, e.g. **Lehtose**|**IIa** 'at Lehtonen('s residence)'. 'Lauri speaking' is Lauri puhelime|ssa.

When you initiate the call, identify yourself by saying täällä (on/ puhuu) or tässä (on/puhuu) (more closely: 'Here is/speaks . . .') plus your name. If the connection (yhteys) is poor, you can say so: Yhteys on huono, or simply Ei kuulu 'it isn't audible'. Even more than usually, you may want to ask the other person to speak more slowly (hitaammin) or more loudly (kovempaa).

You can ask whether someone is available to come to the phone by saying Onko X tavattavissa? If they're not, you can always leave a message (Voinko jättä|ä sanan?) or call back later (Soitan uudel**leen**). You won't get through at all, of course, if the number is engaged (varattu), doesn't answer (ei vastaa) or is wrong (väärä).

On the phone, 'goodbye' is kuulemiin (lit. 'until hearing'), from kuule- 'hears'.



# 🔀 Dialogue 3



Here are four quick exchanges which take place over the phone: (CD1; 32)

## **Puhelimessa 1** On the phone 1

First, Liisa wants to reach Lassi; but Matti, his brother, answers, so:

MATTI Matti Rantanen!

Täällä puhuu Liisa Lehtisalo. Onkohan\* Lassi tavattavissa? LIISA

Kyllä on. Hetkinen. MATTI

Kiitos LIISA

MATTI [answering] Matti Rantanen.

LIISA This is Liisa Lehtisalo. Could I speak with Lassi?

MATTI Of course. Just one moment.

LIISA Thank you.

## Puhelimessa 2 On the phone 2

Marja fails to reach Juhani on her first try, so she says she'll ring back.

KAISA Kaisa Hakulinen!

MARJA Täällä puhuu Marja Koponen. Onkohan\* Juhani Karjalainen tavattavissa (paikalla)?

KAISA Hän ei ole nyt täällä. Hän tulee takaisin vasta kello neljä.

MARJA Kiitos. Soitan uudelleen. Kuulemiin.

KAISA Kuulemiin.

KAISA [answering] Kaisa Hakulinen!

MARJA It's Marja Koponen. Is Juhani Karjalainen there?

KAISA He isn't here right now. He won't be coming back until (lit. 'comes back not-until') four o'clock.

MARJA Thank you. I'll ring back later. (lit. 'I'll ring again') Goodbye.

KAISA Goodbye.

## **Puhelimessa 3** On the phone 3

Pentti wants to reach a certain Hämäläinen (who happens to be a composer), but Hämäläinen is not in, so Pentti leaves a message.

RITVA Hämäläisellä. Ritva Nurminen puhelimessa.

PENTTI Täällä puhuu Pentti Olavinen. Onkohan saveltäjä Hämäläinen tavattavissa?

RITVA Nyt ei ole. Hän on jo lähtenyt ulos; minä en tiedä varmasti, mihin aikaan hän tulee takaisin.

PENTTI Voinko jättää viestin?

RITVA Olkaa hyvää.

<sup>\*</sup> Onkolhan Both Liisa and Marja use the extremely frequent enclitic --hAn to solicit cooperation/agreement from their collocutors.

PENTTI Voisitteko pyytää, että hän soittaa minulle kännykkään?

Numero on 040 45 22 756.

RITVA Minä sanon.

PENTTI Kiitos. Kuulemiin.

RITVA Kuulemiin.

RITVA Hämäläinen residence, Ritva Nurminen speaking (lit. 'in the

phone').

PENTTI This is Pentti Olavinen. Is Mr(s)/Ms (composer) Hämäläinen

tavattavissa?

RITVA Not just now. (S)he has gone out already; I don't know

exactly when (s)he'll be coming back.

PENTTI May I leave a message?

RITVA Go right ahead.

PENTTI Could you ask (him/her) to call me on my mobile/cell

phone? (My) number is 040 45 22 756.

RITVA I'll tell (him/her).

PENTTI Thank you. Goodbye.

RITVA Goodbye.

#### **Puhelimessa 4** On the phone 4

Jouni tries to reach Mika, but Mika has gone out to basketball practice. Jouni leaves a message. **Rva**. stands for **rouva** 'Mrs'.

RVA. LEHTONEN Lehtosella.

JOUNI Täss on Jouni Matikainen hei, onks Mika kotona?

RVA. LEHTONEN Hei Jouni! Mika ei ole nyt kotona. Se lähti

koripalloharjoituksiin.

JOUNI Ai. Koska se tulee kotiin?

RVA. LEHTONEN Joskus kahdeksan jälkeen. Jätänkö viestin? JOUNI Joo. Jos se vois soittaa mulle vielä tänään.

RVA. LEHTONEN Selvä, kerron terveisiä.

JOUNI Kiitti. Hei! RVA. LEHTONEN Hei vaan!

MRS LEHTONEN Lehtonen residence.

JOUNI Hi, it's Jouni Matikainen. Is Mika at home?

MRS LEHTONEN Hi, Jouni! Mika's not at home right now. He went

to basketball practice.

JOUNI Oh. When's he coming home?

MRS LEHTONEN Some time after eight. Should I give (lit. 'leave') him

a message?

JOUNI Yea. If he could ring me some time today.

MRS LEHTONEN O.K. I'll tell him you called.

JOUNI Ta. 'Bye! MRS LEHTONEN 'Bye!

# Vocabulary



kyllä että that (conjunction) ves indeed harjoituks|i|in to practise kännykkä mobile/cell phone (sessions) (sN kännykkä) (pILL) mihin aikaan? at what time? hei! hi! mullle > if ios minulle ioskus some time. numero number sometimes onkolhan? is . . . at all? after X X n jälkeen paika|lla there, on the spot jättäleave (something puhelime|ssa (speaking) on the somewhere) phone kello clock, watch; pyytärequest, ask o'clock someone to do kertotell, recount, talk something about sana word kiitti > kiitos se läht|i (s)he left kori+pallo basketball se on lähtelnyt (s)he has left koska? when? selvä clear; OK kotilin (coming, going) soittacall, ring, play home (instrument) koto|na (at) home säveltä|jä composer kuule|m|i|in (on telephone) taka|isin back (from where goodbye one has gone)

Ì	tavattav i ssa	reachable	vaan	(expresses
l	terveis∣i∣ä	greetings		agreement,
ı	tietä-	know		encouragement)
ı	tä nä än	today	varma sti	certainly, for certain
ı	täss > tä ssä		vasta	not until
	täällä	here	vielä	still; <b>vielä tänään</b> lit. 'while it is still
	ulo s	(coming or going) out		today', i.e. before tomorrow
	uude lle en	again	viesti	message, piece of information



## Exercise 6

puhelin

Make up your own short (successful and unsuccessful) telephone dialogues. Phone friends and relative strangers in order to practise your skills with  $\mathbf{s}(\mathbf{in})\ddot{\mathbf{a}}$  and  $\mathbf{te}$ .



# Language point

# Two more noun types: stems in =iME and =(m)UKsE, =OKsE

Many Finnish nouns which denote machines, tools, or instruments are built, usually from verbs, with the suffix =**iME**. The citation form ends in  $\mathbf{n}$ :

avain	key (cf. avaX- 'open')
soitin	musical instrument (cf. soitta- 'play')
eläin	animal (cf. elä- 'live')
elin	organ (of the body; cf. elä- 'live', again!)
kytkin	switch (usually electric; cf. kytke- 'connect')
poljin	pedal (cf. polke- 'tread')

telephone (cf. puhu- 'speak')

Note also **kirjain** 'letter (of the alphabet)' and the unanalysable **ydin** 'marrow, nucleus', **sierain** 'nostril', and **sydän** 'heart'.

The citation form ends in **n**, but the stem's final **ime** is clear in case forms such as inessive **puhelime**|ssa. Compression rules apply as

usual, e.g. compressed **t** in **soitin** and decompressed **tt** in genitive singular **soittime**|**n**, compressed **d** in **ydin** and decompressed **t** in genitive **ytime**|**n**. **Sydän** 'heart' is exceptional in that its **n** alternates with a long [mm]; though this is not reflected in the spelling, note how the **d** remains compressed: genitive **sydäme**|**n**.

The partitive singular of these stems is a bit unexpected: **iME**-stems behave like **lumi** 'snow', e.g. **puhelin**|**ta**, **avain**|**ta**, **soitin**|**ta**.

You will also often meet with words built with the suffixes =( $\mathbf{m}$ )UKsE and =OKsE. Finnish uses these to build nouns, usually from verbs. The citation form ends in  $\mathbf{s}$ , e.g.:

treaty, agreement (cf. sopi- 'fit in well, be OK') sopimus application (form) (cf. hake- 'fetch') hakemus question (cf. kysy- 'ask') kysymys pyhimys saint (cf. **pyhä** 'holy') rakennus building (cf. rakenta- 'build') uudistus innovation, reform (cf. uudista- 'make new' and uusi te 'new') hallitus government (cf. halliTSE- 'rule') opening (cf. avaX-) avaus vastaus answer (cf. vastaX- 'answers') kirjoitus essay, document (cf. kirjoitta- 'writes', itself from kirja 'book') leivos pastry (cf. leipo- 'bake', itself derived from leipä 'bread') portion (genitive annokse|n; stem ant=oKsE, annos cf. anta- 'give') käännös (product of) translation (cf. kääntä- 'turn, translate') accusation (cf. syyttä- 'accuse, blame', from syytös syy 'cause') kiitos (giving of) thanks (cf. kiittää- 'thank'; you'll learn why it's o and not ö in Unit 10)

The partitive also has only  $\mathbf{s}$ , i.e. these nouns behave like dental stems:

Mulla on kolme kysymys|tä. I have three questions.

Se etsii vastaus|ta. (S)he is looking for an answer.

but all other case forms have the ks, e.g.

rakennukse|n toisella puolella on the other side of the

buiding

Ne allekirjoittaa sopimukse|n. They will sign the treaty. Hakemukse|ssa ei ole nimeä. There's no name on the

application.

# Unit Six

# Mennääks kiskalle!

Let's go to the kiosk!

#### In this unit you will:

- · learn more about shopping, and saying 'these' and 'those'
- · learn about Independence Day in Finland
- go on a visit to Granny's
- learn how to form and use the past tense
- · learn another way to link verbs: the third infinitive
- learn how to make adverbs

# Dialogue 1

## Leipomossa At the baker's (CD1; 33)

MYYJÄ Päivää, mitä teille saisi olla?

RVA. LEHTONEN Ovatko nuo lakkaviinerit tuoreita?

MYYJÄ Kyllä, tänä aamuna leivottuja.

RVA. LEHTONEN Ottaisin niitä neljä.

MYYJÄ Ja muuta?

RVA. LEHTONEN Onkos teillä perunalimppua?

MYYJÄ On kyllä. Montako saisi olla?

RVA. LEHTONEN Yksi riittää, kiitos.







(Good) day, what would you (like to) have? ASSISTANT MRS LEHTONEN Are those arctic cloudberry danish fresh? Yes (indeed), (they're) baked this morning. ASSISTANT MRS LEHTONEN I'll take (lit. 'I would take') four of them.

ASSISTANT And (anything) else?

MRS LEHTONEN Do you have any potato loaves? ASSISTANT Certainly. How many would you like?

MRS LEHTONEN One will be enough, thanks.



# ocabulary/

lakka	arctic cloudberry	myy jä	seller; myy- sells
leip o mo	bakery (leipä bread,	niitä	of them (pP of se)
	leip o- bake)	nuo	those (pN of tuo)
leivo∣ttu	baked	otta isi n	I would take
limppu	(round) loaf	tuoreQ	fresh
mon ta ko	how much?	tä nä aamu na	this morning
muu	other, else	viineri	Danish pastry



# 💋 Language points

#### More on pronouns: plural forms of demonstratives

So far you have met various forms of the demonstrative pronouns tämä 'this', tuo 'that' and se 'it'. Here are the full paradigms of these three little words. Notice that the plural forms (nämä, nuo and ne) all begin with n; their differences are therefore all the more important to study so that you don't mix them up.

The asterisked forms are provided to whet your appetite; you'll learn them in later units.

	this	that yonder	that, it
sN	tämä	tuo	se
sG	tämä∣n	tuo n	seln
sP	tä∣tä	tuo ta	si∣tä
sELA	tä∣stä	tuo sta	sii tä (!)
sINE	tä∣ssä	tuo ssa	sii nä (!)
sILL	tä∣hän	tuo hon	sii∣hen
sABL	tä∣ltä	tuolita	si∣ltä
sADE	tä∣llä	tuolla	si∣llä
sALL	tä∣lle	tuo lle	si∣lle
sESS	tä∣nä	tuo∣na	si∣nä
sTRA	tä∣ksi*	tuo ksi*	si∣ksi*
	these	those yonder	those, they
pN	these nämä	those yonder	those, they
pN pG			
•	nämä	nuo	ne
pG	nämä näi den*	nuo no i den*	ne ni i den*
pG pP	nämä näi∣den* nä∣i∣tä	nuo no i den* no i ta	ne ni i den* ni i tä
pG pP pELA	nämä näi den* nä i tä nä i stä	nuo no i den* no i ta no i sta	ne ni i den* ni i tä ni i stä
pG pP pELA pINE	nämä näi den* nä i tä nä i stä nä i ssä	nuo no i den* no i ta no i sta no i ssa	ne ni i den* ni i tä ni i stä ni i ssä
pG pP pELA pINE pILL	nämä näi den* nä i tä nä i stä nä i ssä nä i hin	nuo no i den* no i ta no i sta no i ssa no i hin	ne ni i den* ni i tä ni i stä ni i ssä ni i hin
pG pP pELA pINE pILL pABL	nämä näi den* nä i tä nä i stä nä i ssä nä i hin nä i ltä	nuo no i den* no i ta no i sta no i ssa no i hin no i lta	ne ni i den* ni i tä ni i stä ni i ssä ni i hin ni i tä
pG pP pELA pINE pILL pABL pADE	nämä näi den* nä i tä nä i stä nä i ssä nä i hin nä i ltä nä i llä	nuo no i den* no i ta no i sta no i ssa no i hin no i lta no i lla	ne ni i den* ni i tä ni i stä ni i ssä ni i hin ni i ltä ni i ltä

Here are some examples of the demonstrative pronouns in action:

Ota kaks no|i|ta suur|i|a leip|i|ä!

Mä otan viis ni|i|tä.

Suomessa nä|i|tä kiel|i|ä ei opiskella.

Kerro jotain ni|i|stä!

Onks se sii|nä paika|ssa?

Take two of those large loaves. (pP)
I'll take five of them. (pP)
These languages aren't studied in Finland. (pP)
Say something about them! (pELA) Is it in that place? (sINE)

#### **Adverbs of Place and of Manner**

#### Adverbs of place

Finnish is rich in little words which indicate where, whence, and whither. Corresponding to the simple English word 'here', for example, is any of four different forms, depending on whether or not motion is implied and on the relative size of the space meant. Study this little chart, which summarizes the forms. Which forms are identical with those of **se** and **tämä**? (You can check your memory by peeking back at the previous section.)

	tä∣ssä	sii∣nä	tuo ssa	stationary
smaller area	tä∣hän	sii∣hen	tuo hon	moving towards
	tä∣stä	sii∣tä	tuo∣sta	moving away

	tää∣llä	sie∣llä	tuo∣lla	stationary
larger area	tä∣nne	si∣nne	tuo∣nne	moving towards
	tää∣ltä	sie∣Itä	tuo∣lta	moving away

#### Examples:

Se kutsui m(in)ut *tänne*. Kai *tähän* saa istua? Kirjoita nimesi *tähän*. Me mennään *sinne* museoon. *Tässä* on majoneesia.

Tässä on majoneesia. Etkö tunne ketään täällä? Käy tuonne sohvalle. (S)he invited me (to) here.
Might one sit (to) here, perhaps?
Write your name (to) here.
We're going (to there) to the museum.
Here's some mayonnaise.
Don't you know anyone here?
Go (lie down) on(to) the sofa (to) over there.

#### Adverbs of manner

These are most commonly formed from adjectives; the suffix used in this derivation is =sti, added directly to the stem. To the left of this 'tight-lid' suffix, **Q** and **X** are read as #, as usual. Examples:

Adjective	Adverb	English
huono	huono sti	badly
hieno	hieno∣sti	finely
hirveä	hirveä∣sti	frightfully
kaunis	kaunii∣sti	beautifully (stem: kauniX)
äänekäs	äänekkää sti	vociferously (stem: äänekkäX,
		from <b>ääni</b> e 'voice')
lämmin	lämpimä∣sti	warmly (stem: lampimä; more on
		this stem type in Unit 8)

A few of the most common adverbs are formed with =**in**:

hyvä hyv|in well (hyvä|sti 'farewell')
usea use|in frequently

Examples:

Se laulaa hyvin (S)he sings well

Me käydään usein Ruotsissa We go to Sweden often

It is useful to distinguish such adverbs of manner, which modify verbs, from adverbs of intensity, which modify adjectives. To form these, you simply put the first, intensifying, adjective into the genitive:

hirveä|n kaunis frightfully beautiful

hirveä|n tylsä frightfully stupid (hirveä 'frightful', tylsä

'dim-witted')

# Introduction to participles: past and present, passive and active

Participles are simply special kinds of adjectives made from verbs, like English 'broken' (from 'break') in 'This glass is broken' or 'broken promises'.

Finnish has four participles, two with past, or completed, meanings, and two with present (better: non-past), uncompleted, meanings. So, for example, the form <code>leivottu|j|a</code> in the dialogue above is the partitive plural of the past passive participle, <code>leivo|ttu</code> 'baked', from the verb <code>leipo-</code> 'bakes'. We might paraphrase and say that <code>leivottu</code> means something like '(that) which has been baked'; you'll learn how to form and use this kind of participle in the next unit.

Alongside a past passive participle like **leivottu**, Finnish also has a past *active* participle, namely **leiponut**. Paraphrasing again, we could say that this form means something like '(s)he who has baked, that which has baked'. This form is most commonly used together with other verb forms, in compound tenses. For example:

Mä olen leipo|nut kaks leipää l've baked two loaves today. tänään.

There will be more on this use of **-NUT** forms like **leiponut** (perfect tense) in the next unit, and you will meet it again later on in this unit, in connection with the *negative past*. But first, some more shopping.



# 🔀 Dialogue 2



#### (CD1; 34)

Kiosks (kioski|t) are the Finns' way of picking up small items out of normal business hours. A colloquial variant of kioski is kiska.

## Kioskille (Going) to the kiosk

OSKARI Hei Pekka, mennääks kiskalle. Mä sain mun viikkorahan.

PEKKA Joo, mennään vaan. Isä pyyski mua hakee\* Iltasanomat.

OSKARI Mun tekee hirveesti mieli Valion suklaatuuttia.

PEKKA Mäkin saan ostaa jotain hyvää.

OSKARI Hey Pekka, let's go to the kiosk. I've (just) got my allowance.

PEKKA OK, let's go. My father asked me to get an Iltasanomat,

anyway.

OSKARI I could really go for a Valio chocolate cone.

PEKKA I'm going to buy something good too.

#### Kioskilla At the kiosk

MYYJÄ Mitäs pojille sais olla?

PEKKA *Iltasanomat* ja kymmenen noita irtomerkkareita ja yks

kingis-puikko.

MYYJÄ Noin ole hyvä ja se tekee kaksi euroa. Ja mitäs sulle

sais olla? [kääntyy Oskarin puoleen]

OSKARI Yks suklaatuutti, kiitos.

MYYJÄ Tossa, yks euro.

POJAT Kiitti hei!

ASSISTANT What'll (you) boys have?

PEKKA An Iltasanomat and ten of those loose candies, and

a kingis-pop.

ASSISTANT All right, here you are; that makes two euros, then.

And what will you have? [turns towards Oskari]

OSKARI One chocolate cone, thanks. ASSISTANT There (you are); one euro.

THE BOYS Thanks. 'Bye!

# Vocabulary



hake- fetch hei! Hi, Hey!

hirveesti > hirveä|sti

hirveä|sti frightful|ly

Iltasanomat Evening Paper

irtomerkkareita type of loose (penny-)candies

**isä** father

jo|ta|in something

kingis-puikko type of ice lolly

kiska > kioski

kuus > kuusi six

käänty- turn (itr)

mennääks > mennäänkö

mä|kin > minä|kin | I too

noinroughly; sono|i|taof those (pP)

<sup>\*</sup> pyyski mua hakee > pyysikin minua hakemaan 'asked me to fetch'. You will learn about i-dropping (pyysi ~ pyys) and the third infinitive (hakemaan ~ hakeen ~ hakee) later on in this unit.

poja|t boys (pN)

poj|i|lle to (the) boys (pALL)

 X|n puole|en
 to(wards) X

 pyys|ki > pyysi|kin
 asked too

 saa|n
 I'm going to

 sali|n
 I've got

suklaa|tuutti chocolate cone

teke|e mieli X could really go for an X

tossa > tuo|ssa there

Valio (Brand name)

viikko|raha (weekly) pocket money

yks > yksi



## Language point

## **Colloquial forms**

You will have noticed that demonstratives have special shortened forms which occur in colloquial contexts, e.g. **tossa** for **tuossa** in the dialogue above.

Note in particular:

more formal: **tuo nuo tämä nämä** more colloquial: **toi noi tää nää** 



## Exercise 1

Practise your knowledge of demonstratives (and revise the accusative) by putting these into Finnish:

- 1 What do you want, these or (vai) those?
- 2 What do you want, ice cream (jäätelö) or cake?
- 3 Do you want wine, beer, or juice?
- 4 I'll eat these sandwiches.
- 5 Here's a chocolate cone.

# Dialogue 3



## Mummolaan Going to Granny's (CD1; 35)



#### Lähtö Setting out

ÄITI Joko\* kaikki on valmiina? Nyt pitäis jo\* lähtee mummon

luo.

ISÄ Onks kukat mukana?

MAIJA Ne on jo autossa†.

ÄITI Sit mennään!

ısä Ja Matti muistaa sitten<sup>‡</sup> ettei ota enempää kuin kaks

palaa täytekakkua?

MATTI Mut ku§ mummon täytekakku on niin hyvää!

ÄITI Ja nyt kyllä mentiin!

MOTHER Is everything ready? We ought to be leaving for Granny's

now.

FATHER Got the flowers?

MAIJA They're in the car.

MOTHER Let's go then!

FATHER And Matti will remember not to take more than two

pieces of (filled) cake, won't he?

MATTI But Granny's filled cake is so good!

MOTHER Right, let's get going!

<sup>\*</sup> **joko**: the little word **jo** is often more an indication of diminishing patience, rather than the equivalent of English 'already'.

 $<sup>^{\</sup>dagger}$  autossa: most foreign words, acronyms, and slang are susceptible only to quantitative consonant compression (tt > t, etc.; see Unit 1). Thus t remains t in autossa and Natossa 'in NATO', k remains k in hetekalla 'on the sofa-bed', and p remains p in mopolla 'on (her) motor scooter'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> sitten: this word often merely indicates earnestness.

<sup>§</sup> ku(n) 'when, since' here points to an omitted clause like 'it's so difficult for me to restrain myself'.

#### Mummon luona At Granny's

MUMMO Tervetuloa! Olipa hauska\* että tulitte.

MAIJA Me tuotiin mummolle kukkia.

MUMMO No kiitos! Tulkaa peremmälle. Mitä teille kuuluu?

ÄITI Kiitos ihan hyvää. Entä itsellesi?

миммо Hyvää vaan. Kahvi onkin ihan valmista. Istutaan pöytään!

MATTI Mummo, saiskos palan kakkua?

MUMMO Sitä vartenhan se on tehty! Annahan lautasesi Matti.

ÄITI Isä ojennahan kuppisi niin kaadan kahvia.

MAIJA Sunnuntait on aina kivoja, ku tullaan mummolaan!

GRANNY Welcome! You've come at just the right time.

MAIJA We brought Granny flowers.

GRANNY Well, thank you! Come through. How are you all?

MOTHER Quite well, thanks. And you?

GRANNY Fine, fine. The coffee's just ready, as well. Let's sit down

(to table)!

MATTI Granny, can I have a piece of cake?

GRANNY That's what it's made for! Give me your plate, Matti.

MOTHER Pass your cup Father, and I'll pour the (some) coffee.

MAIJA Sundays, when we come to Granny's, are always

wonderful!

<sup>\*</sup> oli|pa hauska 'how nice...' The past tense is sometimes used, particularly with --pA, to express enthusiasm or sudden discovery.



# Vocabulary

aina	always	itse si	yourself
auto	car	jo∣ko	yet (in questions)
enempä∣ä	more (sP)	kaata-	pour, tip over (tr)
entä	and (what about ?)	kaatu-	pour (itr), fall over
ett ei =		kaikki e	all, every
että+ei		kakku	cake
hauska	pleasant, nice; fun	kiva	great, lovely
ihan	quite, rather	ku(n)	when, since, because
istu-	sit	kuin	than; as, like

kukka	flower	mut > mutta	
kuppi∣si	your cup	ojenta-	extend, offer, pass
lautase si	your plate	pala	piece
X∣n luo	to X's place	pere mmä lle	(to) further in
X∣n luona	at X's place	pitäis > pitäisi	
lähtee >		pöytä∣än	(sitting down) to table
lähteä		teh∣ty	made
läht∣ö	departure	tul i tte	you (p/formal) came
men tiin	(it's time) we went	tuo∣tiin	(we) brought
muista-	remember	täyte+kakku	filled cake
muka na	along (with one)	valmi∣i∣na	ready (pESS)
mummo	grandma, Granny	valmis∣ta	ready (sP)
Mummola	Granny's place	X TA varten	for X

# Language point

# Q

## The simple past tense

The Finnish simple past tense corresponds to two kinds of past tense in English. These are the English simple past 'I said', 'you took', 'she went', 'they bought', and the imperfect 'I was saying', 'you were taking', 'she was going', 'they were buying'.

The suffix is -i-, attached directly to the verb stem. To the *right* of this -i- you put the same endings as those of the present tense, except that there is no lengthening of the vowel, i.e. no -#, in the third person. Contrast:

s3 present: se sano|o (s)he/it says

s3 past: se sano|i (s)he/it said/was saying

To the *left* of the past-tense -i-, certain vowel changes occur. (*Tip:* Since many of these vowel changes – but not all! – are the same as those you learned in connection with the pluralizer -i- in the previous unit, a comparison with those rules will be well repaid.)

Here's a summary, which you should have a look through now and use as a reference later.

To the left of the -i- of the past tense,

Class III verbs lose their final e:

mä men|i|n I went/was going (stem: mene-) sä tul|i|t you came/were coming (stem: tule-)

se ol|i (s)he/it was (stem: ole-)

sä pääs|i|t you managed to go/come (stem: pääse-)

Class IV verbs reduce their long vowel or diphthong. This means that

aa > a

ää > ä

oi > o

uo > o

yö > ö

ie > e

In class II verbs, X is read as s, (E)XE as n, and TSE as ts:

mä huomas|i|n I noticed/was noticing (stem: huomaX-)
pimen|i it got/was getting dark (stem: pimEXE-,

from **pimeä** 'dark')

sä mainits|i|t you mentioned/were mentioning

(stem: mainiTSE-)

Class I verbs have three subtypes. We may summarize their behaviour as follows:

Stem-final i, e, ä, are deleted:

In bisyllabic stems, final **a** changes to **o** if the first (or only) vowel of the first syllable is unrounded (**i**, **e**, **a**; see p. 1):

mä auto|i|n I helped/was helping (stem: autta-) sä anno|i|t you gave/were giving (stem: anta-)

se alko|i (s)he/it began/was beginning (stem: alka-) hän virkko|i (s)he uttered/was uttering (stem: virkka-) Otherwise, the final **a** is deleted. This deletion of **a** therefore occurs in bisyllabic stems whose first (or only) vowel of the first syllable is rounded, e.g.

mä muut|i|n I moved house (stem: muutta-) sä ost|i|t you bought (stem: osta-)

and in all stems that are more than two syllables long:

mä tarkist|i|n I checked (stem: tarkasta-, cf. tarkka 'exact')
mä nukahd|i|n I fell asleep (stem: nukahta-, cf. nukku- 'sleeps')
sä opet|i|t you taught (stem: opetta-, cf. opiskele- 'studies')
se tuiiott|i (s)he/it stared (stem: tuiiotta-)

One last rule: a single t, if preceded by a vowel, n, I, or r, usually changes to s if it is to the left of a stem-final A (a or ä) which is deleted by the -i- of the past tense. Examples:

se lens|i (s)he/it flew (stem: lentä-, cf. lent=o+kenttä 'airport')

The most frequently used verbs which are exceptions to this  $\mathbf{t} > \mathbf{s}$  rule are **pitä**- 'holds' (**mä pid**|**i**|**n**), **vetä**- 'pulls' (**mä ved**|**i**|**n**), **souta**- 'rows' (**mä soud**|**i**|**n**), and **nouta**- 'fetches' (**mä noud**|**i**|**n**).

Note on consonant compression: past tense forms compress exactly as their corresponding present tense forms. Notice the parallels:

	anta-	luke-	tapaX-	tarkeXE-	stem
present:	anna∣t	lue∣n	tapaa∣n	tarkene t	
past:	anno i t	lu i n	tapas i n	tarken∣i∣t	
	yes		no		compressed

Here are the full past tense paradigms of four verbs, **otta**- 'takes', **huomaX**- 'notices', **mene**- 'goes', and **jää**- 'remains, stays'. The more formal first person plural forms (with **-mme**) are given here; for the usual colloquial indefinite forms, see later on in this unit.

Stem	otta-	huomaX-	mene-	jää-
s1	ot i n	huomas i n	men i n	jä∣i∣n
s2	ot i t	huomas i t	men i t	jä i t
s3	se ott∣i	se huomas∣i	se men∣i	se jä∣i
p1	ot i mme*	huomas i mme*	men i mme*	jä∣i∣mme*
p2	ot∣i∣tte	huomas i tte	men i tte	jä∣i∣tte
рЗ	ne ott∣i <sup>†</sup>	ne huomas∣i <sup>†</sup>	ne men∣i <sup>†</sup>	ne jä∣i <sup>†</sup>

<sup>\*</sup> In more colloquial contexts, the past indefinite is used: see the section later on in this unit.

<sup>†</sup> In more formal contexts: he ott|i|vat, he huomas|i|vat, he men|i|vät, he jä|i|vät.



## Exercise 2

Change these verb phrases from present to past, or vice versa.

#### Model: mä lennän → mä lensin

1	sä ostit	6	hän muutti
2	he sanovat	7	ne saapuu
3	te osaatte	8	mä tarvitsen
4	me halusimme	9	se juo
5	mä voin	10	me huudamme



# Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Finnish. In every case, the simple past tense will work.

- 1 Where were you?
- 2 What did she say?
- 3 The cat ate the mouse (hiiri e).
- 4 I helped a little.
- 5 Did you see him?
- 6 They took it away.
- 7 Where did you put (pistä-) it?
- 8 Who mentioned it?
- 9 Who did you give it to?
- 10 Where did you find it?
- 11 (S)he was warm enough outside in a T-shirt.
- 12 I flew out of the window (ikkuna|sta).

The *negative past* is made up of two parts: the negative verb and the *past active participle*. Compare these positive and negative forms:

positive: mä sano|i|n I said negative: mä en sano|nut I didn't say

positive: **lu|i|tteko te** did you read? negative: **ettekö luke|neet** didn't you read?

You build the past active participle by attaching the suffix -NUT (singular)/-nee|t (plural) to the verb stem. Attaching it is quite straightforward: you simply add it to the stems of class I and IV verbs:

luke|nutreadsano|nutsaid

kieltä|nyt prohibited

saa|nut got

The chunks (X, TSE, (E)XE) at the end of class II verbs assimilate to the n:

huoman|nutnoticed (stem: huomaX-)mainin|nutmentioned (stem: mainiTSE-)alen|nutdecreased, sank (stem: alEXE-)

Dental stems (class III) behave in the opposite way: they lose their final  $\mathbf{e}$ , and the  $\mathbf{n}$  of -NUT assimilates to their last consonant:

tul|lut come (stem: tule-)
men|nyt gone (stem: mene-)

pääs|syt managed to go/come (stem: pääse-)

pur|rut bitten (stem: pure-)

The two stems näke- and teke- are idiosyncratic:

näh|nyt seen (stem: näke-) teh|nyt done (stem: teke-)

You have already met this kind of behaviour in their first infinitives (Unit 3) and indefinite forms (Unit 5): näh|dä, teh|dä, näh|dään, teh|dään.



## Exercise 4

Change positive to negative, and vice versa.

- 1 Se ei mennvt.
- 2 Ne tuli.
- 3 Mä en istunut tässä.
- 4 He eivät sanoneet.
- 5 Näitkö sen?
- Mä en lukenut sitä.
- 7 Me emme ostaneet uutta autoa.
- 8 Me tapasimme.
- 9 Hän sai kirieen Tanialta.
- 10 Ne ei lähettäneet rahaa.



# K Dialogue 4



## Itsenäisyyspäivä 6.12 Finland's Independence Day, 6 December (CD1; 36)

Suomi itsenäistyi Venäjästä 1917. (Finland became independent of Russia in 1917.)

#### [Yliopistolla]

ARTO Oliver, olet sä kuullut, että yliopistolla on

itsenäisyyspäiväjuhla ens viikolla, itsenäisyyspäivänä.

OLIVER Ai jaa? Onks sinne kutsuttu kaikki opiskelijatkin?

ARTO Joo on, mutta liput on kyllä aika kalliit; 9 euroa.

Siinä tapauksessa mä taidan jättää ne juhlat väliin. Miten OLIVER muuten suomalaiset viettävät itsenäisyyspäivää?

Aika perinteisesti. Kello kuus illalla sytytetään ikkunalle ARTO kaksi kynttilää, joita poltetaan kahdeksaan asti.

Se on varmaan tosi kauniinnäköistä. Mitä ihmiset sitten OLIVER tekee sinä aikana?

Monet katsovat presidentin linnan tanssiaisia TV:stä. Siellä ARTO

> voi nähdä kaikki suomen julkkikset. Kutsua linnan tanssiaisiin pidetään kunnia-asiana.

Minusta tuntuu, että minäkin aion viettää itsenäisyyspäivää OLIVER perinteisesti, sytyttämällä kynttilät ja katsomalla tanssiaisia!

#### [At university]

ARTO Oliver, have you heard? There's going to be an Independence Day celebration at university next week.

OLIVER Oh yes? And are all students invited to it?

ARTO Yes, they are. But the tickets are pretty expensive, to be sure: 9 euros.

OLIVER In that case I'll probably give that celebration a miss. How do Finns celebrate Independence Day, anyway?

ARTO Pretty traditionally. At six o'clock in the evening they light two candles in the window, and burn them (lit. 'which they burn') until eight.

OLIVER That must be really beautiful-looking. What do people do during that time?

ARTO Many watch the dancing at the Presidential Palace on TV.

You can see all of Finland's celebs there. An invitation to
the Palace Ball is considered a great honour.

OLIVER Seems to me I'll be spending Independence Day traditionally, as well, lighting candles and watching the dancing!

# Vocabulary



ai! Oh!

aika fairly, pretty
aiko- intend
ens > ensi next

ihmise|t people

itsenäisty- becomes independent

itsenäisyys te independence

**jaa** yeah, yes

jo|i|ta which (pP) (relative pronoun)

juhla celebration julkkis\* celeb.

jättälä seln välilin gives it a miss

kalliX beautiful

katso- look at, watch

katso|ma|llaby watchingkunnia-asiamatter of honour

kutsuinvitationkutsu-invitekutsu|ttuinvited

kuul|lut (having) heard

kymppi > kymmenen

kymppii > kymppi|ä (sP)

kynttilä candle

linna palace, castle, fortress

lippu ticket; flag miten? how?

mone|t many (usually people)

musta > minusta in my opinion

muu|tenby the way; otherwiseperinteQtradition (sN perinne)

perinte|ise|sti traditionally
pitä- hold, consider

poltta- burn presidentti president

si|nä aika|na during/at that time

sytyttä-light, ignitesytyttä|mä|lläby lightingtanssiaiseltdance. ball

tapaus ksecasetosireallytuntu-seemvarma|ancertainly

viettä- spend (time); celebrate

voi one can X|#n asti until X

X|n||näköinen X-looking, looking like X

**vliopisto** university

\* Numerous colloquial and slang items are formed with the suffix =iKsE. The consonants in stems to which such words are built do not undergo compression; in fact they are often strengthened (doubled) or consonants are even inserted. So we have julkkis sG julkkikse|n, cf. julkinen 'public'; further examples are tuhkis tuhkiksen 'ashtray' (standard tuhka+kuppi), morkkis morkkikse|n 'guilt trip' (cf. moraalinen 'moral'), symppis 'nice guy/person' (sympaattinen ihminen), idis idikse|n (cf. idea), bestis bestikse|n 'best friend'.

# Language point

# The third infinitive

We'll skip the second infinitive here and go straight to the third infinitive, because it's a much more useful form to know when you're starting Finnish.

You form it by adding =mA to the verb stem; any X at the end of the stem gets read as A. Here are examples from each verb class, with illative, elative, and inessive endings:

Stem	Third infinitive	Illative	Elative	Inessive
hake-	hake ma	hake ma an	hake ma sta	hake ma ssa
tapaX-	tapaa ma	tapaa ma an	tapaa ma sta	tapaa ma ssa
opiskele-	opiskele ma	opiskele ma an	opiskele ma sta	opiskele ma ssa
käy-	käy mä	käy mä än	käy mä stä	käy mä ssä

The most common use of the third infinitive is as a continuation of, or an accompaniment to, some other verb. It then stands in some case form; this is the *illative* in goal-like situations, where there's a destination, concrete or abstract, that's being aimed at:

Mä menen hake|ma|an liput.

Mennään hiihtä|mä|än!

Se tuli käy|mä|än.

Se hakee opiskele|ma|an
yliopistoon.

Se kumartui nosta|ma|an sitä.

Se pyysi mua hake|ma|an sen.

Ne pakotti mut teke|mä|än sen.

I'll go and fetch the tickets. Let's go skiing! (S)he came to visit.

(S)he is applying to study at university.

(S)he bent down to pick it up. (S)he asked me to fetch it. They forced me to do it.

Verbs which are common with this sort of construction include alka-'begin' (more formal Finnish tends to have the first infinitive with this verb), rupeX- (first infinitive ruveta) 'get started doing', pysty- 'be up to doing', pakotta- 'force', saa- 'get to, be allowed to', autta- 'help', pvvtä- 'ask' and käske- 'order, command'. A kind of future tense can be formed with tule- 'come' and this illative, third infinitive form:

Se tulee olemaan vaikeaa. It's going to be difficult.

The *elative* is used to convey the notion of source or origin, or of separation or distancing:

Me tullaan hiihtälmälstä. We're (just) coming from skiing.

(hiihtä- 'ski')

(S)he kept me from leaving. Hän esti minua lähte|mä|stä.

(estä- 'prevent')

Minä en lakkaa etsilmälstä I won't stop looking for him/her.

(lakkaX- 'stop')

(S)he was in Finland

making a film.

The *inessive* applies to simultaneity or duration:

Se oli Suomessa tekelmälssä

elokuvaa.

häntä

Se ero on koko aian

hyvää oloa etsimässä

häviä|mä|ssä.

all the time. (häviX-'disappears, vanishes')

The adessive is frequently used to convey means or method:

sytyttä|mä|llä kynttilät Se haluaa auttaa tarjoa|ma|lla

työtä.

by lighting the candles (S)he wants to help by

That distinction is disappearing

offering work.

in search of well-being

Finally, the abessive (-ttA) indicates that something did not happen; any subject of such a verb form is put into the genitive:

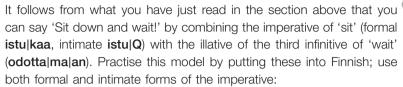
Se jäi luke|ma|tta. It didn't get read.

(lit. 'remained unread')

Se lähti Peka|n huomaa|ma|tta. (S)he left without Pekka's

noticing.

## Exercise 5



- 1 Come (plural) home and eat!
- 2 Run (singular intimate) over there (tuonne) and have a look (katso-)!
- 3 Go (singular intimate) swimming (ui-)!
- 4 Go (plural; use lähte-) for a walk (kävele-)!
- 5 Come and look at this!

# Language point

## The past indefinite

Forming the past indefinite of a verb is easy if you know its present indefinite; if you feel shaky about forming those, you might want to revise now (Unit 5).

The procedure is this: if the present indefinite ends in a vowel plus **tAAn**, change the **tAAn** to **ttiin**:

present indefinite: anne|taan halu|taan tarvi|taan past indefinite: anne|ttiin halu|ttiin tarvi|ttiin

Otherwise, change dAAn, rAAn, tAAn or IAAn to tiin:

present indefinite: saa|daan pur|raan pääs|tään opiskel|laan past indefinite: saa|tiin pur|tiin pääs|tiin opiskel|tiin

#### Examples

Häntä este|ttiin nukkumasta.

Mulle sano|ttiin että mä en
tarvitse sitä.

Just tulitiin.

Nykyään ei syödä mitä ennen syö|tiin.

Torstaina me men|tiin Roomaan, huomenna me men|nään Napoliin. He was prevented from sleeping. I was told I don't need it.

We've just got here.

Nowadays people don't eat
what they used to eat.

On Thursday we went to Rome, tomorrow we're going to Naples.





## Exercise 6

Change present to past, and vice versa:

- 1 Me mennään hiihtämään.
- 2 Me katsottiin televisiota.
- 3 Mitä me syöttiin?
- 4 Me halutaan rauhaa ('peace').



# Language point

### More on colloquial forms

Earlier on in this unit, colloquial variants such as tossa (for tuossa) were mentioned. Three more types of pronunciation characteristic of colloquial speech are (1) omission of final i after s as in isä pyys for isä pyysi 'father asked (me)', (2) levelling of vowel sequences such as iä, ea (or eä), ua, oa into ii, ee, uu, oo: kymppii for kymppiä, korkee for korkea, hirveesti for hirveästi, kossuu for kossua, sanoo for sanoa, and (3) the omission of the -mA- of the third infinitive illative of verbs, i.e. just -#n instead of -mA-#n, e.g. hakeen instead of hakemaan, sanoon instead of sanomaan, tuleen instead of tulemaan, katkeaan (katkeX-#n) instead of katkeamaan (katkeX-mA-#n), hallitseen instead of hallitsemaan.

When you speak, you should practise using both types of pronunciation, the more formal and the more colloquial.



## Exercise 7

Here are some colloquial forms. Guess at the forms in more formal Finnish, then check your answers at the back of this book.

1 tärkee

5 pitäis

2 oikeestaan

6 mainitseen

3 hulluks

7 menis

4 puhuun

# Language point



## **Emphasis and constituent order**

You have already met with the two basic constituent orders of Finnish clauses. When you want to lend special emphasis to a part of a clause, you can simply say that part more loudly, e.g. **Mä tilasin** *kahvin* 'I ordered a *coffee*'.

But Finnish speakers also emphasize by moving the subject or the object away from its normal position. Thus another way to emphasize that it's coffee that you ordered is to say: *Kahvin* mä tilasin 'It's a *coffee* I ordered'. Similarly, you can emphasize the subject by saying *Kahvin* tilasin *minä* 'It's I who ordered the coffee'. Notice that in both of these examples, the emphasized words are either last or first in the sentence.

And that is the basic rule. There are four fine points which you will also find useful to know:

- 1 When the emphasized word is at the beginning of the sentence, the verb comes last, e.g. *Kahvin* mä sulle tilasin 'lt's *coffee* I ordered for you', *Minä* kahvin sulle tilasin 'lt's I who ordered you coffee'.
- 2 To emphasize the verb, put it first in the sentence. Finns often add the enclitic --pA(s), e.g. Tilasinpa(s) sulle kahvin! 'I did order you a coffee!'
- 3 To emphasize something which is being negated, sandwich it between the negative verb and the connegative, and say the emphasized word more loudly, e.g. En minä kahvia tilannut 'lt wasn't / who ordered coffee' or En minä kahvia tilannut 'lt wasn't coffee I ordered'.
- 4 The little word **se**, undeclined, is also used to emphasize the subject: **Minä se siellä soitin** 'It was I who was playing there'.

# Unit Seven

# Eiks ookki ihana päästä kotiin joulunviettoon!

Isn't it great to get home for Christmas!



## In this unit you will learn:

- about Finnish coins and banknotes, and who and what is on them
- about number words like 'tenner', 'trio', 'triplets', and 'triangle'
- taxi talk
- more about food, particularly Christmas specialities
- how to form and use the perfect tense and its associated participles



# 🤼 Dialogue 1



#### **Setelit ja kolikot** Banknotes and coins (CD1; 37)

Millaisia Suomen eurokolikot on? PAUL

MATTI No niissä on tietty toinen puoli sama ku muittenkin maitten eurokolikoissa eli niissä on rahan arvo ja Euroopan kartta. Toinen puoli taas on kansallinen puoli, jonne Suomi on saanu valita omat kuvat.

Ai jaa. No mitkä kuvat Suomi on valinnu? PAUI

MATTI Kaikissa senttikolikoissa on Suomen vaakunaleijona, yhen euron kolikossa on laulujoutsenia järvimaiseman yllä ja kahen euron kolikossa on hillan kukka.

PAUL Eikö laulujoutsen olekin Suomen kansallislintu?

MATTI On. Sitten vuosittain julkastaan kahen euron erikoisrahoja ja eriarvoisia juhlarahoja, joissa on suurten suomalaisten kuvia\* tai sitte kuva, joka liittyy johonkin tärkeään historialliseen tapahtumaan. Juhlarahoissa on ollu esimerkiksi Minna Canthin, Elias Lönnrotin ja Tove Janssonin kuva.

PAUL Entä mitä kuvia euroseteleissä sitten on?

MATTI No niissä ei oo kansallisia kuvia tai tekstejä vaan eurooppalaisille yhteisiä tyylisuuntia. Esimerkiks vitosessa on teemana antiikki ja kympin setelin aihe on romaaninen tyyli. Kahenkympin seteli on goottilainen. Viiskymppisen tyyli on renessanssi ja satasen barokki.

PAUL What are Finnish euro coins like?

MATTI Well, one side is the well-known one, the same as on the coins of other European countries, namely the value of the coin and a map of Europe. And the other side is the nation-specific side, where Finland got to pick its own images.

PAUL I see. So, what pictures did Finland pick?

MATTI On all one-cent coins is the Finnish coat of arms, with the lion; on the one-euro coin are whooper swans flying over a lake-studded landscape; and on the two-euro coin are cloudberry flowers.

PAUL The whooper swan is the Finnish national bird, isn't it?

Yes, it is. And then every year they issue commemorative two-euro coins and commemorative coins of various other values, with pictures of great Finns on them, or with a picture linked to some important historical event. For example, Minna Canth, Elias Lönnrot and Tove Jansson have had their pictures on commemorative coins.

PAUL And what pictures are on euro bird, then?

Well, they don't have any nation-specific graphics or texts.
Instead they have art styles typical of Europe as a whole.
On the five-euro note, for example, the theme is antiquity, and the tenner has Romanesque style as its subject.
The twenty-euro note is gothic, the fifty is renaissance, and the hundred is baroque.

<sup>\*</sup> suur|ten suomalais|ten kuv|i|a 'pictures of great Finns'. You'll learn about genitive plural forms such as these in Unit 9.



# Vocabulary

aiheQ subject (matter), topic
antiikki (Greco-Roman) antiquity

arvo value

**barokki** baroque

eri+arvo|inen of various values

eri|kois+raha special issue of currency

esi+merkki example esi+merki|ks > esi|merki|ksi for example

jo|hon|kin to some (X or other), (sILL)

of jo|kin (Unit 11)

jo|kin some (X or other)

jo|nne (in)to which

joutsen e swan

juhla celebration, festivities

juhla+raha commemorative coin/banknote

järvi e lake

kahe|n>kahde|n sG of kaksi two kahe|n+kymppi|nen> twenty-euro note

kahde|n+kymppi|nen

kansa|Ilis+ national (kansa|Ilinen)

**kuva** picture

**kymppi** 10-er (euro note)

laula- sing laul|u song

laul|u+joutsen whooper swan

**leijona** lion

liitty- be linked/connected
ma|ise|ma landscape (maa land)

oma(one's) ownrahamoneyrenessanssirenaissance

romaaninen Romanesque

sata|nen 100-er (euro note)

sentti cent

seteli banknote

suu|nta direction, trend

teema theme teksti text

tolinen (the) one/other (of two)

**tyyli** style

tyyli|suunta school, style, genre

vaakunacoat of armsviiskymppinen50-er (euro note)vitonen5-er (euro note)vuosi|ttainevery yearyhe|n > yhde|nsG of yksi onevhtelinencommon. shared

X|n yllä over X

## Language points

### **Nouns from numbers**

You have already met the simple numerals in Unit 2. Here you make the acquaintance of some of the more common nouns derived from these.

In addition to words like **viisi|kymppi|nen** '50-euro note', **sata|nen** '100-euro note', which are derived simply by the addition of **=nen**, there are also derivatives built, somewhat capriciously, with **=Onen** and **=ikkO**. These refer to anything with a number written on it, a door, for example, or a bus; or even to the figure of the number itself:

1 ykkönen 7 seiska 2 kakkonen 8 kasi 3 kolmonen 9 ysi 4 nelonen 10 kymppi 5 vi(i)tonen 100 satanen

6 ku(u)tonen



So **kasi** can mean 'figure 8' or 'the number 8 bus' or 'room number 8', depending on the context. (Another way to refer to the bus is **bussi numero kahdeksan**.)

Another flock of useful vocabulary is made up from numerals plus =iO:

yksiö bedsit kaksio two-room flat kolmio triangle

kolmiotriangleneliösquarekuutiocube

Notice also **kulmio**, from **kulma** 'corner', which forms words like **viisi|kulmio** 'pentagon', **kuusi|kulmio** 'hexagon', and **kahdeksan|kulmio** 'octagon'.

Kaksose|t are 'twins'; kolmose|t are 'triplets'.

There are also **=isen** forms of numerals, which give approximate quantities: **nelisen kilo**|**a** 'about 4 kilos', **viitisensataa markka**|**a** 'about 500 marks'.

### Unknown and helpless: ways of saying 'without'

You have already seen that one way to say 'without sugar' is to use **ilman** 'without' with the noun for 'sugar' in the partitive: **ilman soke- ri**|**a**. Another way uses the suffix =**ttOmA**. This suffix is called the 'privative' because it deprives us of whatever the stem we add it to is offering. Added to nouns, it means something like 'X-less' or 'X-free'.

raha money raha|ton moneyless

uni e sleep, dreamune|ton sleepless

hammas tooth (stem: hampaX)

hampaa|ton toothless

You add it to the third infinitive of verbs. The result is an adjective meaning something like 'which hasn't been X'd', or 'which doesn't X', for example:

odotta|ma|ton unexpected (odotta- 'waits; expects')

liikku|ma|ton unmoving (liikku- 'moves')

tunte|ma|ton unknown (tunte- 'knows')
sopi|ma|ton inappropriate, unsuitable (sopi- 'fits in well,
is appropriate')

As you can see, the mA at the end of the privative suffix comes out as n in the citation form; this n duly acts as a tight lid, compressing the tt to its left to t.

But the **tt** of =**ttOmA** hasn't gone away. You can tell that it is still there because even though it looks and sounds like a single **t**, it still compresses consonants to *its* left:

apu	help
avuton	helpless
paita	shirt
pai <i>d</i> aton	shirtless
ja <i>lk</i> a	foot, leg
ja <i>l</i> aton	without feet, without legs
lanka	wire
la <i>ng</i> aton	wireless

The **tt** is there to see and hear plainly in most case forms, where the **m** is followed by a vowel and so there is no compression:

uusi versio Tunte ma ttoma sta	a new version of The
sotilaa∣sta	Unknown Soldier (sELA)
une ttom i a ö i tä	sleepless nights (pP)

The **mA** changes to **n** also in the partitive singular, e.g. **veroton**|**ta öljy**|**ä** 'tax-free oil'; compare **iME**-stems (Unit 5).

For revision and reference, here are the full paradigms of **langaton** 'wireless' and **puhelin** 'telephone' (once again, pG forms are asterisked here: they await Unit 9):

Stem	lanka=ttoMA	puhel=iME
sN	langaton	puhelin
sG	langattoma∣n	puhelime n
sP	langaton∣ta	puhelin ta
sELA	langattoma sta	puhelime sta
sINE	langattoma ssa	puhelime ssa

Stem	lanka=ttoMA	puhel=iME
sILL sABL sADE sALL sESS sTRA	langattoma an langattoma Ita langattoma Ila langattoma Ile langattoma na langattoma ksi	puhelime en puhelime Ita puhelime Ila puhelime Ile puhelime na puhelime ksi
pN pG pP pELA pINE pILL pABL pADE pALL pESS pTRA	langattoma t langattom i en* langattom i a langattom i sta langattom i ssa langattom i in langattom i ta langattom i lla langattom i lle langattom i na langattom i ksi	puhelime t puhelim i en*, puhelin t en* puhelim i a puhelim i sta puhelim i ssa puhelim i in puhelim i lta puhelim i lla puhelim i lle puhelim i na puhelim i na



### Exercise

Here are some nouns. What are their privatives?

1	loppu 'end'	6	maku 'taste'
2	kenkä 'shoe'	7	muoto 'shape, form'
3	työ 'work'	8	lumi 'snow'
4	polku 'path'	9	aurinko 'sun'
5	hammas 'tooth'	10	virhe∩ 'mistake'



## Exercise 2

Guess the English equivalents of these privatives built from verbs:

1	olematon	4	leipomaton
2	kirjoittamaton	5	syömätön
3	pesemätön	6	asumaton

## Language point



### Past passive participle

Me ei men|ty sinne. We didn't go there.

Kirjettä ei anne|ttu takaisin. They didn't give the letter back/ the letter wasn't returned.

As you can see from these examples, the past tense of the negative indefinite is formed with the negative form **ei** plus a verb form ending in -(t)tU. This is one of the most common uses of this form, but there are several others, as well. You will learn how to build this form (which is called the past passive participle) and more about using it in this section.

The past passive participle is really just an adjective made up of verbs; it corresponds to the English 'written' and 'falsified' of 'written instructions' and 'falsified ID', but it is much more widely used in Finnish. For transitive verbs, a mechanical translation would go something like 'which has been X'd'; for intransitive verbs, something like 'which has X'd'. You will learn one very common use of this participle later in this unit; but first let's see how to form it.

You form the past passive participle as follows:

Add -tU to verbs of classes III and IV (notice that class III verbs lose their final e):

```
opiskel|tu (stem: opiskele- 'study')
pes|ty (stem: pese- 'wash')
pur|tu (stem: pure- 'bite')
men|ty (stem: mene- 'go')
saa|tu (stem: saa- 'get')
syö|ty (stem: syö- 'eat')
```

Add -ttU to verbs of class I. Stem-final A > e:

```
sano|ttu (stem: sano- 'say')
etsi|tty (stem: etsi- 'search for')
lue|ttu (stem: luke- 'read')
```

pure|ttu (stem: purka- 'unpack, decompress')

sorre|ttu (stem: sorta- 'oppress')
kanne|ttu (stem: kanta- 'carry')

kielle|tty (stem: kieltä- 'forbid, prohibit')

Class II verbs also take -ttU, and they lose their final chunks X, TSE, (E)XE, as well:

huoma|ttu (stem: huomaX- 'notice')
tarvi|ttu (stem: tarviTSE- 'need')
vaie|ttu (stem: vaikEXE- 'fall/be silent)

The past passive participles of the verbs of knowing **tietä**- and **tunte**-deserve special attention. From **tietä**- is formed, alongside the regular **tiede**|**tty**, the irregular past passive participle **tietty**; this latter is common in the meaning not only of '(well) known' but also of 'certain (specific)' as in **tiety**|**i**|**ssä tapauks**|**i**|**ssa** 'in certain cases'. From **tunte**-, the regularly formed **tunne**|**ttu** means 'well-known, famous'; 'known' in the sense of 'familiar' is **tuttu**.

Note on compression: As with the privative suffix, consonants which have been compressed by the past passive participle suffix remain compressed, regardless of any compression which that suffix itself may undergo. Thus the genitive singular of **käyte**|tty '(which has been) used' (stem: käyttä-) is käyte|ty|n, and the genitive singular of unohde|ttu '(which has been) forgotten' (stem: unohta-) is unohde|tu|n.

For your studying pleasure and for later reference, here's a table of the full paradigms of the past passive participles of **käyte|tty** 'used' (from **käyttä**- 'uses') and **saa|tu** 'received, acquired'. Look closely and you'll see that there's nothing so terribly new here; these are just adjectives, and as such they inflect like **reilu** 'upright, straightforward' or **juttu** 'story, affair, thing'. The paradigm for the latter is placed alongside for the sake of comparison.

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N	käytetty	käytety∣t	saatu	saadu t	juttu	jutu t
G	käytety∣n	käytetty j en*	saadu∣n	saatu∣j∣en*	jutu∣n	juttu j en*
Р	käytetty∣ä	käytetty∣j∣ä	saatu∣a	saatu∣j∣a	juttu∣a	juttu∣j∣a
ELA	käytety∣stä	käytety∣i∣stä	saadu∣sta	saadu∣i∣sta	jutu∣sta	jutu∣i∣sta
INE	käytety ssä	käytety i ssä	saadu ssa	saadu∣i∣ssa	jutu∣ssa	jutu i ssa
ILL	käytetty∣yn	käytetty∣i∣hin	saatu∣un	saatu∣i∣hin	juttu∣un	juttu i hin
ABL	käytety∣ltä	käytety∣i∣ltä	saadu∣lta	saadu∣i∣Ita	jutu∣lta	jutu∣i∣Ita
ADE	käytety∣llä	käytety∣i∣llä	saadu lla	saadu∣i∣lla	jutu∣lla	jutu i lla
ALL	käytety∣lle	käytety∣i∣lle	saadu lle	saadu∣i∣lle	jutu∣lle	jutu i lle
ESS	käytetty∣nä	käytetty∣i∣nä	saatu∣na	saatu∣i∣na	juttu∣na	juttu∣i∣na
TRA	käytety∣ksi	käytety∣i∣ksi	saadu∣ksi	saadu∣i∣ksi	jutu∣ksi	jutu i ksi

The past passive participle is used as an adjective most often in written Finnish. Have a look at these rather formal examples of the past passive participle in action:

kive|ty|llä kadu|lla on a paved street (stem:

kive|X- 'paves', cf. kivi e

kielle|ty|n kirja|n nimi viime keväälnä avaltulssa pankilssa

edellämainittu|i|hin ryhm|i|in

niin sanottulilen normaallilen ihmis|t|en maailma|ssa

'stone') the title of the banned book in the bank (which was) opened last spring into the above-mentioned groups (ryhmä 'group') in the world of so-called

normal people

## Exercise 3

In this exercise you revise the privative and practise your past passive participles by converting one to the other and vice versa. (The verb stems are all in the back of the book in case you don't know them yet.)

Model: **pesemätön** 'unwashed' → **pesty** 'washed'

1 rakentamaton 6 kuorittu 2 käytetty 7 purkamaton 3 maalattu 8 sanottu

4 syömätön 9 pakkaamaton

5 keittämätön 10 sorrettu

## Language point

### The perfect tense

The Finnish perfect tense means very much the same as the English perfect ('I have written to him'; 'she has come back'). In speech, its main function is to refer to things that happened in the past but which still have relevance today.

But notice that Finnish often uses its perfect tense where English does just as well with the simple past. For example, in the dialogue about banknotes and coins earlier in this unit we have No mitkä





**kuvat Suomi on valinnu?** translated as 'So, what pictures did Finland pick?' Finnish uses the perfect tense here because it is the fact that the images selected by Finland are still on the coins that is important, not merely the fact that Finland made the selection at some point in the past.

The way the perfect is formed differs from the English perfect in one important way. Unlike in English, where you use forms of the verb 'has' ('He has written'), in Finnish you use forms of the verb 'is', ole. Have a look at these examples:

Olen kirjoitta|nut sille. I have written to him. ('I am . . .')

Se on tul|lut takaisin. She has come back. ('She is . . .')

The other part of the perfect is built from the main verb (here: 'write', 'come') in a form you have already learned. This is the past active participle, built with the suffix -NUT (singular), -nee|t (plural) which you met in Unit 6. The singular versus plural distinction is vital in second person forms; notice the difference between

**Te olette tul***lut* **takaisin.** You (singular, formal) have come back.

and

**Te olette tul/eet takaisin.** You (plural, possibly formal) have come back.

Here are some more examples of the perfect in action:

Mä oon aina unelmoi|nut l've always dreamt of a life in the elämästä teatterissa.

On lakan|nut satamasta.

l've always dreamt of a life in the theatre. (unelmoi- 'dreams')

It has stopped raining.

(lakkaX- 'desists', sata- 'rains')

Hän on autta|nut minua (S)he has helped me in many ways.

Olen hake nut kahteen eri l've applied to two different universities.

Oletteko te asu|neet Have you (plural/formal) lived in Helsingissä kauan? Helsinki long?

Note that the past active participle is not the equivalent of English passive participles such as 'written'. For example, you do not say

'written instructions' and the like with **kirjoitta**|nut; contrast the past passive participle, **kirjoite**|ttu. (In a later unit we'll revise all the participles together.)

There is one further detail. Since in colloquial Finnish the first person plural is normally expressed by means of the indefinite, you must know how to form and recognize the perfect indefinite. Its make-up is (1) the indefinite of the verb **ole**- 'is' (**ollaan**), plus (2) the past passive participle.

#### Examples:

Me ollaan jo puhu|ttu tästä. We've already talked about this. Me ollaan juo|tu kaikki oluet. We've drunk all the beers.

Here is the full perfect tense paradigm of osta- 'buys':

	Singular	Plural
1 2	(mä) oon ostanut (sä) oot ostanut*	me ollaan ostettu <sup>†</sup> (te) olette ostaneet*
3	se on ostanut	ne on ostanut <sup>‡</sup>
J	se on ostanut	ne on ostanut

<sup>\*</sup> To address one person with politeness (and more formality), you say te olette ostanut.

The *negative perfect* is formed with the appropriate negative forms of the verb **ole**-:

	Singular	Plural
1	mä en ole ostanut	me ei olla ostettu*
2	sä et ole ostanut	te ette ole ostaneet
3	se ei ole ostanut	ne ei ole ostanut <sup>†</sup>

<sup>\*</sup> In more formal Finnish, me emme ole ostaneet.

Here are some examples of the perfect tense in action. Note that omission (or assimilation, written here with superscript letters) of the final **t** is common.

<sup>†</sup> In more formal Finnish, me olemme ostaneet.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> In more formal Finnish, he ovat ostaneet.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> In more formal Finnish, **he eivät ole ostaneet**.

Se on kerto|nu<sup>k</sup> kaiken poliisille.

Ootsä koskaan luke|nut tätä romaania?

Mä oon soitta|nut taksin. Me ollaan soite|ttu taksi.

Me ei olla ol|tu yhteydessä.

En ole<sup>n</sup> näh∣ny<sup>(m)</sup> mitään.

Ettekö ole<sup>s</sup> saa|neet lippuja?

Ootsä aina asu|nut täällä? Mä en ole<sup>v</sup> vielä pääs|syt ulos koko päivänä.

Se ei ole<sup>k</sup> koskaan teh|nyt muuta.

Tämä ei ole mitenkään helpotta|nut asiaa.

(S)he has told the police everything.

Have you ever read this novel?

I've called (for) a taxi.

We've called (for) a taxi.

We haven't been in touch.

I haven't seen anything.

Haven't you (plural) got the tickets?

Have you always lived here? I haven't (yet) been able to get out all day.

(S)he's never done anything else.

This hasn't made the matter any easier.



## Exercise 4

Change the verb forms in these snippets into the perfect tense, then translate into English.

- 1 mä tulen
- 2 se hakee
- 3 ne saapuu
- 4 ootsä Hesassa?
- 5 mä avaan ikkunan

- 6 me avataan ikkuna
- 7 me tullaan
- 8 hän tarvitsee apua
- 9 Mistä se saa rahan?
- 10 pimenee



## Exercise 5

Change affirmative to negative and vice versa. Remember to change accusative/partitive, something/nothing (jotain/mitään), yet/already (vielä/jo) as appropriate.

Model: Ootsä lähettänyt kirjeen? → Etsä ole¹ lähettänyt kirjettä?

- 1 Se on lähtenyt.
- 2 Mä olen huomannut sen.
- 3 Ne ei ole<sup>s</sup> sanonut mitään.

- 4 En mä ole<sup>v</sup> vielä nähnyt sitä.
- 5 Me ollaan jo puhuttu siitä.
- 6 Mä en ole tavannut häntä.

## Dialogue 2



#### Taksissa A ride in a taxi (CD1; 38)



To revise some of the grammar and vocabulary you've learned so far, ride with Juuso as he takes a taxi from Helsinki station to Haukilahti ('Pike Bay'). Notice the use of the genitive (taksi|n) in Taksin|kuljetta|ja 'taxi driver'.

JUUSO [taksinkuljettajalle] Oletteko vapaa?

TAKSINKULJETTAJA Kyllä. Mihin mennään?

JUUSO Haukilahteen, kiitos.

TAKSINKULJETTAJA Mihin päin Haukilahtea?

JUUSO Kuhatie neljään.

TAKSINKULJETTAJA Osaatteko neuvoa Länsiväylältä? Olen ajanut niin

vähän Espoossa, etten ole aivan varma siitä

missä päin Haukilahtea Kuhatie on.

JUUSO Kyllä osaan. Paljonko se tulee maksamaan?

TAKSINKULJETTAJA Siinä\* 11-12 euroa.

JUUSO [to the taxi driver] Are you (formal) free?

TAXI DRIVER Yes. Where shall we go?

JUUSO To Haukilahti, thanks.

TAXI DRIVER (To) where (abouts) in Haukilahti?

JUUSO To 4 Kuhatie ('Pike-perch road').

TAXI DRIVER Can you advise me from Länsiväylä (on)? I've

driven so little in Espoo that I'm not quite sure

(of it) where (abouts) Kuhatie is.

JUUSO Sure, I can (advise you). How much will it come

to (cost)?

TAXI DRIVER About 11 or 12 euros.

<sup>\*</sup> siinä 'about' (lit. 'in it').



## Vocabulary

aivan	quite	neuvo-	advise
aja-	drive	päin	towards, about
asema	station	rauta+tie	railway
ett en = että e n	that	taksi	taxi
kuljetta-	drive	vähän	(a) little



## Exercise 6

Make up your own taxi dialogue. Tell the driver where you want to go, say where that is, ask how much it'll cost and how long it'll take. Here's some vocabulary to get you started:

taksi+mittari taxi meter Paljonko maksu on kilometri|ltä? Kauanko sinne kestää ajaa? Voi(si)tteko viedä minut tähän osoitteelseen?

taksi+asema taxi rank
How much is the charge per
kilometre? (tunni|Ita 'per hour')
How long does it take to drive
there?
Could you take me to this

Don't forget to use imperatives to get the driver to stop (**pysähty**-), keep going (**jatka**-), slow down (**hidasta**-), or wait (**odotta**-). When you get there, say:

Tä|ssä on hyvä, kiitos. Pitä|kää lopu|t!

Here is fine, thanks. Keep the change!

address?



## 🔀 Dialogue 3



### Jouluherkkuja Yuletide yummies (CD1; 39)

Listen to Tanja and Raija as they anticipate returning to Finland for Christmas.

#### [lentokoneessa]

RAIJA Eiks ookki ihana päästä kotiin joulunviettoon!

TANJA Nii. Tässä ei ookkaan vielä päässy jouluntunnelmaan.

RAIJA Mä meen jouluks mummolaan. Entäs sä?

TANJA Mä oon vaan kotona ja meinaan syödä paljon kinkkua.

RAIJA Mun tekee tosi paljon mieli äidin imellettyä perunalaatikkoa.

TANJA Teettekste ite lanttu- ja porkkanalaatikonki?

RAIJA Joo. Me tehdään kotona kaikki jouluruuat, sillit, silakat, lipeäkala, rosolli ja jopa joulusinappi.

TANJA Tykkäätsä todella lipeäkalasta?

RAIJA No en. mut se kuuluu perinteeseen.

TANJA Meillä leivotaan vaan piparit ja joulutortut ite.

[on an aeroplane about to take off for Finland]

RAIJA Isn't it great to be able to get home for Christmas!

TANJA Yes. I haven't been able to get into a Christmasy mood here.

RAIJA I'm going to my grandmother's for Christmas. What about you?

TANJA I'll just be staying at home and I intend to eat a lot of ham.

RAIJA I really could go for some of my mother's malted-potato casserole.

TANJA Do you make your own swede casserole and carrot casserole as well?

RAIJA Sure. We make all the Christmas dishes at (our) house: herring, Baltic herring, slippery cod, rosolli, and even Christmas mustard.

TANJA Do you actually like slippery cod?

RAIJA Well no, but it's part of the tradition.

TANJA At our house the only things we bake ourselves are gingersnaps and Christmas cake.

## Vocabulary



herkku gourmet item
ihana wonderful, lovely
imelle|tty malted (imeltä-)

ite > itse self

joulu Christmas joulu|ks > joulu|ksi for Christmas

joulu+sinappi Christmas mustard

kinkku ham

**kuulu**- belong

laatikkobox; casserolelanttuswede, rutabaga

lent|o+koneQ aeroplane

lentä- fly

lipeä+kala slippery cod, cod soaked in lye

meen > mene|n

meinaX- intend, mean to

nii > niin

ookkaan > ole|kaan

ookki > ole|kin

oon > ole|n

perinteQ tradition (sN perinne)

pipari|t gingersnaps

porkkana carrot

rosolli salad of salted herring, beetroot,

carrots, etc.

ruua|t ! pN of ruoka food, dish

silli herring

teette|k|s|te > teette|kö te

tode|lla really, truly

torttu cake

tunne|lma feeling, mood (tunte-)

vaan > vain only, just

vietto celebration (viettä- spend, celebrate)

## 万 Language point

# Colloquial pronunciation: three more fine points

1 In colloquial contexts like that of the dialogue above, most Finns usually pronounce the common verbs **ole-**, **tule-**, **mene-**, and

pane- 'puts' in a shortened way, namely as oo-, tuu-, mee-, and paa-. Here are examples of the forms in question:

more ole|n ei ole|Q tule|t mene|t pane|te mene|s formal: sinne!

more oo|n ei o(o)|Q tuu|t mee|t paa|tte mee|s colloquial: sinne!

The -Q suffix of the imperative and connegative (as in ei o) means that following consonants will sound long; this lengthening is reflected in spellings such as ookkaan (formal olekaan).

- 2 Notice also that the final n (but not the n of the genitive, or of the first person singular of verbs) is often merely nasality, or even dropped: to indicate this, we will write ku instead of kun, ookki instead of ookkin (formal: olekin).
- 3 Many Finns pronounce **tt** (or even **t**) instead of **ts** in certain common words such as **itse** 'self' at least when they are in colloquial mode. Other examples are **kattoo** (> **katso**|**a** 'looks at, watches') and **seittemän** (> **seitsemän**).

## Reading



### A recipe for malted potato casserole

There's a translation of this recipe at the back of the book; but try not to peek until you've given it an honest attempt with the help of the vocabulary given here.

#### Imelletty perunalaatikko

2 kg perunoita1 dl vehnäjauhoja2 tl suolaa

4-5 dl maitoa muskottipähkinää

Keitä perunat kypsiksi ja kuori ne heti höyryttämisen jälkeen. Survo perunat ja ripota jauhot joukkoon. Anna seoksen imeltyä muutama tunti tai vaikka seuraavaan päivään. Sekoita pari kertaa. Lisää maito, voi ja mausteet. Kaada seos voideltuun uunivuokaan ja kypsennä 150 asteessa noin kaksi tuntia.



## Vocabulary

anna XIn YITAQ let X Y asteQ degree dl. desi+litra decilitre

heti at once, right away hövrv|ttä|minen allowing to steam

imelle|tty malted

malt, become malted imel|ty-

jauho|t flour, meal

ioukko mass, bulk, heap

kaatapour (tr) keittäcook, boil (tr)

kg, kilo+gramma kg kuoripeel

kypsentäripen, roast (kypsä)

kvps|i|ksi until they are ready kypsä (pTRA)

lisä|Xadd (lisä more) maku taste, flavour

mau|staseason, add flavour

mau|st|eQ spice muskotti+pähkinä nutmeg muutama a few

pari kertala ripottasprinkle rkl, ruoka+lusikka tablespoon mix, stir, shuffle sekolitta-

seos kse mixture

seuraa va next, following (seura=X- follow)

a few times

suola salt

survocrush, mash, grind

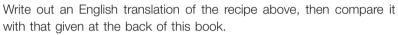
tai or

tl, tee+lusikka teaspoon tuntihouruuniovenvaikkaor evenvehnäwheatvoibutter

voi+sula|a melted butter

voi|del|tubutteredvuokamould, dish

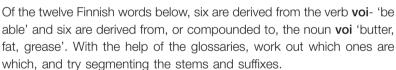
## Exercise 7



## Exercise 8

Make the casserole!











# Unit Eight

## Huonosta vielä huonommaksi

From bad to worse



### In this unit you will learn:

- how to say how you're feeling; vocabulary of medicine and illness
- how to form and use the comparative and superlative
- · about entering and being in states (the translative and essive cases)
- a little about Finnish sport
- about the stem types talous 'economy' and tyylikäs 'stylish'



## 👫 Dialogue 1



### Sairaana Feeling ill (CD1; 40)

Matthew hasn't been feeling very well for the last few days, so he asks Mikko for advice.

#### [Tapaavat yliopistolla]

MATTHEW Kuule Mikko, voisit sä neuvoa mua yhdessä asiassa.

Mulla on ollu jo kaks päivää yskä ja kurkkuki on aika

kipee. Pitäskö mun mennä lääkäriin?

Mee nyt ihmeessä! Se voi tulla pahemmaks jos viivyttelet. MIKKO

MATTHEW Minne mun pitäis mennä?

MIKKO Lähimpään terveyskeskukseen. Niihin ei tartte varata aikaa.

Meet vaan päivystykseen oottamaan. Joskus voi kyllä joutua

odottamaan pariki tuntia. Lähin terveyskeskus on ihan tässä yliopiston vieressä Yliopistokadulla.

MATTHEW Kiitti sulle mä lähenki tästä heti sinne.

[at university]

MATTHEW Listen Mikko, could you give me some advice on something

(lit. 'on a matter'). I've had a cough for two days now and (my) throat is pretty sore too. Should I go to (see) the doctor?

MIKKO Go now, for goodness' sake! It can get worse if you hang

about.

MATTHEW Where should I go?

MIKKO To the nearest health centre. You don't have to make an

appointment (there). You just go and wait your turn to see the GP on duty. Of course sometimes you may end up waiting as much as a few hours. The nearest health centre is right here next to the university in Yliopistokatu.

MATTHEW Thanks! I'm going to go there right now.

## Vocabulary



VOCCIDU	и у		
asia	matter, affair	pahempi a	worse
ihan tässä	just here	pitäskö >	
ihmeQ	wonder	pitäisikö	
joutu-	end up, wind up	päivystys kse	day rota
	(used with	si∣nne	(to) there
	third infinitive)	tapaX-	meet
keskus kse	centre	tartte > tarvitse	
kipee > kipeä	sore; ill	tarviTSE-	be necessary;
kurkku	throat		need
lähen > lähde n		terveys te	health
lähimpään	illative of <b>lähin</b>	varaX-	book, reserve,
lähin	nearest		order
minne	(to) where?	X n viere ssä	next to X
oottamaan >		viivyttele-	delay, hang about
odotta ma an		yhde∣ssä	together; at the
pahemmaks	sTRA of <b>pahempi</b>		same time
		yskä	cough



## Language points

### Forming the comparative

This is the English -er of 'bigger', 'smaller', or the more of 'more beautiful'. In Finnish you add the suffix of the comparative to the adjective stem; the suffix is -mpA.

There are just two details to watch out for. One is that in the nominative singular this suffix comes out as **mpi**. Thus we have:

iso|mpibigger (iso)piene|mpismaller (pieni e)korkea|mpihigher (korkea)matala|mpilower (matala)kirkkaa|mpibrighter (kirkkaX)tuoree|mpifresher (tuoreQ)

suomalaise|mpi more Finnish (suomalainen; stem:

suomalaise-)

The other detail is this: bisyllabic stems which end in single **A** change this vowel to **e**. Thus we have:

kove|mpi harder (kova 'hard') syve|mpi deeper (syvä 'deep')

vanhe|mpi older (vanha 'old'; note se|n vanhe|mma|t

'his/her parents')

As in English, a few of the most frequent forms are irregular:

good **hyvä** better **parempi** 

best paras (stem: parhaX, so sG is parhaa|n)

long **pitkä** 

longer pitempi (or: pidempi)

Note: The Finnish words **kumpi** 'which?' (of two), **kumpikin** 'both', and **jompikumpi** 'either (of two)' all contain the comparative suffix (**jompikumpi** has it twice: its partitive singular is **jompaakumpaa**):

#### Kumpi on kalliimpaa, viini vai viina?

Which is more expensive, wine or spirits?

#### Kummatkin vanhemmat jäävät kotiin.

Both parents are staying at home.

#### Mitä saisi olla, kahvia vai teetä?

What'll you have, coffee or tea?

#### Jompaakumpaa, kumpaa vaan.

One or the other, it doesn't matter.

Even more common than **jompikumpi** is **kumpi tahansa** or **kumpi vaan** 'whichever (of the two)', as in the last example.

For your studying pleasure, here are the full paradigms of three adjectives, **paksu** 'thick, fat', **ohut** (stem: **ohuTe**) 'thin', and **puhdas** (stem: **puhtaX**) 'clean', in their comparative form:

	paksu	ohuTe	puhtax
sN	paksu mpi	ohue mpi	puhtaa mpi
sG	paksu mma n	ohue mma n	puhtaa mma n
sP	paksu mpa a	ohue mpa a	puhtaa mpa a
sELA	paksu mma sta	ohue mma sta	puhtaa mma sta
sINE	paksu mma ssa	ohue mma ssa	puhtaa mma ssa
sILL	paksu mpa an	ohue mpa an	puhtaa mpa an
sABL	paksu mma lta	ohue mma Ita	puhtaa mma lta
sADE	paksu mma lla	ohue mma lla	puhtaa mma lla
sALL	paksu mma lle	ohue mma lle	puhtaa mma lle
sESS	paksu mpa na	ohue mpa na	puhtaa mpa na
sTRA	paksu mma ksi	ohue mma ksi	puhtaa mma ksi
pΝ	paksu mma t	ohue mma t	puhtaa mma t
pG	paksu mp i en*	ohue mp i en*	puhtaa mp i en*
pР	paksu mp i a	ohue mp i a	puhtaa mp i a
pELA	paksu mm i sta	ohue mm i sta	puhtaa mm i sta
pINE	paksu mm i ssa	ohue mm i ssa	puhtaa mm i ssa
pILL	paksu mp i in	ohue mp i in	puhtaa mp i in
pABL	paksu mm i lta	ohue mm i Ita	puhtaa mm i lta
pADE	paksu mm i lla	ohue mm i lla	puhtaa mm i lla
pALL	paksu mm i lle	ohue mm i lle	puhtaa mm i lle
pESS	paksu mp i na	ohue mp i na	puhtaa mp i na
pTRA	paksu mm i ksi	ohue mm i ksi	puhtaa mm i ksi
	<del>,</del>	<del>.</del>	

Here are a few more examples of comparative forms in action:

nuore|mma|n sukupolve|n the situation of the younger

tilanne generation
varme|mma|lla pohja|lla on a firmer basis

piene|mp|i|en ma|i|den the economies of smaller

taloude|t countries

### Using the comparative

If you want to say that A is bigger than B, you have a choice. Typical of more formal Finnish is to put B into the partitive:

**Helsinki on Turkua suurempi.** Helsinki is bigger than Turku. (Notice the constituent order of this construction.)

The more colloquial option is to use ku(i)n:

Helsinki on isompi kun Turku.

The partitive is also the case used to indicate the measure by which something is more X than something else, for example: **kuut**|**ta tunti**|**a pidempi** 'six hours longer'.

To say 'more and more X', 'Xer and Xer', you use yhä: yhä useammat suomalaiset 'more and more Finns', yhä sitkeämpi vastarinta 'tougher and tougher resistance'.

Note: To compare equals, you use **yhtä** (**niin** with adverbs) A **kuin** B (with no comparative suffix, as in English):

Yhtä kevyt kuin höyhen. As light as a feather.

Toinen on yhtä hyvä kuin One is as good as the other.

toinenkin.

Niin usein kuin mahdollista. As often as possible.



## Exercise 1

Put these adjectives into the comparative.

Malli: iso → isompi

- 1 nopea 'fast'
- 2 selvä 'clear'
- 3 mukava 'comfortable, pleasant'
- 4 kiltti 'nice, kind, well-behaved'

- 5 voimakkaX 'powerful'
- 6 pieni e 'little'
- 7 paksu
- 8 ohut (stem: ohuTe-) 'thin'
- 9 punainen 'red'
- 10 terveQ 'healthy'

## Exercise 2

Practise using the comparative by writing Finnish comparative sentences with the following sets of nouns and adjectives.



- 1 Sä, mä, nuori
- 2 pihvi, keitto, kallis
- 3 Espanja, Portugali, iso
- 4 lääkäri, lapsi, vanha
- 5 paperi, kulta, kevyt ('light'; stem: kevyTE-)

## Exercise 3

Practise looking for things that are bigger, better, smaller, and more comfortable. Remember to use the partial (partitive) direct-object form.

Malli: parempi sanakirja → Mä etsin parempaa sanakirjaa. I'm looking for a better dictionary.

- 1 kuiva ('dry'), viini ('wine')
- 2 halpa ('cheap'), vihko ('notebook')
- 3 pieni, laukku
- 4 yksinkertainen ('simple'), vastaus ('answer'; stem: vastaukse)
- 5 makea ('sweet'), mehu ('juice')

## Exercise 4

Now say that you've found what you were looking for in the previous exercise. You'll need to use the complete object form (accusative = genitive).

Malli: Mä oon löytänyt paremman sanakirjan.

I've found a better dictionary.







## Language point

#### Se tulee pahemmaksi ('it gets worse'): the translative

The translative suffix is -ksi, pronounced colloquially without the i, of course. This case indicates, among other things, entrance into a state or mode of being. It is therefore often used with verbs such as muutta-'changes (tr)', muuttu- 'changes (itr)', tule- 'becomes', Examples:

Asia muuttuu vaikea ks.

Rikkaat tulee rikkaammlilks.

Se muutti saunan

olohuonee ks.

Se tulee yhä vaikea|mma|ksi.

On tullut tavalksi.

Se tuli tunnetulksi.

Mä kirjoitan sen puhtaa ksi.

The matter becomes difficult.

The rich aet richer.

(S)he turned the sauna into

a living room.

It gets more and more difficult.

It has become a custom.

It became known.

I'll make a clean copy of it.

The translative is also often used to express the capacity in which something is used; the most common example is esimerkilksi 'for example' (but colloquial for this is esmes). Further examples are:

Mä sain sen lahja ks.

Jälkiruualksi oli mansikoita. There were strawberries for dessert. I got it as a gift.



## 👫 Dialogue 2



### Lääkärissä At the doctor's (CD1; 41)

Doctors are forever giving orders, so this is a good opportunity to revise the forms of the imperative (Unit 3).

Matthew waits at the health centre until it's his turn. Then:

LÄÄKÄRI [pyytää ovelta] Matthew Smith, olkaa hyvä.

[Matthew menee lääkärin perässä sisään.]

LÄÄKÄRI Ja mikäs teitä vaivaa?

MATTHEW Mulla on ollu yskä jo pari päivää, eikä se tunnu oikein

menevän ohi.\* Kurkku on myös aika kipee.

LÄÄKÄRI Ja kuumetta?

MATTHEW Ei oo.

LÄÄKÄRI Katsotaanpa kurkkuun ja kuunnellaan keuhkoja. [Hän

kuuntelee ja katsoo.] Näyttää siltä että kyse ei ole mistään vakavasta tulehduksesta. Levätkää kotona pari päivää ja juokaa runsaasti kuumaa juotavaa. Flunssaja särkylääkkeitä voitte ottaa tarpeen mukaan. Ne helpottavat oloa. Jos olo huononee tulkaa uudelleen.

DOCTOR [calls from the doorway] Matthew Smith, please.

[Matthew goes in after the doctor.]

DOCTOR And what is troubling you?

MATTHEW I've had a cough for a couple of days now, and it doesn't

really seem to be going away. (My) throat is also pretty

sore.

DOCTOR And (do you have) any fever?

MATTHEW No.

DOCTOR Let's have a look into (your) throat and listen to (your)

lungs. [(S)he listens and looks.] It looks as though it isn't a question of any serious inflammation. Rest at home for a few days and drink plenty of hot beverages. You can take 'flu and pain medicines as necessary. They'll help you to feel better (lit. 'they'll ease the being/condition').

If it gets worse, come again.

## Vocabulary



flunssa	'flu	kuum eQ	fever
helpotta-	ease, relieve	kuuntele-	listen
huonoXE-	worsen, get worse	kys eQ	question, matter
juo-	drink	lepäX-	rest
juo∣tava	for drinking, potable	lääkkeQ	medicine (sN <b>lääke</b> )
keuhko	lung	X n mukaan	according to
kuuma	hot, warm	myös	also

<sup>\*</sup> eikä se tunnu oikein mene|vä|n ohi 'and it doesn't really seem to be going away'; you'll learn about this construction in Unit 12.

X∣ItA näyttä-	seems X	sisä∣än	(to) inside
ohi	(adv) past, by, over	särky	pain
ol∣o	condition, the way	tarpeQ	need (sN tarve)
	X is	tulehdus kse	inflammation
X∣n perä∣ssä	behind X		(tuli e fire)
pyytä-	ask, request	uude lle en	again
runsaa sti	in generous	vaiva-	trouble
	quantities	vakava	serious
runsaX	abundant		



## Exercise 5

Pick out the imperative forms in the two dialogues above, then convert them from formal to informal or vice versa, as appropriate.

### **Additional vocabulary**

Whether you're feeling ill or not, some basic anatomical vocabulary is always handy, so have a good look at these items:

pää	head	suoli e	gut
ruumiX	body (sN ruumis)	kynsi te	nail
tukka	head hair	reisi te	thigh
aivo∣t	brain	leuka	chin
kasvo t	face	korva	ear
otsa	forehead	kurkku	throat
silmä	eye	kaula	neck
nenä	nose	olka	shoulder
suu	mouth	rinta	breast
kieli e	tongue	käsi+varsi te	arm
huuli e	lip	kyynär+pää	elbow
poski e	cheek	kanta+pää	heel
polvi e	knee	ranteQ	wrist (sN ranne)
<b>sääri</b> e	leg	peukalo	thumb
veri e	blood	ohimo	temple
sormi e	finger	lantee∣t	hips
sylki e	saliva	jalka	foot, leg
sappi e	gall	ryhti	posture, attitude

pakara∣t	buttocks	rusto	cartilage
iho	skin	nilkka	ankle
hipiä	complexion	selkä	back
varpaX	toe (sN varvas)	keuhko	lung
pohkeQ	calf (sN pohje)	maksa	liver
luu	bone	vatsa	stomach
nyrkki	fist	haima	pancreas
rysty	knuckle		

## Dialogue 3



### Jorma raukka! Poor Jorma! (CD1; 42)



Anna and Sanna are colleagues. At work, they discuss Jorma's health.

SANNA Hei Anna!

ANNA Hei. Mitä kuuluu?

SANNA Kiitos hyvää. Entäs sulle?
ANNA Hvvää. Mitä perheelle kuuluu?

SANNA Siinähän se menee . . .

ANNA Kuinka Jorma voi? Se näytti vähän väsyneeltä eilen illalla. SANNA Nii, se on kai vähän vilustunut. Se sanoo ettei sitä mikään vaivaa, mutta tänä aamuna mä huomasin, että se yski koko ajan kun se pani takkia päälleen.

ANNA Ei sen pitäis sitten mennä töihin, sen pitäis jäädä kotiin lepäämään. Onks sillä kuumetta?

SANNA En mä tiedä. Se ei antanu mun mitata sitä.\* Se sano, ettei o mitään, et se menee nopeasti ohi.

ANNA No. toivotaan niin.

SANNA Hello Anna.

ANNA Hi. How are things?

SANNA Fine thanks. And you?

ANNA Fine. How's the family?

SANNA They're all right . . .

ANNA How is Jorma feeling? He looked a bit done in last night.

SANNA Yes, he may have caught a cold. He says there's nothing wrong with him, but I noticed this morning that he was coughing all the time he was putting his coat on.

ANNA He shouldn't be going to work, he should be staying at

home and getting some rest. Does he have a fever?

SANNA I don't know. He wouldn't let me take his temperature.

He said it's nothing, that it'll soon pass.

ANNA Well, let's hope so.

<sup>\*</sup> Se ei antanu mun mitata sitä lit. 'he didn't let me measure it'.



#### Vocabularv aja|n, koko ajan all the time mittaXmeasure (mitta) eilen nii > niin yesterday et > että nopealsti auickly iäästay päälllelen onto her/himself koko (the) whole, sano > sanoli entire: size takki iacket kuinka? how? toivohope milkälän, ei nothing (sN) vilustucatch cold mikään väsvbecome tired mi|tä|än, ei mitään nothing (sP) yskäcough



## 🔀 Dialogue 4



### **Urheilua Suomessa** On sport in Finland (CD1; 43)

Jeremy asks his friend Jyri about the kinds of sport Finns go in for.

JEREMY Mitkä urheilulajit kiinnostaa suomalaisia?

JYRI Luulisin että jääkiekko on suosituin, mut jalkapallo on

myös todella suosittu.

JEREMY Näyttää siltä että jalkapallo on kansainvälisesti suosittua.

JYRI Suomen erikoisuus on kuitenki pesäpallo. Sitä vois pitää

Suomen kansallisurheiluna.

JEREMY Miten sitä pelataan?

JYRI Vähän niin ku amerikkalaista basebollia, mut siinä on

takaraja lyönneissä ja se on enemmän joukkuepeli.

JEREMY What types of sport interest Finns?

JYRI I would think that ice hockey is the favourite. But football

is really liked a lot as well.

JEREMY It seems that football is a favourite internationally.

JYRI In any case, a Finnish speciality is pesäpallo. You could

think of it as Finland's national sport.

JEREMY How is it played?

JYRI A little like American baseball, but there's a back limit to

hits and it's more of a team sport.

#### Vocabulary basebolli baseball pelaXplays (game) ene|mmä|n more (adv) pesä+pallo (Finnish ball game) erikois uus speciality pesis kse > jalka+pallo football pesä|pallo joukkue+peli team sport pitähold: consider iää+kiekko ice hockey to be X kansa|i|n+väli|se|sti internationally suosilttu favoured kansa||lis+urheilu|na national sport suosiltulin most favoured. kiinnostainterests favourite kuiten|ki > anyway back boundary, taka+raia kuiten|kin limit luul|isi|n I should/would urheilu|laii type of sport think volis > volisi one could lyö|nti blow, hit, strike

## Exercise 6

If you're interested in sport (kiinnostunut urheilusta), make up your own dialogue, in which friends discuss their favourites. You'll find the following vocabulary useful:

The verb **kilpaile**- is 'compete' and **kilpa(ilu)** is 'competition'; so **kilpa-auto** is 'racing car', **kilpa|soutu** is 'competitive rowing', and **kilpa|purjehdus** is 'competitive (regatta) sailing'. 'Amateur' is **harrastelija**, 'professional' **ammattilainen**.





tennis ksetenniskäsi+pallohandballnurmi+pallohockey

hiihto+urheilu skiing (for sport)

pyörä|il|y cycling

**kelkka**|**il**|**u** bobsleighing, tobogganing **korke**|**us**+**hypp**|**y** high jump (**korkea**, **hyppäX**-)

pit|uus+hypp|y long jump (pitkä)

keihää|n+heitt|o throwing the javelin (keihäX keihäs)

ui|nti swimming (ui- 'swim')

joukkueQ team, side

You may also want to have them argue about the difference between a sport and a game (**peli**). If so, you'll need **šakki** 'chess', and **tammi** e 'draughts, checkers, oak(tree)'. You can also talk about playing (**pelaX**-) cards (**kortti**|a) or bridge (**bridge**|ä).



## Language point

### The superlative

This is the '-st' of English 'the biggest', 'the smallest', and the 'most' of 'the most unusual'. In Finnish, you add the suffix =impA. There are two details to watch for.

First, the suffix =**impA** comes out as -**in** in the nominative singular. Thus we have:

stem iso reilu superlative iso|in reilu|in

the biggest the most reliable, the most straightforward

The shape in also occurs in the partitive singular, as in:

# Kirjan kolmas luku käsittelee Grönlanti|a, maailman iso|*in*|ta saar|ta.

The book's third chapter treats Greenland, the world's largest island.

The **mpA** (with compression: **mmA**) of the superlative suffix is clear from such forms as:

iso|impa|aan pullo|on into the largest bottle iso|imma|ssa pullo|ssa in the largest bottle

The second detail is this. The i initial in this suffix causes changes in the end of the stem to which it is attached. Here are examples of the main types:

halpa	cheap	halv∣in	the cheapest	( <b>a</b> > zero)
korkea	high	korke in	the highest	( <b>a</b> > zero)
herkkä	sensitive	herk∣in	the most	( <b>ä</b> > zero)
			sensitive	
tavallinen	usual,	tavallis∣in	the most	( <b>e</b> > zero)
	common		common	
tuoreQ	fresh	tuore in	the freshest	( <b>Q</b> > zero)
rikas	rich (rikkaX)	rikka∣in	the richest	(X > zero)
siisti	clean	siiste∣in	the most clean	(i > e)
kaunis	beautiful	kaune∣in	the most	(X > zero,
	(kauniX)		beautiful	i > e)

Note on compression: As forms like **halv|in** and **herk|in** show, attaching the superlative suffix compresses consonants to the left; but as you already know from studying the partitive plural (Unit 5), compression does not take place if a deleted item (either  $\bf A$  or  $\bf X$ , as above in **korkein**, **rikkain**) would have been part of a long vowel or diphthong. Thus we have compressed  $\bf d$  and  $\bf t$  in the superlatives

outo strange, eerie oudo|in the strangestsuosittu favoured, liked suositu|in the most liked, the favourite

but uncompressed k in

korke|in the highest, with strong rk (from korkea|impA)
and uncompressed kk in

rikka|in the richest, with strong kk (from rikkaX|impA)

Here are the full paradigms of two adjectives, **halpa** 'cheap' and **rikas** 'rich':

	halpa	rikas (stem: <b>rikkaX</b> )
sN	halvin	rikkain
sG	halvimma∣n	rikkaimma∣n
sP	halvin∣ta	rikkain∣ta
sELA	halvimma∣sta	rikkaimma∣sta
sINE	halvimma∣ssa	rikkaimma ssa

	halpa	rikas (stem: <b>rikkaX</b> )
sILL	halvimpa an	rikkaimpa an
sABL	halvimma lta	rikkaimma Ita
sADE	halvima lla	rikkaimma lla
sALL	halvima lle	rikkaimma∣lle
sESS	halvimpa na	rikkaimpa na
sTRA	halvimma ksi	rikkaimma∣ksi
pΝ	halvimma t	rikkaimma∣t
pG	halvimp i en*	rikkaimp∣i∣en*
pΡ	halvimp i a	rikkaimp∣i∣a
pELA	halvimm i sta	rikkaimm∣i∣sta
pINE	halvimm i ssa	rikkaimm∣i∣ssa
pILL	halvimp∣i∣in	rikkaimp∣i∣in
pABL	halvimm i lta	rikkaimm∣i∣lta
pADE	halvimm i lla	rikkaimm∣i∣lla
pALL	halvimm i lle	rikkaimm∣i∣lle
pESS	halvimp i na	rikkaimp∣i∣na
pTRA	halvimm i ksi	rikkaimm∣i∣ksi

<sup>\*</sup> You will also come across genitives plural such as halvin|ten, rikkain|ten, built with a t-suffix. You will learn how to form the genitive plural in the next unit.

Notice that in many cases the only difference between the forms of the superlative and the comparative is the i to the left of the mm:

syve|mmä|t the deeper ones
syv|immä|t the deepest ones

For adjective stems whose last vowel is i, you must look to the i > e change mentioned above to help you spot the superlative:

comparative: siisti|mmä|ssä huonee|ssa in a cleaner room superlative: siiste|immä|ssä huonee|ssa in the cleanest room

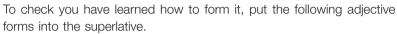
comparative: kallii|mma|t the more expensive ones superlative: kalle|imma|t the most expensive ones

Finally, as in English, a few of the most frequently used superlatives are irregular:

hyvägoodparasbestpitkälongpisinlongestpaljo|nlots, mucheninmost, sG: enimmä|n

*Tip:* They're not superlatives, but the words for 'left' (vasen) and 'warm' (lämmin) have stems which look and behave the same way (vasempa- and lämpimä-).

## Exercise 7





#### Malli: huonon → huonoimman

1	ujolta	6	suuret
2	tumma	7	nuorissa
3	kylmempi	8	terve
4	kovasta	9	iloinen
5	isoon	10	pitkälle

#### Using the superlative

Much as in English, the superlative in Finnish is used to single out the egregious, isolated case. The genitive and the inessive are common markers for the field in which the superlative excels:

#### Iso-Saimaa on Suomen suurin järvi.

Iso-Saimaa is Finland's largest lake.

#### Tukholma on suurin kaupunki Ruotsissa.

Stockholm is the largest city in Sweden.

If selection from a plurality is meant, the plural elative is used:

#### Sä oot ahkerin niistä.

You are the most diligent of the lot (lit. 'out of them').

#### Se on vanhin tytöistä.

She is the oldest (out) of the girls.

You can mitigate your enthusiasm by using the partitive plural of the superlative:

### München on Saksan suurimpia kaupunkeja.

Munich is one of Germany's largest cities.

You say 'at his/her/its X-est' by putting the superlative adjective in the adessive plural and slapping on the suffix -#n. For example:

huono|imm|i|lla|an at his worst parha|imm|i|lla|an at her best syv|imm|i|llä|än at its deepest

You'll find out more about superlative (and comparative) adverbs in Unit 11, and more on the suffix -#n in Unit 10.



## Exercise 8

Translate into Finnish:

- 1 She is the youngest in the class.
- 2 Denmark is Europe's oldest monarchy (kuningaskunta).
- 3 This bag is heavier than mine, but yours is the heaviest.
- 4 The fastest one wins (voitta-), but the slowest one is best.



## 🕽 Language point

#### The essive

This case is the static cousin of the translative: it indicates states and modes of being in which things and people are or were. Contrast the two sentences:

sESS **Se oli sairaa**|**na.** (S)he was ill. sTRA **Se tuli sairaa**|**ksi.** (S)he became ill.

Here are some more examples:

Pidä kahvi kuuma|na! Ne on asiakkaita nyt, ja ne pysyykin asiakka|i|na.

Mä opin sen nuore na.

Se oppi lukemaan aika piene|nä. Hän oli nuorempa|na

Hän oli nuorempa|na unelmoinut elämästä teatterissa. Keep the coffee hot!

They're customers now, and they'll remain customers. (asiakkaX 'customer')

I learned it when I was young (lit. 'as a young [one]').

(S)he learned to read when fairly little.

When younger, (s)he had dreamt of a life in the theatre.

Väinämöistä pidetään		
historiallise na henkilö nä.		
Seisoimme liikkumattom i na.		
Minulla oli valhe valmii na.		

Väinämöinen is held to be a historical person. We stood motionless. I had a lie ready.

The essive has two other common uses which you will learn in the next unit.

### Stems made with =(U)UTE and =KKAX

Finnish abounds in abstract nouns like **terveys** 'health', **erikoisuus** 'speciality' and **talous** 'economy'. These are all made with the derivational suffix =(**U)UTE**, most commonly from adjectives, but also from some nouns and even pronouns. Study these examples, noting the meanings and changes in the stems:

helppo helppo us	easy ease, facililty	mahd ollinen mahdollis uus	possible possibility
terveQ	healthy health	emäntä emänn vys	mistress of the house; hostess household
		133	management
vanha vanh∣uus	old old age	alempi alemm∣uus	lower, inferior inferiority
lapsi <i>e</i> laps∣uus	child childhood	ohuTe oh∣uus	thin thinness
erikoinen erikois uus	special speciality	naapuri naapur∣uus	neighbour neighbourhood

Note the unmotivated compression of consonants in forms built to comparative stems (like **alemmuus**) and in forms like **emännyys**. Notice also the especially striking **pituus** 'length, height' from **pitkä** 'long, tall'.

In the singular and in the nominative plural, these stems take case suffixes just like **käsi** (Unit 2, *dental stems*), except that they have no **i** at the end of their citation form:

sN	sG	sILL	pΝ	English
käs <i>i</i>	käde∣n	käte∣en	käde∣t	hand
talous	taloude∣n	taloute∣en	taloude∣t	economy

But in the other forms of the plural, these stems switch over to being =**UKSE** stems (Unit 5), so we have, for example, **talo|uks|i|ssa** as the plural inessive of **talous**, **mahdollisuuks|i|in** as the plural illative of **mahdollisuus**.

Formed with the derivational suffix =**KKAX** are nouns denoting particular kinds or classes of person, for example, **osa**|**kas** 'share-holder' (cf. **osa** 'part, share'), **asia**|**kas** 'client, customer' (cf. **asia** 'matter') and adjectives denoting attributes, for example, **tyyli**|**käs** 'stylish' (cf. **tyyli** 'style'). As their stem shape suggests, these words all decline like all other **X**-stems, and with regular compression and decompression of the **KK**: so, for example, 'a wealthy client' has nominative singular **rikas asiakas**, genitive singular **rikkaa**|**n asiakkaa**|**n**, illative plural **rikka**|**i**|**siin asiakka**|**i**|**siin**. Here are a few more words formed with the =**KKAX** suffix:

asu|kas inhabitant (asu- 'live in a place')

tulo|kas newcomer (tulo 'arrival', from tule- 'come')

väri|käs colourful (väri 'colour')

muodi|kas fashionable (muoti 'fashion')

kodi|kas cosy (koti 'home')

inno|kas enthusiastic (into 'enthusiasm') äly|käs intelligent (äly 'intelligence')

mau|kas tasty (maku 'taste')

Notice also **ohu|kas** 'pancake' (**ohuTe** 'thin') and **muna|kas** 'omelette' (**muna** 'egg').

### Unit Nine

## Aika ja tila

### Time and space

#### In this unit you will learn:

- · about time expressions
- about prepositions and postpositions
- · how to form the genitive plural
- · about going to the country, and about the sauna

## Dialogue 1

#### Apteekissa At the chemist's (CD1; 44)

Pasi goes to the chemist's to get kitted out for a trip to the country.

APTEEKKARI Päivää, kuinka voin auttaa?

PASI Onks teillä jotain tehokasta hyttysenpuremiin?

APTEEKKARI Kokeile Pantysonia. Se laskee turvotusta ja lievittää kutinaa.

PASI Hyvä, mä otan sitä ja sitte vielä laastareita, pullo

desinfiointiainetta ja kyypakkaus.

APTEEKKARI Taidat olla mökille menossa!

CHEMIST (Good) day, how can I help (you)?

PASI Do you have anything effective against mosquito bites?

CHEMIST Try Pantyson. It reduces swelling and relieves itching.

PASI Fine, I'll take some and (then also) (there'll be) some

plasters, a bottle of disinfectant and a snakebite kit.

CHEMIST You must be on (your) way to (your summer) cabin!









## ocabulary/

aineQ laskematter, stuff lower, reduce; drop apteekkari chemist, pharmacist lievittärelieves, alleviates apteekki chemist's/ men o going, departure pharmacist's shop meno|ssa en route desinficinti disinfection mökki (summer) cabin anat, midge; hvttvnen pakkaus kse pack, kit mosquito olluq bottle kokeiletries pure|ma bite kutina itch tehokas effective (stem: kyy venomous snake tehokkaX. cf. sticking plaster, teho effect) laastari bandage turvotus kse swelling



## 👫 Dialogue 2



### Kutsu maalle An invitation to the country (CD1; 45)

Pasi is not the only one who is heading to the countryside for the weekend. Steve, like many a lucky foreigner in Finland, has been invited by his hosts to their summer cabin. He asks his friend Sami what sorts of things are in store for him, particularly regarding the sauna.

STEVE Kuule Sami, mut on kutsuttu ens viikonloppuna Aaltosten mökille saunomaan. Kerro jotain saunomisesta.

Sauna on perussuomalainen juttu. Suomalaiset ei oikein SAMI osaa olla ilman saunaa.

Mikä siinä on nyt sit niin erikoista. STEVE

SAMI Kuuman löylyn jälkeen juostaan yleensä talvella lumihankeen ja kesällä järveen. Sen jälkeen on tosi hyvä olo.

STEVE Mikä se vihta oikein on?

Se on kimppu koivun oksia ja sillä sitte vihdotaan löylyssä SAMI

toinen toista.\* Se vilkastuttaa verenkiertoa.

Saunan jälkeenkö syödään sitte lenkkimakkaraa ja juodaan STEVE saunakaliat?

Joo. Sulla tulee oleen kiva viikonloppu. SAMI

STEVE Listen, Sami, I've been invited to the sauna (lit. 'to use the sauna') at the Aaltonens' summer cabin next weekend. Tell me something about sauna'ing.

The sauna is a very basic Finnish thing. Finns really don't SAMI know how to be without it.

STEVE So what's so special about it then?

After the superheated steam you generally run out into a SAMI snowbank or, in summer, into the lake. After that it really feels good.

STEVE (And) what is 'vihta' by the way?

It's a bunch of birch twigs, and people hit each other SAMI with it in the superheated steam. It stimulates the blood circulation.

STEVE Is it after the sauna that people eat sausages and drink beer then?

Yep. You're going to have a great weekend. SAMI

Kalat katsoo tois|i|a|an (or: toinen tois|ta|an)

The fish look at one another

Kuinka hyvin te tunnette toise|nne? How well do you know one another? Mitä voidaan oppia tois|i|Ita|mme?

What can we learn from one another?

## Vocabulary



Aaltosten	pG of surname	järvi e	lake
	Aaltonen	kimppu	bunch
ens > ensi		koivu	birch
erikoinen	special	kutsu-	invite, call
hanki e	drift, bank	lenkki	ring/link of sausage
juokse-	run	lumi e	snow (sP lun ta)
juos∣taan	ind juokse-	löyly	superheated steam
juttu	story, thing	makkara	sausage

<sup>\*</sup> toinen tois ta 'each other'. Here are a few further examples of the reciprocal construction:

Ì	mökki	summer cabin	to∣inen	one/other of two
ı	oksa	twig, branch	vere n+kiert o	blood circulation
ı	oleen >		vihta	see the dialogue!
ı	ole ma an		vihto-	use <b>vihta</b>
ı	osaX-	know how	viiko n+loppu	weekend
ı	perus+	basic, fundamental	vilkastutta-	enliven, stimulate
ı	sauno-	use the sauna	yleensä	generally



### The genitive plural

This corresponds to the English plural 'children's' as opposed to singular 'child's'. For most English words, the placement of the apostrophe is vital: 'boy's' is singular, 'boys' is plural.

The Finnish genitive plural has a great variety of forms, and many nominals have at least two forms to choose from. You will keep your bearings if you remember that for most nouns, the genitive plural is analogous to the partitive plural: if the pP has -tA, the pG will be -den, and if the pP has -A, the pG will be -en. Study these parallel forms:

Stem	yö	huoneQ	hampaX	asema	talo
pP pG	ö∣i∣tä ö∣i∣den	huone∣i∣ta huone∣i∣den	hampa∣i∣ta hampa∣i∣den	asem i a asem i en	talo j a talo j en
English	night	room	tooth	station	house

The suffix -den has an alternative form -tten, so you will also see and hear ö|i|tten, huone|i|tten, and hampa|i|tten.

There are two kinds of nominal that upset this neat parallelism. First, many polysyllabic nouns ending in **i** which form their pP with -**tA** take -**en** in the pP. In such cases, the stem-final vowel vanishes without a trace. For example:

Stem	paperi	sipuli	dekkari	kolari	apteekkari
pP pG	papere i ta paper i en	sipule i ta sipul i en	dekkare∣i∣ta dekkar∣i∣en	kolare∣i∣ta kolar∣i∣en	apteekkare i ta apteekkar i en
English	paper	onion	detective novel	car crash	chemist/druggist

Second, **e**-stems form their pG more often with -**ten** than with -**en**. So you will usually come across, for example,

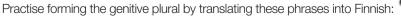
Stem	kiele	naise	puheliME	kysymykse
pP pG	kiel∣i∣ä kiel∣ten	nais∣i∣a nais∣ten	puhelim i a puhelin ten	kysymyks∣i∣ä kysymys∣ten
English	language	woman	telephone	question

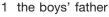
You have already met the consonant changes m>n (in puhelin|ten) and k>0 (in kysymys|ten), and p>0 (lapsi e 'child', pG las|ten) in connection with the partitive singulars of these words.

Notes on compression: As with the partitive plural (Unit 5), forms with -d- or -t- show compression where possible, while forms with -j- do not, for example, the kk of laatikko 'box' compresses in laatikoiden, laatikoitten, but not in laatikojen. Notice, also, that the tt of the -tten suffix variant does not itself undergo compression. And when -ten is suffixed to e-stems, the resulting clusters (e.g. s|t) do not cause compression; thus the rp of kärpänen 'fly' remains uncompressed in pG kärpäs|ten. The same rule holds for the sP of such words (kärpäs|tä).

Finally, you should be aware that nominals which end in **A** have an extra genitive plural form built with simple -i-n; this form is used in certain fixed or formal expressions and in poetry; for example, alongside normal **kanso**|j|en there is also **kansa**|i|n 'of nations', as in **kansainvälinen** 'international' and alongside **is**|i|en 'of fathers' there is also **is**a|i|n as in **is**ain **pahat teot** 'the sins of the fathers'.

### Exercise 1





2 the girls' names



- 3 the prices of the larger radios
- 4 the numbers of the rooms
- 5 the laws (laki) of many other countries



## Language point

#### Time expressions

It is helpful to distinguish words which refer to specific periods of time such as 'Monday', 'August', 'spring' and 'evening' from words which refer to time-spans, such as 'minute', 'hour', 'century'. These two types are discussed in (a) and (b) below. Section (c) lists some very common miscellaneous phrases.

(a) We look first at specific time-words: the days of the week, the months of the year, the seasons, and the various times of the 24-hour cycle.

	viiko∣n päivä∣t	the days of the week
Monday	maanantai	maanantai∣na
Tuesday	tiistai	tiistai∣na
Wednesday	keskiviikko	keskiviikko na
Thursday	torstai	torstai∣na
Friday	perjantai	perjantai∣na
Saturday	lauantai	lauantai∣na
Sunday	sunnuntai	sunnuntai∣na

Note that in Finnish the names of the days are not capitalized. 'On Sunday, Monday', etc. is expressed by the essive (Unit 8).

on Midsummer's Eve

#### Examples:

juhannusaatto∣na

keskiviikko na	on Wednesday
tä∣nä tortstai∣na	this Thursday
viime perjantai∣na	last Friday
ensi lauantai∣na	next Saturday

The names of holidays are also in the essive:

joulu∣na	on Christmas day
vappu∣na	on May Day
juhannukse na	on Midsummer's Day

'Every Sunday' is **joka sunnuntai**|**na**; there is also a suffix =**sin**, as in **sunnuntai**|**sin** 'Sundays; every Sunday (as a rule)'.

vuode n kuukaude t		the months of the year	
January	tammikuu	July	heinäkuu
February	helmikuu	August	elokuu
March	maaliskuu	September	syyskuu
April	huhtikuu	October	lokakuu
May	toukokuu	November	marraskuu
June	kesäkuu	December	joulukuu

All the month names end with the word **kuu** 'moon; month'; again, note that they are not capitalized in Finnish. 'In January', 'in February', etc. is expressed by the inessive case, for example, **syyskuu**|ssa 'in September'. More examples:

seuraava ssa helmikuu ssa	(in) the following February
tämä n vuode n lokakuu ssa	in October of this year

Dates are expressed just as in English by means of ordinal numerals ('fifth', 'twenty-second', etc.; you'll learn how to form these in Unit 11). You either put the ordinal numeral first, in which case the month name goes into the partitive, for example, **kuudes** (**päivä**) **elokuu|ta** 'the sixth (day) of August', or you place the ordinal second, in which case the month name is in the genitive, for example, **elokuu|n kuudes**.

	vuode∣n+aja∣t	the seasons
kevät (stem: kevää-!)	kevää∣llä	spring
kesä	kesä∣llä	summer
syksy	syksy∣llä	autumn
talvi e	talve lla	winter

As you can see from the examples above, 'in spring', etc. is expressed by the adessive case; to single out one season in particular, however, you put the entire expression in the essive:

tuleva|na kesä|nä in the coming summer viime kevää|nä last spring

edellise|nä syksy|nä the previous autumn

will hear most often in poetry and song: suvi e.

Alongside kesä there is also a special word for 'summer' which you

Words for parts of the day include:

aamulla

koi	dawn	yö	night
aamu	morning	hämärä	twilight
ilta	evening	aamu∣päivä	forenoon
päivä	day, daytime	ilta∣päivä	afternoon

These words take the same cases as the seasons: adessive if used alone, essive if modified. Here are some examples:

in the morning

tä∣nä aamu∣na	this morning
erää nä joulukuu n aamu na	(on) one December morning
kahte na perättäise nä	(on) two consecutive mornings
aamu∣na	
yö llä	at night
perjantai n ja lauantai n	during the night between
välise∣nä yö∣nä	Friday and Saturday

tä|nä ilta|nathis eveningyhte|nä syksy|n ilta|na(on) one autumn evening

seuraava|na iltapäivä|nä (on) the following afternoon maanantai-iltapäivä|nä (on) Monday afternoon

(b) Here are the more common words that refer to time-spans:

sekunti	second	kuukausi te	month
minuutti	minute	vuosi te	year
tunti	hour	vuosikymmen	decade (NB!)
päivä	day	vuosisata	century
vuorokausi te	24-hour period	vuosituhat nte	millennium
viikko	week	hetki e, tuokio	instant, flash

You will recognize the second components of 'century' and 'millennium' as the Finnish words for 100 and 1000. The word for 'decade', however, is built with **kymmen** (stem: **kymmene**-), not **kymmenen**. Note the **e**-stems: **vuosi vuote**- 'year' and **kausi kaute**- 'time-period'.

Just like English, Finnish uses time-span words most commonly to express duration. English usually expresses duration with the preposition 'for', as in the sentences 'I lived there for a year', 'I haven't seen them for a year', and 'I'm going to Finland for a year'. In Finnish,

however, these are seen as quite different sets of circumstances and are expressed by three different case suffixes.

- 1 The time something actually lasted, as in 'I lived there for a year', is put in the accusative, e.g. **Mä asuin siellä vuode**|n.
- 2 The time during which something didn't happen ('I haven't seen them for a year') goes into the illative, e.g. En ole nähnyt niitä vuote|en.
- 3 The amount of time something is supposed/intended to last ('I'm going to Finland for a year') is expressed by the translative (see Unit 8), e.g. Mä menen Suomeen vuode|ksi.

The translative is also used to express the point of time by which something will happen or be ready, e.g. **Mä tuun sun luoksesi kello viide|ksi** 'l'll come to your place by 5 o'clock.'

Finally, the time-span during which something happens or is accomplished is expressed by means of the inessive, e.g.:

puole|ssa tunni|ssain half an hourmuutamas|ssa tunni|ssain a few hoursvajaa|ssa tunni|ssain less than an hour

runsaa|ssa tunni|ssa in a good hour, in a little over an hour

kerra|n tai pari viiko|ssa once or twice a week

(c) Finnish is rich in miscellaneous time expressions. In this section we look at some of the most useful.

**aina** always

use|inoften (usea 'frequent')joskussometimes (jos 'if')harvo|inseldom (harva 'rare')

kerra|n once

taas, uude|lle|en again

kerra|n vielä one more time, once again

ei vielä not yet
ei enälä not any more

ei koskaan never

ei koskaan enä ä never again

**nyt** now

**nykyisin** nowadays

previously ennen nvttemmin lately äskettäin recently äsken iust now pian, kohta soon

heti straight away, at once

tänään today huomenna tomorrow

vlihuomenna the day after tomorrow

eilen vesterdav

toissapäivänä the day before yesterday

pari päivä|ä sitten a few days ago

pari|n päivä|n kuluttu|a after a few days, a few days later

koko päiväln all day (long) joka toinen päivä every other day

silllä aikala during that time, meanwhile tälliä kertala this time, on this occasion

siilhen aikalan at that time sama|an aika|an at the same time



### Exercise 2

Mihin aikaan? expects an answer with clock time. Practise using clock time by giving or making up answers to these questions:

- 1 Mihin aikaan sä heräät?
- 2 Mihin aikaan sä lähdet kotoa töihin?
- 3 Mihin aikaan sä syöt illlallista?
- 4 Mihin aikaan sä meet nukkumaan?
- 5 Mihin aikaan juna lähtee?
- 6 Mihin aikaan juna on perillä?
- 7 Mihin aikaan bussi saapuu Helsinkiin?



### Exercise 3

As you have seen above, the question Montako kertaa? asks how many times (per X) something happens; X goes into the inessive. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences, supplying either the missing number of times or the time-frame.

- 1 Eeva harjoittelee soittamaan pianoa joka päivä. Se harjoittelee siis \_\_\_\_ viikossa.
- 2 Sanna juo kahvia vain aaamiaisen aikaan. Se juo kahvia siis kerran
- 3 Me mennään saunaan tiistaina ja lauantaina. Me mennään saunaan siis \_\_\_\_ viikossa.
- 4 Se käy kylässä naapurin luona vain jouluna ja juhannuksena. Se käy siellä siis kaksi kertaa \_\_\_\_.

## Dialogue 3



# **Saunanlämmityspuuhissa** Sauna preparations in the country (CD1; 46)



- STEVE Mikä tän järven nimi on?
- JUHA Pielisjärvi. Se on yks Suomen suurimpia järviä.
- STEVE Täällä on kyllä tosi vihreetä ja puhdasta.
- JUHA Eiköhän aleta\* heti saunanlämmityspuuhiin, ku se vie kuitenki aika paljon aikaa.
- TIMO Steve, sä voisit mennä hakeen koivuhalkoja saunan takaa pinosta. Mä ja Juha ruvetaan kantaa vettä järvestä.
- JUHA Sytytetään sitte yhdessä tuli kiukaan alle.
- TIMO Mä käyn vaan laittamassa ruuat ja kaljat kylmään.
- STEVE What's this lake's name?
- JUHA Pielisjärvi. It's one of Finland's largest lakes.
- STEVE It sure is green and clean here.
- JUHA Perhaps we ought to get started warming up the sauna. It always takes quite a bit of time.
- TIMO Steve, you could go and fetch some birch logs from the pile in the back of the sauna. Juha and I'll get started bringing water from the lake.
- JUHA Then we'll light the fire together under the kiuas.
- TIMO I'll just go and put the food and the beers in a cool place.

<sup>\*</sup> **Eiköhän aleta**: roughly, 'perhaps we ought to begin'; grammatically, we have here the negative (**ei**) interrogative (**-kö**) indefinite (**aletaan/ei aleta**), with mitigation via the enclitic --hän.



## Vocabulary

X n al le	to underneath X	pino	pile, heap
hakeen > hake ma an		puhtaX	clean, pure (sN <b>puhdas</b> )
halko	(short) log	puuha	chore, job
kantaan > kanta ma an		rupeX-	start (used with third infinitive)
kiuas	(stem: <b>kiukaX</b> ); see sauna notes below!	X n taka a tän > tämä n	from behind X
kylmä	cold	vie- vihreä	take (away) green
käy- laitta-	go, come, pass prepare, set up	volislit	you could,
lämmitys kse	heating, warming		you might



## Cultural point

#### Notes on the sauna

Going to the sauna (sauno|minen) is one of the most Finnish things one can do. The Finnish sauna is a survival of a practice once wide-spread in central and eastern Europe. Nowadays the Finnish sauna has evolved into several different varieties; the oldest form is best preserved in the smoke sauna, savusauna. (The word sauna is connected etymologically with savu 'smoke'.)

In cities, saunas are cunningly integrated as modern facilities into homes, blocks of flats, and the premises of larger companies. But the roots of the sauna are in the countryside: here, the sauna is a building traditionally made of logs (hirre|t) and with a turf roof (turve|katto). It is usually built near a shore, something which is very easy to do since Finland has over 40,000 lakes. In one typical arrangement the sauna consists of three rooms: the steam (or sweat) room (löylyhuone), the washroom (pesu|huone), and a room for relaxing in away from the heat (takka|huone).

After showering in the **pesuhuone**, one proceeds to the **löylyhuone**, where there are benches (**lautee**|**t**) arranged stair-fashion around the 'stove'. This 'stove' is actually a pile of stones (**kiuas**, stem: **kiukaX**, cf. **kivi** 'stone') set over a heat-source which is traditionally woodburning, but which may also, especially in cities, be powered by electricity (**sähkö|llä**) or, more rarely, gas (**kaasu|lla**) or oil (**öljy|llä**).

The **lauteet** are made of wood, a material which is slow to conduct heat and quick to absorb moisture. Sitting-places set at different heights provide a maximum of choice – the higher one sits, the hotter it will be. The floor is the best place for children and beginners: temperatures normally range from 80 to 100°C.

Such high temperatures are bearable because the sauna is a very dry place. The intense heat comes not from hot water or even hot water vapour, but from superheated steam, **löyly**, which is produced by the judicious pouring of warm water over the stones of the **kiuas**. This work, **heittä-löyly**!ä ('throw **löyly**') is normally carried out by the host or the guest of honour.

### Language point

#### **Prepositions and postpositions**

You have already met the words **ennen** 'before' and **jälkeen** 'after'. Whereas **ennen** precedes the word it goes with and thus is much like an English preposition, **jälkeen** comes after its word. It and others like it are therefore called postpositions.

Most Finnish prepositions are like **ennen** in that they take the partitive, for example, **ennen helmikuu**|ta 'before February', **ilman sinu**|a 'without you'.

Most postpositions are like **jälkeen** in that they take the genitive, for example, **koulu**|**n jälkeen** 'after school', **kirko**|**n ohi** 'past the church'.

Many prepositions and postpositions which refer to spatial and temporal relations come in three varieties, depending on whether movement from, to, or simple location is meant.

Thus 'in front of' occurs in the three s-cases: the inessive, elative, and illative, as ede|ssä, ede|stä, or ete|en:

Ne odottaa kirkon ede|ssä.

They're waiting in front of the church.



Ne tuli kirkon ede|stä. They came from in front of

the church.

Me mentiin kirkon ete|en. We went (to) in front of the church.

If both items are in motion (as in a race), the corresponding I-cases are used:

Se pysyy kilpailija|n edellä. (S)he keeps ahead of her/his rival.

L-cases are also used for non-spatial meanings such as **ede|llä** mainittu 'before-mentioned'.

'In the back of' or 'behind' is taka|na, taka|a, or taa|kseQ:

Saa nähdä, mitä sanojen We'll have to see what is

taka|na on. behind the words.

Se kävelee kädet selän She walks with (her) hands

taka|na. behind (her) back.

**Kuva on otettu selän taka**|a. The picture has been taken from behind (his) back.

Mä menin näyttämön taa|kse. I went (to) behind (the) stage.

Temporal uses of taka|a and taa|kseQ are also frequent:

Se viha juontaa satojen This hatred stems from vuosien taka|a. hundreds of years back.

Se ulottuu yli tuhannen lt stretches back over vuoden taa|kse. a thousand years.

If both items are in motion, perä|ssä is common:

Se juoksee merkkien perässä. (S)he runs after brand names.

'Under' is al|la, al|ta, al|le:

Ne asuu saman katon al|la. They live under the same roof.

Mä en etsinyt sitä I didn't look for it (from) under

sängyn al|ta. the bed.

Koira juoksi penkin al|le. The dog ran (to) under the bench.

'Over' is yl|lä, yl|tä, yl|le, or ylä+puole|lla, ylä+puole|lta, ylä+puole|lle, and 'outside' is ulko+puole|lla, ulko+puole|lta, ulko+puole|lle, for example:

Sängyn yläpuolella riippuu Above the bed hang three kolme kuvaa. pictures.

Suomen ulkopuolella ei It isn't studied outside Finland.

sitä opiskella.

'On top of' is expressed by the adessive, ablative, and allative of **pää** 'head': **pää|llä**, **pää|ltä**, **pää|lle**. For example:

Kissa nukkuu pianon pää∣llä. Mä löysin sen kaapin pää∣ltä. Pistä se takaisin television pää∣lle!

The same word with **s**-forms refers to the remove at which something is located (or going to, or coming from):

Ne asuu parin korttelin pää|ssä.
Pysäkki siirrettiin 200
(kahdensadan) metrin
pää|hän.
Tie alkaa pain kummanan

Tie alkaa noin kymmenen kilometrin pää|stä.

They live a few blocks away. The bus stop was moved (to a place) 200 metres away.

The road begins (from) about ten kilometres away (from there/here).

But pää|stä is most often used in time expressions such as tunni|n pää|stä 'an hour having passed, after an hour'.

'Between' is väli in one of the local cases, as in

Puhelin oli pöydällä sänkyjen väli|ssä.

Timon ja Juhan väli∣llä oli riita.

Moraalisoinnin ja moraalin väli|llä on ero.

The telephone was on a table between the beds.

There was a dispute between Timo and Juha.

There is a difference between morality and moralizing.

'Next to' is most commonly viere|ssä, viere|stä, viere|en:

Tohvelit on tolla seinän viere∣ssä.

Se pysäköi auton tien vierelen.

Lompakko löytyi eteisestä, oven vierestä.

The slippers are over there next to the wall.

(S)he parked the car at the side of the road.

The wallet was found in the entrance hall, next to the door.

S-case forms of ääri e 'edge' (ääre|ssä, ääre|stä, ääre|en) are used to express location near something which one uses in certain normal ways: pöydä|n ääre|ssä is not simply 'next to the table', it is 'at table (in order to have a meal)'. Similarly: piano|n ääre|ssä 'at (= playing) the piano', brandy|n ääre|ssä 'over (= while having) brandy'.

'At' is **luo**|na, **luo**|ta, **luo** (with possessive suffixes: **luokse**-; there'll be more on possessive suffixes in the next unit) if someone's home is meant, as in

Se vierailee Juusoln luolna pari päivää. Ne tuli meidän luo|kse|mme. (S)he's visiting at Juuso's for a couple of days. They came to our place.

But 'at the doctor's' and similar expressions involving professions are made with the inessive, for example, lääkäri|ssä.

'Through' is halki (especially 'through lengthwise') or läpi, and 'across' is poikki (especially 'across widthwise') or yli (especially in the sense of 'over'), as in

Me käveltiin kotiin puisto|n halki. Me ajettiin kaupungi|n läpi. Kettu juoksi tie|n poikki. Kissa hyppäsi aida n yli.

We walked home through the park. We drove through the city. The fox ran across the road. The cat jumped over the fence.

The cause or reason for something is usually expressed by takia 'on account of', or vuoksi 'for the sake of', for example:

Mä myöhästyin su|n takia|si. huvi|n vuoksi.

Varmuude n vuoksi.

I was late because of you.

for fun.

for the sake of security (= to be safe).

'With' is normally kanssa; but you will also come across kera, especially in connection with food and drink:

Ne odottaa matkalaukku|j|en kanssa terminaalin ulkopuolella. Suola|n ja pippuri|n kera.

They're waiting outside the terminal with (their)

bags.

with salt and pepper.

As mentioned above, only a very few postpositions take the partitive. The most common are vastapäätä 'opposite', varten 'for', pitkin 'along' and kohti 'towards':

Kirkko on pankki|a vastapäätä.

the bank.

Se osti sen me|i|tä varten.

(S)he bought it for us.

The church is opposite

Se seurasi minua katula pitkin.

Me ajettiin Jyväskylä ä kohti.

(S)he followed me along

the street.

We were driving towards

Jyväskylä.

Notice also the adverbs **ylös** 'up', **alas** 'down', which are used mainly in constructions with the partitive, as in

Bussi kulkee mäke ä alas. Se juoksi portalilta vlös.

The bus goes down the hill.

(S)he ran up the stairs.

Kautta 'via' and kesken 'in the middle of, amidst' both take the genitive, and they are used as both prepositions and postpositions. There are meaning differences, however. Notice these examples:

kautta Euroopa|n

all over Europe via Europe

Euroopa|n kautta

ystäv|i|en kesken kesken vuodeln

among friends

in the middle of the year, before the year

is over/out

Apart from ilman and ennen, there are relatively few words used exclusively or even mainly as prepositions in Finnish. However, 'in the middle of' is usually expressed with the I-cases of the noun keski e 'middle', namely keske|llä, keske|ltä, keske|lle, as in

keske|llä lattia|a in the middle of the floor from the middle of town keskelltä kaupunkila keskelle New Yorkila into the middle of New York

Note also vailla (or vaille) 'short of, lacking', as in Se jää vaille asunto|a '(S)he still doesn't have a flat ("remains without a flat")'.

Finally, consider **ympäri**. As a preposition, it takes the partitive and means 'located all around in, moving around in':

Sillä on markkinoita ympäri

Eurooppa a.

Se kulki puhumassa ympäri

Yhdysvalto|i|a. Se juoksenteli ympäri kenttä ä. It has markets all over

Europe.

(S)he went around the US

speaking.

(S)he ran around in the field.

As a postposition, it takes the genitive and refers to the circumference:

Se juoksi kentä|n ympäri. (S)he ran (once) around

(the perimeter of) the field.

Mä kävelin auto|n ympäri. I walked around the car.



### Exercise 4

Revise some postpositions by translating these sentences into Finnish:

- 1 He stood in front of the boys.
- 2 They put the letter back under the lamp.
- 3 I'd like to go to Stockholm by way of Turku.
- 4 The church is next to the school.
- 5 They took us behind the building.



## K Dialogue 4



#### Saunomassa In the sauna at last (CD1; 47)

[Pojat hikoilevat lauteilla.]

TIMO Heität sä Steve lisää vettä kiukaalle!

STEVE Mitä, vieläkö lisää? Täällähän on jo yli kahdeksankymmentä

astetta.

JUHA Anna mennä vaan! Näitten löylyjen jälkeen hypätään järveen.

TIMO Juha, vihdohan ensin mun selkää!

STEVE Alan nyt ymmärtää miks sauna on niin tärkee suomalaisille.

Mulla on jo nyt hyvä olo.

JUHA Odotas ku päästään juomaan saunakaljat, sitte se olo vasta hyvä on. Nyt mä lasken kolmeen ja sit juostaan järveen

kilpaa. Yks, kaks, kolme.

[Pojat juoksevat ulos löylystä.]

[The boys sweat as they sit on the **lauteet**.]

TIMO Would you throw a little more water on kiuas, Steve!

STEVE What, even more? It's already over 80 degrees (in) here.

JUHA Just go ahead (let it go). After the superheated steam(s) we'll jump in the lake.

TIMO Juha, first give my back a good whisk, would you?

STEVE Now I'm beginning to understand why the sauna is so important to Finns. I'm beginning to feel really good now.

JUHA Just wait till we get to drink the beers, you won't feel really great until then. Now I'll count to three and then we'll run a race into the lake. One, two, three.

[The boys run out of the superheated steam.]

## Vocabulary



heittä-	throw	lautee t	benches in sauna
hikoile-	sweat	lisä∣ä	more, additional
hyppäX-	jump	löyly	superheated steam
kilpa	race	yli	over
laske-	count		

### Unit Ten

### Mitä tehtäs tänään?

What'll we do today?



#### In this unit you will learn:

- how to form and use the conditional, and more about modals
- vocabulary connected with making plans and appointments
- · about possessive suffixes
- about turning nouns into verbs, and vice versa
- about Suomenlinna, and about language and religion in Finland



## PK Dialogue 1



#### Vuodenajat The seasons (CD1; 48)

You can learn something about Finland's climate, and revise the names of the months and seasons, by listening in on this conversation between Peter and Päivi:

PETER Onk se totta, että Suomessa on neliä erilaista vuodenaikaa?

PÄIVI Joo.

PETER Kerro jotain niistä? Millaista on talvella?

PÄIVI Talvikuukaudet ovat joulu-, tammi-, ja helmikuu.\* Joskus lumi tulee jo marraskuussa tai lokakuun lopulla. Parhaiten talvea voisivat kuvata sanat lumi, pakkanen, pimeys ja hiihto.

PETER No entäs kevät?

PÄIVI Maaliskuussa päivät pitenee ja lumi alkaa vähitellen sulaa. Leskenlehdet ja hiirenkorvat ovat varma keväänmerkki.

PETER Kesällä on varmaan kuuma ku aurinko ei kuulemma laske yöksi ollenkaa.

PÄIVI [naurahtaa] Totta se on, että Lapissa aurinko ei laske keskikesällä ollenkaan, mutta Suomessa kesä on harvoin liian kuuma. Parasta kesässä on mökkielämä ja mansikat.

PETER Syyskuukaudet on sitte syys-, loka- ja marraskuu?

PÄIVI Alkusyksystä on kaunista ku lehdet vaihtaa väriä. Loppusyksy on yleensä sateista ja harmaata.

PETER Is it true that Finland has four different seasons?

PÄIVI Yes.

PETER (Could you) say something about them? What's it like in the winter(time)?

PÄIVI The winter months are December, January, and February. Sometimes the snow comes as early as (in) November or (at) the end of October. The words that would best describe winter are 'snow', 'frost', 'darkness', and 'skiing'.

PETER Well and what about spring?

PÄIVI In March the days grow longer and the snow begins gradually to melt. 'Widow's leaves' and 'mouse's ears' are a sure sign of spring.

PETER It must be warm in the summer, when they tell me the sun doesn't set at all all night.

PÄIVI [laughs] It is true that in Lappi the sun doesn't set at all in midsummer, but summer is rarely too hot in Finland. The best (thing) in summer is spending time at one's **mökki**, and the strawberries.

PETER The autumn months are September, October, and November, then?

PÄIVI In early autumn it's beautiful when the leaves change colour.

The end of autumn is generally rainy and grey.

<sup>\*</sup> joulu-, tammi-, ja helmikuu: Finns avoid repeating the second member of compounds even more often than we do in English (cf. 'North and South America'). They use a hyphen to mark the missing member (i.e. joulu- and tammi- are short for joulu|kuu and tammi|kuu).



## Vocabulary

alk u	beginning	loppu	end
aurinko	sun	mansikka	strawberry
elä mä	life	millainen?	what kind?
erilainen	different, distinct	naura-	laugh
harmaa	grey	naur ahta-	burst out laughing
hiiht o	skiing	naur u	laughter
keski e	middle	(ei) ollenkaan	(not) at all
kuule mma	they say;	pakkanen	frost
	supposedly	parhaiten	best (adv)
kuvaX-	describes	pimeys te	darkness
	( <b>kuva</b> picture)	pitEXE-	gets longer
Lappi	Lappland	sateinen	rainy
lehti e	leaf	sula-	melts
leske n+lehti e	coltsfoot	vaihta-	changes, swops
leski e	widow(er)	vähitellen	gradually
liia∣n	too (much)	väri	colour
liika	excess		



#### Exercise 1

Check that you know the names of the seasons, the months, and basic climate vocabulary by writing a brief description in Finnish of the seasons where you live.



## 🔀 Dialogue 2



### Kieli ja uskonto Language and religion (CD1; 49)

Nick stops by to see Katja, and gets a quick lesson in Finnish demography.

[Nick tulee käymään Katjan luo.]

KATJA [aukaisee oven] Moi Nick. Kiva kun tulit käymään. Mulla alkokin olla jo pää sekaisin ruotsin pänttäämisestä.\*

NICK Sulla on varmaan joku hyvä syy lukea sitä, vai?

- KATJA No on. Huomenna on pakollinen ruotsin kielen tentti, joka pitää läpäistä, ennen kun pääsee yliopistosta.<sup>†</sup> Se vaaditaan kaikilta opiskelijoilta.
- NICK Ai. Miks suomenkielisten pitää suorittaa se?
- KATJA No koska ruotsi on suomen toinen virallinen kieli, ja kaikkien virkamiesten pitää pystyä hoitamaan asiat kummallakin kielellä. Suomen väestöstä on 6% (kuus prosenttia) ruotsinkielisiä. Lähes loput onki(n) sitte(n) suomenkielisiä, ku(n) Suomessa on tosi vähän ulkomaalaisia. Tosin Lapissa saamen kieli on virallinen kieli.
- NICK Nii(n), mä olen huomannu(t), että suomalaiset on kielen ja uskonnon suhteen aika yhtenäistä porukkaa. Eiks suurin osa suomalaisista ole luterilaista uskonnoltaan?<sup>‡</sup>
- CATJA On. Eiköhän se luku ole jotain 86%. Ortodoksisia on vain noin 1% väestöstä ja muitten uskontojen osuus on vielä pienempi.

[Nick comes over to Katja's place.]

- KATJA [opens the door] Hi Nick. It's great you've come to visit.

  My head was beginning to spin from swotting up Swedish.
- NICK You must have some good reason to be reading it, right?
- KATJA Well, yes. Tomorrow's the compulsory Swedish language exam, which you've got to get through in order to graduate. It's required of all students.
- NICK Ouch. Why do Finnish speakers have to sit it?
- KATJA Well, it's because Swedish is Finland's other official language, and every official has to be able to carry on business (lit. 'take care of things') in both languages. About 6 per cent of Finland's population is Swedish-speaking. Nearly (all) the rest are of course Finnish-speaking, since there are really very few foreigners in Finland. Saami (= 'Lappish') is an official language in Lappi, of course.
- NICK Yes, I've noticed that Finns are a pretty homogeneous bunch as regards language and religion. Aren't the greatest part of Finns Lutherans by (their) faith?
- KATJA Yes. I think the figure is something like 86 per cent. Orthodox make up only about 1 per cent of the population, and the proportion of the other religions is even smaller.

<sup>\*</sup> Mu|lla alko(i)|kin olla jo pää sekaisin ruotsi|n pänttää|mise|stä 'My head was beginning to spin from swotting up Swedish', 'I was beginning to have (my) head mixed up . . . '

bunch, gang

porukka

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> uskonno|Ita|an 'by (their) religion'.



ai!

## Vocabulary

ı			<b>P</b>	
l	alkokin >		prosentti	per cent
l	alkoi∣kin		pysty-	be (cap)able
l	aukaise-	open	pänttäX-	grind, swot, cram
l	joka	which (relative	saame*	Saami
l		pronoun)	sekaisin	mixed up,
ı	joku	every		muddled
l	Xn∣kielinen	X-speaking	X n suhte en	as regards X
l	kummalla kin	` '	suhteQ	relation (sN suhde)
l		(Unit 8)	suoritta-	do, execute
l	käy-	visit, pass by	syy	reason, cause
l	lopu t	(all) the rest, (all)	tentti	examination
l	luk u	the others figure, number;	to inen	the other (of two);
l	i di i q	chapter		second
l	luterilainen	Lutheran	tos i n	to be sure; granted
l	lähe∣s	nearly	ulk o+maa lainen	foreigner
I	läp∣äise-	passes (exam); penetrates	usko nto	religion
l	mies	man (stem:	vaati-	demand, require
l		miehe-)	vai?	right? (question tag)
l	mu∣i∣tten	pG of <b>muu</b>	vira llinen	official (virka
l	ortodoksinen	orthodox	VII GIIIII CII	office)
l	osa	part	virka+mies	official (used also
l	os uus te	(pro)portion		of women)
l	pakko	necessity	väe∣stö	population
l	pako llinen	obligatory,	väki e	people
		compulsory	yhtenäinen	uniform,
	pitä∣ä	be necessary		homogeneous

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> joka pitälä läpäisltä, ennen kun pääsele yliopistosta lit. 'which one has to get through before one gets out of university'; Katja uses the generic construction, omitting personal pronouns and using third person singular verb forms to distance herself a bit from the context: contrast joka *mun* pitää läpäistä, ennen kun *mä* pääsen yliopistosta.

\* A marginal, but growing, group of nouns have stems ending in **e** but do not change this to **i** in either the citation form or the plural. To this group belong, besides **saame** 'Saam(i)', **ale** 'sale; reduced prices in shop', **nukke** 'doll', **nalle** 'teddy bear', and **kurre** '(children's word for) squirrel', many slang items such as **fade** 'father' and **ope** 'teacher', and all given names ending in **e**, such as **Kalle**, **Rasse**. (There's a good-sized list of Finnish given names in Appendix C at the back of this book.)

### Language point



#### Forming and using the conditional mood

This corresponds roughly to English forms made with 'would', or to past tense forms like 'asked', as in 'If they asked me (=if they were to ask me), I would tell them'. The Finnish conditional is quite easy to form. Its suffix is -isi-, which you add directly to the stem of the verb. The only changes which occur at the ends of verb stems are these:

1 The long vowels and diphthongs at the end of class IV verbs are reduced, as in the past tense:

Stem	syö-	reagoi-
present	syö n	reagoi n
past	sö i n	reago i n
conditional	sö isi n	reago isi n
English	eat	react

2 Also, as in the past tense, any **e** at the end of a class I or III verb is deleted:

Stem	luke-	mene-
present past conditional English	lue n lu i n luk isi n read	mene n men i n men isi n

3 The **X** at the end of class II verbs is read as **A** (as in the present tense); contrast the past tense, where **X** is read as **s**:

Stem	haluX-	kerkiX-
present past conditional	halua∣n halus∣i∣n halua∣isi∣n	kerkiä n kerkis i n kerkiä isi n
English	want	have time

and the **X** of **(E)XE**-stems is realized as **n**, as usual: **hinnat halpen**|**isi**|**vat** 'prices would get cheaper'.

As in the past tense, there is no lengthening of the vowel in the third person singular:

Se sanoisi, jos se haluaisi sitä. (S)he would say, if (s)he wanted it.

Negative forms are made with the negative verb plus the conditional connegative. This form looks like the third person singular, but since it has the connegative suffix -Q at the end you will hear, and should pronounce, the usual lengthened consonants, for example:

**En haluaisi**<sup>m</sup> **mennä sinne.** I wouldn't want to go there.

To form the indefinite conditional, chop the **U** off the past passive participle and add **Aisiin**:

	class I	class II	class III	class IV
past passive participle indefinite conditional	•	maini∣ttu maini∣ttaisiin	men ty men täisiin	saa∣tu saa∣taisiin

The corresponding negative forms are **ei annettaisi**, **ei mainittaisi**, **ei mentäisi**, **ei saataisi**.

In colloquial speech, the endings **Aisiin** and **Aisi** are both commonly pronounced **As**, so you will usually hear **annettas**, **mainittas**, **mentäs**, and **saatas** in both positive and negative sentences, for example:

Mitä me tehtäis siellä? What would we do there?

Me ei sanottas mitään. We wouldn't say anything.

The past conditional is simply the verb 'to be', **ole**-, in the conditional plus the past active participle, for example:

Mä olisin mennyt, jos olisin ehtinyt.

Sä et olisi saanut istumapaikkaa.

Jos olisin tiennyt, en olisi sanonut sitä.

I would have gone if I'd had time.

You wouldn't have got a seat.

If I had known, I wouldn't have said it.

In parallel fashion, the *past indefinite conditional* is simply the negative indefinite conditional of the verb 'to be' (**ei oltas**) plus the past *passive* participle:

Me ei oltas menty sinne kuitenkaan.

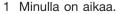
We wouldn't have gone there anyway.

The conditional has three main uses:

- 1 To mitigate (usually) first person statements which might otherwise seem too brusque, as in Mä otta|isi|n suuremman 'I would (like to) take the larger one' (rather than the simple present: Mä ota|n suuremman 'I'll take the larger one'); in (usually) second and third person forms; on the other hand, the conditional can express exasperation: Tek|isi|t sinäkin jotain 'You could do something (but you're not, in other words: Why don't you do something, too?)'.
- 2 To refer to things that don't (or didn't) really happen, in other words, to the contrary-to-fact. As the name 'conditional' suggests, one such counterfactual is a condition, for example, **Jos minulla olisi aikaa...** 'If I had time (but I don't)...'. The conditional also expresses what would happen if the condition were to be met: ... **mä lähtisin heti** 'I would leave at once'. Note also the negative **Jos ei sataisi, mä lähtisin heti** 'If it weren't raining, I'd leave at once'.
- 3 To express fond hopes, e.g. Jospa mä tietä|isi|n 'If I only knew'.

### Exercise 2

Change these statements into wishes by putting the verb into the conditional (remember to use **jospa** 'if only'):



- 2 Mä tiedän, mitä sä tarkoitat.
- 3 Sä jäät vähäks aikaa.
- 4 Me ei tehdä sitä.
- 5 Me ei menty sinne eilen.





### Language point

#### More on modals

Back in Unit 3, you learned how to use modal constructions like that of **Mä haluaisin ostaa kartan** 'I'd like to buy a map'. In such sentences, the subject is in the nominative. Alongside verbs of wanting (**haluX**-) and intending (**aiko**-), many verbs which express different types of ability occur in this type of construction: **voi**- 'is able', **pysty**- 'is capable', **osaX**- and **taita**- 'knows how', **ehti**- and **kerkiX**- 'has time'.

But there is also a second type of modal construction, one in which the subject is less in control, the subject's feelings and intentions are of less importance, or both. Verbs which enter into this type of construction include pitä|ä and täyty|y 'it is necessary' and the expressions on pakko 'it is necessary', on tärkeä 'it is important', on vaikea 'it is difficult', on helppo 'it is easy'. In this second type of modal construction, the subject is demoted: it is put into the genitive, and the verb or pakko-like expression is always in the third person singular. Any direct object nominals are put in the nominative and partitive (compare object forms used with the indefinite). For example:

Mu|n pitä|ä soitta|a kotiin. Häne|n täyty|y osta|a uusi auto.

Peka|n on helppo poike|ta sinne.

Me|idän on pakko löytä|ä häne|t.

Sitä mu|n on vaikea usko|a. Ei meidä|n tarvitse lähteä vielä. I have to phone home. (S)he has to buy a new car.

It's easy for Pete to drop in there.

We must find him/her.

That's difficult for me to believe. We don't have to leave yet.

This kind of modal construction is quite common with the conditional, especially of **pitä**-, which then means something like English 'ought', 'should'. For example:

Ei su|n pitäis sanoa sitä. Meidä|n pitäis soittaa sille. You shouldn't say it.
We ought to call him/her.

As in English, the negative of 'must' is not 'mustn't'. Negating the verb **pitä**- gives **ei pidä**, which means 'it isn't necessary'. To say 'one musn't', you use the negative of **saa**- 'one is permitted, one gets to X'.

### Exercise 3

Say in Finnish:

- 1 I have to go home.
- 2 Irma might know about that.
- 3 They don't feel like coming with us.
- 4 Where are you thinking of going this evening?
- 5 She ended up writing the whole letter.
- 6 It's important for me to exercise (voimistele-) at least three times a week.
- 7 We ought to write to him.
- 8 You don't have to answer.
- 9 You mustn't answer

### Exercise 4

Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences; if you get stuck, raid the dialogue on language and religion earlier in this unit. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

- 1 You must have a good reason for doing it, right?
- 2 It's required of all students.
- 3 Swedish is Finland's other official language.
- 4 Don't the majority of Finns also know Swedish?
- 5 In France all officials have to know French.

### Language point

# More on possession: the personal (possessive) suffixes

m(in)u|n vihko my notebook (colloquial)
vihko|ni my notebook (more formal)

As you learned in Unit 1, Finnish has personal suffixes for its verbs, such as first person singular -n in mä soita|n sulle 'l'll call you' and second person plural -tte in Voi|tte|ko auttaa minua? 'Can you help me?'

But Finnish nouns can also take personal suffixes. You will sometimes encounter them in colloquial Finnish, and far more frequently







in more formal	Finnish.	They n	nost ι	usually	indicate	possession,	SO
we'll call them	possessiv	e suffix	ces fro	m now	on. Stu	dy the forms	:

	Singular		Plural
1	-ni		-mme
2	-si		-nne
3		-nsA/-#n	

You will see that only one of these suffixes is identical to its verbal analogue: the first person plural **-mme**.

There is another important difference: despite their appearance, the suffixes -mme, -nne, and -nsA are not 'tight lids', so they don't compress consonants to their left. For example, the t of koti and katu remain uncompressed in koti|mme 'our home', and katu|nne 'your (formal) street'.

In the third person, the same suffix is used for both singular and plural; the distinction is maintained by the genitive form of the appropriate personal pronoun, häne|n 'his/her' or heidä|n 'their': so hänen kirja|nsa is 'her/his book', but heidän kirja|nsa is 'their book'. This pronoun is not used, however, if the possessor is the same person as the subject of the sentence. For example, Anne ei halunnut sanoa nime|ä|än means 'Anne didn't want to say her (own) name', but in the sentence Anne ei halunnut sanoa hänen nime|ä|än, Anne is protecting someone else's identity: hänen refers to some person other than Anne.

As for the difference between the variants (-nsA versus -#n) of this suffix: the -nsA variant is always used in the nominative, genitive, and illative, both singular and plural. In the other cases it is a matter of style: you will come across forms built with -nsA, but -#n is much more common.

The possessive suffixes always come *after* any case suffix, but *before* any of the enclitics --kin/--kAAn, --kO, --pA, --hAn, --s. For example:

huonee|ssa|mme|ko in our room? ystäv|i|stä|si|hän about your friends, you know . . .

sINE Vihko löydettiin heidän huonee|sta|an.
The notebook was found in their room.

pELA **Mä puhuin hänen ystäv**|i|stä|än. I was talking about her friends.

#### sP En mä nyt muista hänen nime | ä | än.

I don't remember his name now.

If a case suffix ends in a consonant, this consonant is obliterated without a trace when a possessive suffix follows. This means that the forms of the nominative and genitive singular and of the nominative plural all look and sound alike when followed by possessives. Have a look at these examples:

Plain		Possessed (third person singular)
sN	käsi	(hänen) käte∣nsä
sG	käde∣n	(hänen) käte∣nsä
pN	käde∣t	(hänen) käte∣nsä

Nouns which have genitives plural in both -den and -tten (Unit 9) use only the latter form when a possessive suffix is attached: thus we have hampa|i|den/hampa|i|tten but only hänen hampa|i|tte|nsa 'his/her teeth'.

Possessive suffixes are also attached to postpositions which take the genitive; the rules are the same as with ordinary nouns. Thus we have, for example:

#### Mä kuulin naisen äänen (meidän) takalnalmme.

I heard a woman's voice behind us.

#### Paketti oli avoinna hänen viere|ssä|än penkillä.

The package was open next to him on the bench.

#### Poika veti tuolin hänen al|ta|nsa.

The boy pulled the chair out from under him/her.

#### Minun oli pakko nousta vaunuun hänen peräjssäjän.

I had to get into the (railway) car behind him.

#### He seisoivat edelleen edelssälni.

They were still standing in front of me.

Here are a few more examples of the possessive suffixes in action:

#### Mitä te pidätte tästä meidän kaupungi|sta|mme?

What do you think of this town of ours?

#### Pari päivää sitten minä sain poja|Ita|nne šekin.

A couple of days ago I received a cheque from your son.

#### Heidän riita nsa kävi yhä kiihkeämmäksi.

Their argument got more and more heated.

#### Tarvitsen apulalnne.

I need your help.

#### Autoin takin hänen y|ltä|än.

I helped him/her off with his/her coat. (lit. 'I helped the coat off him/her'.)

#### Se vaihtoi paremman puvun pää|lle|en.

(S)he put a better dress/suit on. (lit. 'changed a better dress/suit onto him/her(self)'.)

#### Hän katsoi ympäri|lle|en.

(S)he looked around him/her(self).

Finally, you should be aware of the fact that many adverbial expressions which would have no person-marking in English are built with possessive suffixes in Finnish. For example, 'in earnest, seriously' is the plural inessive of tosi 'true', tos|i|ssa, plus the appropriate possessive suffix: Sanoitsä tos|i|ssa|si? is 'Did you really mean it?' 'The door is ajar' in Finnish becomes 'The door is on its crack', Ovi on rao|lla|an, and 'l'll leave the door ajar' is Mä jätän oven rao|lle|en (adessive and allative of rako 'crack, slit'). Other examples are:

Adverb	English	Tighter translation
ede lle en	still	to its fore
uude lle en	again	at its new
uude sta an	again	out of its new
kerra ssa an	utterly	in its time
kerra lla an	at a time	at its time
viimeis tä än	at the latest	its last (sP)
tyhj∣i∣llä∣än	vacant	at its empties
oikea sta an	actually	out of its correct
enimmä kse en	for the most part	to its most (sTRA)*
kirjaime lle en	literally	to its letter (sALL)
hilja lle en	slowly, gradually	to its quiet

<sup>\*</sup> Notice that the translative suffix -ksi becomes -kse- before possessive suffixes.

### Exercise 5



- 1 Juoksin hänen huoneeseensa.
- 2 Minun oli vaikea ymmärtää hänen puhettaan.
- 3 Hänen vaimonsa odottaa lasta.
- 4 Pane sitä minun kuppiini.
- 5 Nyt on teidän vuoronne.
- 6 Olen ollut neljä kertaa hänen luonaan.

### Exercise 6

Check your understanding of possessive suffixes by translating these sentences into Finnish:



- 1 He was standing behind us.
- 2 The keys were found in your (formal) room.
- 3 She didn't want to introduce her friend.
- 4 Why are you (informal) shaking (pudista-) your head?
- 5 He drank half (puole|t) of his beer.

### Language point



# Vocabulary building: nominals from verbs and vice versa, and a note on vowel harmony

In this and previous units you have met many nominals which are built from verbs, and many verbs which are built from nominals. In this section we'll round all these up and look at them a little more systematically.

Many nominal/verb pairs differ only in their last vowel, so it is well worth your while to pay close attention to this. For example, in these pairs:



	word	sauna	bread	needle
nominal	sana	sauna	leipä	neula-
verb	sano-	sauno-	leipo-	neulo-
	say	use sauna	bake	sew, knit

the verbs all differ from their nominals in that they end in  $\mathbf{o}$  because the derivational suffix = $\mathbf{O}$  has been added to their stem. The following pairs, on the other hand, all have verbs that end in the derivational suffix = $\mathbf{U}$  (i.e.  $\mathbf{u}$  or  $\mathbf{y}$ , according to vowel harmony; see below):

	dry	ripe	one	black
nominal	kuiva	kypsä	yksi	musta
verb	kuivu-	kypsy-	yhty-	mustu-
	dry	ripen	unite	blacken

With the following pairs, it is the *nominals* which are built with the =**U** suffix:

	beginning	laughter	entrance	wash	bill
nominal	alku	nauru	pääsy	pesu	maksu
verb	alka-	naura-	pääse-	pese-	maksa-
	begin	laugh	get	wash	pay, cost

but the nominals of these pairs are built with =**O** (i.e. **o** or  $\ddot{\mathbf{o}}$ , according to vowel harmony; see below):

	departure	skiing	memory	victory	fact	soup
nominal	lähtö	hiihto	muisto	voitto	tieto	keitto
verb	lähte-	hiihtä-	muista-	voitta-	tietä-	keittä-
	leave	ski	remember	win	know	cook

You will notice that the vowel harmony of word formation differs somewhat from that of inflection. The front vowel variants of many derivational suffixes, for example, the  $\ddot{\mathbf{o}}$  of the suffix  $\mathbf{O}$  and the  $\mathbf{y}$  of the suffix  $\mathbf{U}$ , occur only if an  $\mathbf{y}$ ,  $\ddot{\mathbf{o}}$ , or  $\ddot{\mathbf{a}}$  occurs earlier in the word. We therefore have  $\ddot{\mathbf{laht}}|\ddot{\mathbf{o}}$  'departure' but  $\ddot{\mathbf{tiet}}|\mathbf{o}$  'fact';  $\ddot{\mathbf{pääs}}|\mathbf{y}$  'entrance' but  $\ddot{\mathbf{pes}}|\mathbf{u}$  'wash'.

You have already met four of the most common suffixes which build nouns from verbs. These are the suffix of the verbal noun, =**minen** (Unit 3), the suffix =**iME**, which builds the names of many tools and instruments (Units 5 and 7), and the suffix of the third infinitive (Unit 6), =**mA**. Finally, there is the suffix =**jA**, first introduced in Unit 1, which builds the names of agents. Notice that any stem-final **e** changes to **i** before this suffix, for example, **luki**|**ja** 'reader' from **luke**- 'reads'.

### Exercise 7



Example: if the noun **laulu** means 'song', what does the verb **laula**- mean? (Answer: 'to sing').

- 1 verb hoita- 'to care for', noun hoito
- 2 verb huuta- 'to shout', noun huuto
- 3 verb pääse- 'manage to get somewhere', noun pääsy
- 4 noun luulo 'belief', verb luule-
- 5 verb alka- 'to begin', noun alku
- 6 verb pitä- 'to hold', noun pito
- 7 verb sano- 'to say', noun sana
- 8 verb luke- 'to read, count', noun luku

## Dialogue 3



### Sovitaan tapaaminen Let's make a date (CD1; 50)



Two friends quickly arrange a place and time to meet.

VILLE [huutaa] Hei Kalle, oota vähän! KALLE Moi Ville! Mitäs sulle?

VILLE Ei mitään ihmeempää. Kuule, me sovittiin poikien

kanssa ett tavataan 'Häppärissä' kuudelta.

KALLE Mitä kello on nvt?

VILLE Puol viis.

KALLE Mun täytyy hoitaa ensin pari juttuu, mut mä voisin

tulla sitte, joskus seitsemän maissa.

VILLE Tuu sit ku kerkiit, me ootetaan siellä.

VILLE [shouts] Hey Kalle, wait a bit!

KALLE Yo Ville! What's up?

VILLE Nothing special. Listen, me and the boys've decided

to meet at the 'Häppäri' at six.

KALLE What time's it now?

VILLE Half four.

I have to sort a few things first, but I could come KALLE

later, sometime around seven.

Come when you can, we'll be waiting for you there. VILLE



## Vocabulary

hoita-	take care of, see to, sort	oota > odota ootetaan >	
huuta-	shout	odote taan	
ei ihmee mpä ä	not bad	puol > puoli	
juttuu > juttu a		sopi-	agree (tr)
X∣n kanssa	with X	tapaa minen,	meet
kerkiit > kerkiä t		tapaX-	
X n ma i ssa	at about X	täyty∣y	it is necessary
	(o'clock)	tuu > tule	



## PK Dialogue 4



#### Suomenlinna (CD1; 51)

Varpu and Sanna decide to do a day trip to the Suomenlinna, a fortress built by Sweden in 1746. You can read more about Suomenlinna in Unit 14.

SANNA Hei mitä tehtäs\* tänään?

VARPU Mä en oo ollu pitkään aikaan Suomenlinnassa. Voitas\* tehdä päiväretki sinne.

SANNA Joo. Soitetaan Marille ja pyydetään se mukaan.

Sovitaan että tavataan Kauppatorilla Suomenlinnan lauttojen VARPU luona vaikka kaheltatoista.

SANNA Onkohan siellä mitään mielenkiintoista näyttelyä meneillä?

VARPU Täytyy kattoo Hesarista. Ootsä käyny koskaan siinä

sukellusveneessä?

SANNA Vesikossa vai. En, mut en tiiä<sup>†</sup> kiinnostaaks mua sukellusveneet. Mieluummin mä otan sit aurinkoa kallioilla.

VARPU No katotaan sit siellä mitä tehdään.

SANNA Marillakin voi olla ideoita. Mä meen nyt soittaa sille.

SANNA Hey, what can we do today?

VARPU I haven't been to the Suomenlinna for a long time. We could do a day trip (to) there.

SANNA Yeah. Let's call Mari and ask her along.

VARPU Let's agree to meet in the market, at the ferries, at say twelve (o'clock).

SANNA Is there any interesting exhibition (going) on there, I wonder?

VARPU Have to look in the paper (= Helsingi|n Sanoma|t). Have you ever been in the diving boat there?

SANNA (You mean) in the 'mink', right? No, but I dunno whether I'm interested in diving boats. I'd rather just catch some sun on the cliffs.

VARPU Well, let's just see what we'll do (when we get) there.

SANNA Mari might have some ideas, too. I'll go and phone her now.

Vocabulary

mielen+kiintoinen

Hesari > Helsingi∣n Sanoma∣t	Helsinki's (and Finland's)	mieluu mm in	rather, for preference
	leading	(X n) muka an	along (with X)
	newspaper	nä y tt el y	exhibit(ion)
idea	idea	päivä+retki e	day trip
kallio	cliff	sukellus <i>k</i> se	diving
kattoo > katso a		veneQ	boat
kiinnosta-	interest	veneg	Duai
		vesikko	mink; name of a
lautta	ferry		submarine at
mene i llä( än)	going on		Suomenlinna

interesting

<sup>\*</sup> tehtäs, voitas are colloquial pronunciations of tehtäisiin, voitaisiin.

<sup>†</sup> tiiä = a colloquial pronunciation of tiedä.



# Exercise 8

Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences by raiding the two dialogues above. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

- 1 I'd rather have some coffee on the balcony.
- 2 What time is it now? Three-thirty.
- 3 Me and the girls've decided to meet on Esplanaadi at eight.
- 4 Let's see what we'll do when we get there.
- 5 I have to sort a few things first.



# 🙆 Language point

## One further note on vowel harmony

The simple vowel harmony rule given in Unit 1 works most of the time, but as you have seen in the previous section, there are certain extra details to be aware of. Here we look at one more.

Certain foreign words like amatööri 'amateur', karikatyyri 'caricature' complicate the picture. These words contain a vowel from the set u, o, a, but they also contain, further along in the body of the word, a vowel from the set y, ö, ä, and no further u's, o's, or a's. Usage fluctuates, but more often than not these words also take the y, ö, ä, forms of suffixes with U, O, A. So we have amatööri|Ilä, karikatyyri|ä. Contrast asymmetria 'asymmetry', which, with the sequence a-y-a, takes u, o, a forms, for example, asymmetria|sta, or mysteeria 'mystery', which has, thanks to its stem-final a and despite the preceding y, ee, and i, partitive plural mysteerio|i|ta.

# Unit Eleven

# Yhä nopeammin

More and more quickly

## In this unit you will:

- learn more about Finnish winter festivities
- learn how to form ordinal numerals and fractions
- · read about Finnish parliament, and about Senate Square
- · learn about comparative and superlative adverbs
- systematize your knowledge of words for 'some', 'every', 'all', 'many' and 'few'

# Dialogue 1



Paul goes to a travel agent's to buy air tickets to Stockholm, and finds out where he can change some money. **Toimisto|virkailija** ('office official') is something like 'agent'.

PAUL Päivää, mitä maksaa lento Helsingistä

Tukholmaan?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Katsotaanpa, edestakainenko?

PAUL Eiku yhteen suuntaan.

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Sata euroa yhteen suuntaan plus viis euroa

toimistokuluja, joten se tekee sataviis euroa

yhteensä.







PAUL Onks vielä paikkoja jäljellä huomenna?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Hetki, SASilla vai Finnairilla?

PAUL Ei sillä ole väliä.\* Joskus iltapäivällä jos on tilaa. TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Viistoista kolmekymmentä Finnairin koneessa on

vielä paikkoja.

PAUL Varataan se. Voiko täällä maksaa Visalla?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Totta kai.

PAUL Mä tarvitsen kruunuja. Missä voi vaihtaa rahaa?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Rahaa voi vaihtaa pankissa kadun toisella

puolella.

PAUL Sopiiko että tulen hakemaan lipun noin tunnin

päästä?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA Lippunne on silloin valmiina. Voitte hakea sen

tuolta tiskiltä.

<sup>\*</sup> Ei sillä (ole) väli|ä 'lt doesn't matter'.



# Vocabulary

There'll be no more translations of dialogues from now on, since you should be getting the hang of it by now. There's a lot of help with the trickier forms in this vocabulary though; you can look up the stems in the glossary at the back of this book and in the grammatical sections to which they are cross-referenced.

ede s+taka inen	return (trip, ticket)	pankki	bank
hake-	fetch; apply for	plus	plus
joten	(and) so	puoli e	side, half
jälje∣llä	left (over)	tila	space, room
katso taan pa	let's see	tiski	counter, desk
koneQ	machine; plane	toimi sto	office
kruunu	crown; (Swedish)	vaihta-	change (tr)
	krona	varaX-	book, reserve
kulu t	expenses	yhte ensä	all together
lent o	flight	yhte en	(into) one direction,
luott o+kortti	credit card	suunta∣an	i.e. single
paikka	place; seat		

# Exercise 1



Raid the dialogue above to write your own, in which two friends discuss what flight arrangements they'd like to make, where they'll buy the tickets, where they'll change money, and so on.

# Dialogue 2



# Pikkujoulu Little Christmas (CD1; 53)



In the two or three weeks leading up to the real Christmas, Finns usually throw and go to a number of 'Little Christmas' (pikku|joulu) parties at clubs, at work, and among various circles of friends. The following dialogue is in two parts: part one is an invitation (kutsu) to a pikkujoulu celebration; the second part is set at the party itself, where Jane samples some traditional Little Christmas fare, including some mulled wine (glögi|ä) and gingersnaps (piparkakku|j|a, pipare|i|ta).

#### Kutsu

JANE Hei Mikko!

MIKKO Moi Jane, olipa hyvä että tavattiin.\*

JANE Ai miks(i)?

MIKKO Ensi lauantaina mulla on pikkujoulut. Pääset sä tulemaan?

JANE Mikä se pikkujoulu on?

MIKKO No, se on semmonen juhla, jota vietetään ystävien ja

työtovereiden kanssa ennen joulua. Yleensä niissä juodaan

paljon glögiä ja syödään piparkakkuja.

JANE Ai mitä?

мікко Tuu lauantaina kuudelta niin näet!

JANE Kiitos, tuun mielelläni.

## Pikkujouluissa

[Ovikello soi. Mikko avaa oven.]

MIKKO Moi tuu sisään. Kiva ku tulit.

JANE [ojentaa paketin] Tässä sulle tuliainen.

мікко Kiitos. Ota olla glögiä. Se on ku kuumaa punaviiniä ja siinä

on rusinoita ja manteleita.

JANE [maistaa glögiä] Hyvää!

MIKKO Ota myös pipareita.

JANE Leivoit sä ne itse?

мікко No, äiti auttoi vähän. Tule niin esittelen sut muille.

<sup>\*</sup> olipa hyvä että tavattiin 'it's a good thing we've run into one another' (Unit 6).



# Vocabulary

ai	oh!	pipar+kakku	gingersnap
esittele-	introduce	pipari >	
glögi	mulled wine	piparkakku	
jo ta	which (relative	puna+viini	red wine
	pronoun)	rusina	raisin
juhla	celebration	semmonen	sort of a, a kind of
manteli	almond	soi-	ring, (re)sound
miele llä ni	gladly	tuliainen	present given by
ojenta-	pass, extend, offer		person arriving
ovi kello	doorbell	tuliaise t	party given for person
paketti	package		arriving
1	. 0	työ+toveri	work colleague

# Language point

The relative pronouns: jo|ka and mi|kä

This mi|kä is the same as the interrogative pronoun first introduced in Unit 3. However, we are *not* talking here about the indeclinable joka, which means 'each, every'. This jo|ka is an entirely different

word; you use it to link clauses, analogous to English 'who', 'which', and 'that':

## Se on mies, joka on ollut töissä pankissa.

It's a man who has worked in a bank.

## Se on tehtävä, joka kysyy aikaa ja vaivaa.

It's a task which calls for time and hard work.

## Toi on se poika, jo|ka löi ikkunan rikki.

That's the boy that broke the window.

Unlike English, Finnish can't leave the little link-word out:

## Tossa on se ikkuna, jo∣n∣ka poika löi rikki.

There's the window (that) the boy broke.

As you can see from the last example, jo|ka declines, i.e. it takes case suffixes: jo|ka is the nominative singular, jo|n|ka is the genitive singular (indicating the accusative in the example above), and jo|ta is the partitive singular, as in

## Tämä on se, jolta etsin.

This is the one (that) I was looking for.

## Se on asia, jo|ta mun on vaikea todistaa.

It is a thing which it is difficult for me to prove.

As a rule, **jo|ka** is more concrete, and **mi|kä** is more abstract. Here are their full paradigms:

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N	jo∣ka	mi∣kä	jo t ka	mi t kä
G	jo∣n∣ka	mi n kä	jo i den	= sG
Р	jo∣ta	mi∣tä	jo i ta	= sP
ELA	jo∣sta	mi∣stä	jo∣i∣sta	= sELA
INE	jo∣ssa	mi∣ssä	jo∣i∣ssa	= sINE
ILL	jo∣hon	mi∣hin	jo∣i∣hin	= sILL
ABL	jo∣lta	mi∣ltä	jo∣i∣lta	= sABL
ADE	jo∣lla	mi∣llä	jo∣i∣lla	= sADE
ALL	jo∣lle	mi∣lle	jo i lle	= sALL
ESS	jo∣na	mi∣nä	jo∣i∣na	= sESS
TRA	jo∣ksi	mi∣ksi	jo∣i∣ksi	= sTRA

Notice that the forms of jo|ka and mi|kä run parallel right through to the plural nominative (jo|t|ka, mi|t|kä). They then part company: other than mi|t|kä, the plural forms of mi|kä are identical to its singular forms, while jo|ka has a plural stem jo|i-.

Study these further examples of the relative pronouns in action:

## Tarina kertoo suomalaisesta taksikuskista, jo∣lla on italialainen vaimo.

The tale tells of a Finnish taxi driver who has an Italian wife.

# Pankeissa on paljon väkeä, jo|i|lta nykyaikainen tietotekniikka vie työpaikan.

There are many people in banks *from whom* today's information technology is going to take (their) job.

# Hän aina tervehtii minua, *mi∖kä* on outoa, sillä mä en tunne häntä.

(S)he always greets me, which is strange, since I don't know him/her.

## Viinistä se sanoi saman, mi|n|kä se sanoi musiikistakin.

(S)he said the same (thing) about the wine (that) (s)he said about the music.

## Mä teen mi|n|kä taidan.

I'll do what I can.



Combine the sentences under A and B with the appropriate form of the relative pronoun.

Malli: (A) **Kuka toi nainen on** 'Who's that woman?' + (B) **Naisella on punaiset kengät** 'The woman has red shoes' →

# Kuka toi nainen on, jollla on punaiset kengät? Who's that woman who has red shoes?

A B
1 Tämä on se huone. Me puhuttiin siitä.
2 Noi kirjat on mun. Ne on ylimmäisellä hyllyllä.
3 Se sanakirja on parempi. Mä unohdin sen kotiin.
4 Uusi opettaja tulee huomenna. Te ette tunne häntä.

# Dialogue 3



## Helmikuun juhlista February festivities (CD1; 54)



February may be the shortest month, but in Finland it's crammed full of special days. In the following three-part dialogue, friends talk about Runeberg Day, sledding on Shrove Tuesday, and Kalevala Day.

## Runebergin päivä

ROBERT Miksi tänään liputetaan?

LIISA 5. (viides) helmikuuta on Runebergin päivä. Se on virallinen

liputuspäivä.

ROBERT Kuka on Runeberg?

LIISA Johan Ludwig Runeberg on Suomen kansalliskirjailija.

Hän on kirjoittanut sanat *Maamme lauluun*, Suomen kansallislauluun. Hän on myös kirjoittanut kirjan *Vänrikki Stoolin tarinat*, joka kertoo Suomensodasta 1808–1809. Tiesitkö että vuonna 1809 Suomesta tuli osa Venäjän keisarikuntaa? Aikaisemmin Suomi oli osa Ruotsia.

ROBERT Liittyyks Runebergin päivään erityisiä tapoja?

LIISA Runebergin vaimo Frederika leipoi sille torttuja. Nykyään

niitä kutsutaan Runebergin tortuiksi ja niitä syödään

Runebergin päivän tienoilla.

#### Laskiainen

ULLA Läheks pulkkamäkeen?

JOHN Ai tänäänkö?

ULLA Eiku huomenna, ku on laskiaistiistai.

JOHN Ai niin, Eeva kysykin multa sitä viime viikolla.

ULLA No sitten se varmaan kertokin sulle, että pulkkamäen jälkeen mennään sen luo syömään hernekeittoa ja laskiaispullia.

## Kalevalanpäivä (28.2)

[Helsingin Akateemisessa kirjakaupassa. Kalevala on Suomen kansalliseepos.]

KAIJA Mä olen menossa pääsiäisenä New Yorkiin, Markin perheen luo. Mitä mä voisin viedä sinne tuliaisiksi?

ANNE Hei osta Kalevala. Senhän saa englanninkielisenä.

KAIJA Hyvä idea!

ANNE Muista sitte mainita Elias Lönnrothista ja sen runonkeruumatkoista ympäri Karjalaa 1800 – luvulla.

KAIJA Niin, Kalevalahan on tärkein suomalainen teos, johon on kerätty vuosisatoja suusta suuhun kulkeneita kansantarinoita.



# Vocabulary

akateeminen	academic	laul∣u	song, anthem
eepos kse	epic	liitty-	be attached, be
erityinen	special		associated
herneQ	pea	lipu∣tta-	fly flag (lippu)
kansallis+	national	1800-luvu∣lla	in the nineteenth
kansa n+tarina	folk tale		century
Karjala	Karelia	läheks > lähdetkö sä	
keisari+kunta	empire		land country
keräX-	collect, gather	maa	land, country
kerto kin, kerta-	(s3 pt)	nyky ä än	nowadays
keruu	` ' '	perheQ	family
Keruu	collecting, gathering	pulkka	a kind of sled
kirja+kaupa	bookshop	pääsiäinen	Easter
kirjaili∣ja	writer, author	runo	poem
kulke ne i ta	which have gone/	suu sta suu hun	from mouth to mouth
	travelled	·	
laskiainen	Lent	tapa	custom, way
laskiais+pulla	Lent bun	tarina	tale
laskiais+tiistai	Shrove Tuesday	vänrikki	ensign

# Language point

# Q

## Comparative and superlative adverbs

Here we have the equivalents of English expressions such as 'more quickly' and 'the most easily'.

To form these, you add =in, a 'tight-lid' suffix, to the comparative or superlative stem of the adjective. These stems both end in MPA, and =in cancels the final A and compresses the MP to mm. For example, 'more quickly' is nopeammin (stem: nopea|mpa-), and 'most quickly' is nopeimmin (stem: nope|impa-).

The full set of adjectival and adverbial forms of **nopea** 'quick, fast' looks like this:

	Adjective	Adverb
positive	nopea	nopea∣sti
comparative	nopea∣mpi	nopea mm in
superlative	nope∣in	nope imm in

Notice the forms of these common temporal adverbs:

pian	soon	aikais∣in	early	myöhä∣än	late
pikemmin	sooner	aikaise mm in	earlier	$my\"{o}he mm in$	later
pikimmin	soonest	aikais imm in	earliest	myöh imm in	last

## Irregular are:

paljo∣n	a lot	hyv∣in	well	pia∣n	soon
enemmän	more	pare mm in	better	pike mm in	sooner
eniten	most	parha∣iten	best	pik imm in	soonest

## Examples:

Mä rakastan sua enemmän kuin koskaan.

I love you more than ever.

Se pitää maalauksesta ja kirjallisuudesta, mutta musiikki kiinnostaa sitä eniten.

(S)he likes painting and literature, but music interests him/her the most.

Note these constructions, made with miltä and se:

Mitä pikemmin, sen parempi. The sooner, the better. as soon as possible

'More and more X-lv' is expressed by yhä, as with the comparative adjective: Se juoksi vhä nopeammin '(S)he ran more and more auickly'.



## Exercise 3

Put into Finnish:

- 1 more and more simply
- 2 most easily
- 3 as soon as possible
- 4 more deeply
- 5 (S)he came earlier



# 🔀 Dialogue 4



# Parlamentti Finnish parliament (CD1; 55)

Et auttas mua vähän Petteri? Sähän teidät hyvin Suomen TIM hallintojärjestelmää.

No se riippuu vähän siitä mitä sä haluut tietää. PETTERI

Suomen presidenttihän on Tarja Halonen, mut koska siitä TIM

tuli presidentti?

Halonen valittiin presidentiks ekan kerran vuonna 2000 ja PETTERI

sitte uudestaan vuonna 2006 toiselle kaudelle. Eli se on

ollu Suomen presidentti vuodesta 2000 lähtien.

TIM Presidentin toimikausi kestää siis kuus vuotta.

PETTERI Joo, ja yks presidentti voi istua enintään kaks toimikautta.

MIT Suomessa on myös pääministeri. Mitkä sen tehtävät on?

Pääministeri on hallituksen johtaja ja hän johtaa Suomen PETTERI

sisä- ja EU-politiikkaa yhdessä presidentin kanssa.

Presidentti taas vahvistaa lait, nimittää virkamiehet ja on

valtion keulakuva ja virallisten tapahtumien isäntä.

No entä eduskunta sitten. Istuuko se neliä vai kuus vuotta? TIM

PETTERI Eduskunta istuu neljä vuotta kerrallaan.

Paljonko Suomen eduskunnassa on kansanedustajia? TIM

200 (kakssataa). Viimeset eduskuntavaalit oli maaliskuussa PETTERI

2007. Silloin Keskusta sai 51 paikkaa, Kokoomus 50

paikkaa ja Sosiaalidemokratit 45 paikkaa. Ne onkin historiallisestikin Suomen kolme suurinta puoluetta.

TIM Istuuko eduskunnassa muita puolueita?

PETTERI Joo, Vasemmistoliitto, Vihreä liitto, Kristillisdemokraatit,

Ruotsalainen kansanpuolue, ja Perussuomalaiset.

TIM Sähän tiedät tosi tosi paljon.

PETTERI Meillä oli viime viikolla kokeet Suomen politiikasta.

# Vocabulary



auttas > auttalisi (cd) connegative lähti|e|n since (lähte-) edus+kunta parliament ollu > ollut edustarepresent parlamentti = eduskunta eka > first ensimmäinen presidentti president for the first time ekaln kerraln **DuollueQ** (political) party in other words eli pää+ministeri prime minister en|in|tä|än at most (enä riippudepend, hand more) silloin then, at that time administration halli|nto sitte > sitten haluut > haluat tapahtuhappen historia||lise|sti historically tapahtu|ma event (male) host isä|ntä teh|tä|vä duty, task johtalead toimi+kausi e term of office iärie|st|el|mä system toiselle for a second kansa|n+edusta|ja MP kaudellle term kansa|n|puolueQ vaali election National Party kerra||la|an vahv|istaat a time (kerta) enforce (vahva) valiTSEkeskusta centre elect, choose keula+kuva vasemmlisto the Left figurehead kokeQ test (sN koe) vihreä green kokoomus kse coalition vira|llinen official (virka office) kristillinen Christian vuon na in the year liitt|o union, league, (vuosi e) alliance



## Ordinal numerals and fractions

'First' is **ensimmäinen** (colloquial: **eka**), and 'second' is **toinen** (**toka**). After that, the formation of ordinal numerals is regular: you add =**NTE** to every stem in the word.

In the nominative singular, =**NTE** is read as **s**. Study these forms:

cardinal ordinal	kolme kolma s third	neljä neljä s fourth	viisi viide s fifth	kuusi kuude s sixth	seit	tsemä n tsemä s enth	kahdeksa n kahdeksa s eighth
cardinal ordinal	yhdeksä  yhdeksä  ninth	•	nene∣n nene∣s	yksi toista yhdes tois eleventh	ta I	kaksi∣kyn kahdes∣k twentieth	nmentä ymmenes
cardinal ordinal	kolme kyr kolmas ky thirty-fourt	mmene:	•			•	täkahdeksa n meneskahdeksa s

Notice the change **e** > **a** in **kolma**|**s** 'third', and the fact that the teenformant **toista** remains unchanged.

In the partitive singular, the NTE is read as t, so we have kolma|t|ta,  $kymmene|t|t\ddot{a}$ .

The **nte** (compressed: **nne**) of the ordinal suffix is evident in inflected forms such as **kuude**|**nte**|**na**, **kolma**|**nne**|**ssa**, **kahdeksa**|**nne**|**ksi** in

## Se saapui marraskuun kuude nte na.

(S)he arrived on the sixth of November.

# Toimistomme on uuden rakennuksen kolma|nne|ssa kerrokse|ssa.

Our office is on the third floor of the new building.

#### Sen bruttokansantuote on lännen kahdeksa|nne|ksi suurin.

Its gross national product is the eighth largest in the West.

Notice, in the last example, the use of the translative to express ranking.

To the left of the pluralizer -i-, NTE is ns, as in kolma|ns|i|a:

## Niillä on epäluulo kolmansia puolueita kohtaan.

They are suspicious of third (political) parties.

In numerals with more than one stem, the ordinal suffix is attached to every stem and inflected equally:

# Me juhlitaan mun kuude|t|ta||kymmene|t|tä||kahdeksa|t|ta syntymäpäivä|ä|ni.

We're celebrating my 68th birthday.

Notice also how the partitive of ordinals is used in these two kinds of time expression:

## Mä tykkäsin susta eka kerta a kun mä näin sut.

I liked you the first time I saw you.

#### Mä asun täällä kolmaltita vuotita.

I've been living here for more than two years.

Here is the full paradigm of **kolmas** (stem: **kolmante**) 'third', placed alongside that of **tuhat** (stem: **tuhante**) '1,000' for comparison:

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
sN sG sP sELA sINE sILL sABL	kolmas kolmanne n kolma t ta kolmanne sta kolmanne ssa kolmante en kolmanne lta	kolmanne t kolmans i en kolmans i a kolmans i sta kolmans i ssa kolmans i in	tuhat tuhanne n tuhat ta tuhanne sta tuhanne ssa tuhante en tuhanne lta	tuhanne t tuhans i en tuhans i a tuhans i sta tuhans i ssa tuhans i in tuhans i ta
sADE sALL sESS sTRA	kolmanne lla kolmanne lle kolmante na kolmanne ksi	kolmans i lla kolmans i lle kolmans i na kolmans i ksi	tuhanne lla tuhanne lle tuhante na tuhanne ksi	tuhans∣i∣lla tuhans∣i∣lle tuhans∣i∣na tuhans∣i∣ksi

Notice that the case forms of these two words differ only in the nominative singular: the NTE of ordinals is read as s, but the NTE of 'thousand' is read as t.

#### **Fractions**

'Half' is **puoli** e. The other fractions are made by adding =**KsE** to the stem of the relevant ordinal; they all decline like other nouns ending in **KsE** (=**OKsE**, =**mUKse**; see Unit 5). In the singular nominative and partitive this suffix is read as =**s**. So, 'one-third' is **kolmannes** (stem: **kolmannekse**-).

## Examples:

kolme neliännes tä three-fourths kuusi kahdeksannesita six-eiahths twelve-sixteenths kaksitoista kuudennes|ta||toista

For fractions whose numerator is one, the use of osa 'part' is common, e.g. kuudes osa 'one-sixth' (sixth part).



# Exercise 4

Say and write out these fractions in Finnish:

- 1 3/5
- 2 4/6
- 3 7/8
- 4 2/3
- 5 22/7



# K Dialogue 5



## **Senatintori** Senate Square (CD1; 56)

[Turistineuvonnassa, rautatieasemalla]

VIRKAILIJA Päivää, voisinko jotenkin auttaa?

MR SMITH Olen juuri saapunut Helsinkiin, enkä\* oikein tiedä mistä

aloittaa. Mikä on Helsingin vanhin kaupunginosa?

VIRKAILIJA Senaatintori on vanhan Helsingin keskusta. Tori edustaa

> neoklassista tyylisuuntaa ja on rakennettu vuosina 1818–1852. Helsingistähän tuli pääkaupunki 1812.

MR SMITH Onko Senaatintorilla se iso valkoinen kirkko, joka on

monissa postikorteissa?

VIRKAILIJA Tuomiokirkko, kyllä. Senaatintorilla on myös Helsingin

vanhin kivitalo, Sederholmin talo, joka on rakennettu

rokokootyyliin 1700-luvulla (tuhatseitsemänsataa).

MR SMITH Miten parhaiten pääsen täältä Senaatintorille?

VIRKAILIJA Menkää pääovesta ulos, sitten kadun ylitettyänne

vasemmalle. Käännytte Keskuskadulle ja seuraatte sitä Aleksanterinkadulle. Sitten taas käännytte vasemmalle ja jatkatte Aleksanterinkatua kunnes tulette Senaatin torille. Tässä kartta avuksi.

MR SMITH Kiitos.

# Vocabulary



	/		
Aleksanteri n+	Alexander Street	parha∣iten	best (adv)
katu		posti+kortti	postcard
alo∣itta-	begin, start (tr)	pää+kaupunki	capital
apu	help, aid	pää+ovi e	main door
avu∣ksi, apu	(sTRA)	rakenne ttu	built
edusta-	represent	rauta+tie+asema	railway station
jatka-	continue (tr)	rokokoo	rococo
jatku-	continue (itr)	saapu-	arrive
jotenkin	in some/any way	Senaati∣n+tori	Senate Square
juuri	just; olen juuri	Senaatti	Senate
	saapunut l've just arrived	suunta	direction, tendency
Keskus+katu	Centre Street	Tuomio+kirkko	cathedral
kivi+talo	stone house	turisti	tourist
kunnes	until	tyyli	style
mon i ssa	pINE <b>moni</b> e	valko∣inen	white
monpissa	many	vuos∣i∣na	pESS of <b>vuosi</b> te
neoklassinen	neoclassical	ylite tty ä nne	after you have
neuvo nta	advice		crossed

# Language point



'All' is **koko** only if 'the whole (thing)' is meant; a more general word is **kaikki** e, which is equivalent not only to 'whole' but also to 'each', 'every', and 'all'. **Koko** is invariable, so any case suffix can go only



<sup>\*</sup> e|n|kä 'and I don't': --kA is a little enclitic which links clauses something like English 'and'; it is most often added to the negative verb, as here.

onto the word that it modifies. Compare **koko aja**|**n** = **kaike**|**n aika**|**a** 'the whole time, all the time'. In the plural nominative and accusative, **kaikki** is unchanged, for example, **Isä söi kaikki kaku**|**t** 'Father ate all the cakes'. Plural forms built with -**i**- are usually equivalent to English expressions with 'every(one)'. Here are some more examples:

#### Isä söi koko kakuln.

Father ate the whole cake.

#### Koko matka n aikana ei vaihdettu sanaakaan.

During the whole journey we didn't exchange a word.

## Kaike n muu n paitsi lompakon hän laittoi salkkuun.

(S)he put everything else but the wallet into the bag.

## Uutinen tuli kaik ille yllätyksenä.

The news came as a surprise to everyone.

Notice also the common adjective kaiken lainen:

#### Me nähtiin kaikenlaisia eläimiä.

We saw all kinds of (= many various) animals.

'Every' in the sense of 'each' is usually the invariable joka:

## Joka tapauksessa sä soitat mulle, eikö?

You'll ring me in any case, right?

## Se tulee käymään joka toinen päivä.

(S)he comes to visit every other day.

'Few' is often expressed with **harva** (which also means 'rare' and 'sparse'); 'many (a)' is **moni** e. Both are frequent in the singular, for example:

## Mä oon mone ssa asia ssa samaa mieltä sun kanssasi.

I agree (lit. 'am of the same mind') with you on many matters.

#### Harva muusikko soittaa konsertissaan niin mon ta soitin ta.

Few musicians (lit. 'rare musician') play so many instruments (lit. 'so many an instrument') in their concert.

but **mone**lt, the plural nominative of **moni**, is also common as subject:

#### Monet haluavat sämpylät ja kahvileivät ennen seitsemää.

Many (people) want (their) rolls and coffee and a little something before seven.

Large and small amounts are expressed as paljo|n and vähä|n:

Mulla on (vähän/paljon) viiniä. I have (a little/lots of) wine.

'Anyone' in the sense 'no matter who' is **ku|ka tahansa** or **kuka vaan**, and similarly 'anywhere' in the sense 'no matter where' is **missä tahansa** or **missä vaan**. Be careful to distinguish such 'any' words from the words like 'anyone', 'anywhere' which English uses in negative and interrogative contexts such as 'There isn't anyone there', which in Finnish is **Ei siellä ole ke|tä|än**.

To refer to a definite but unspecified 'some(thing)' you use jo|kin; because of its inherent vagueness, this word is more common in the partitive, jo|ta|kin. In colloquial contexts, the k of this word is left out to the right of a, so we have jo|ta|in, as in

Halua(i)sit jo|ta|in muu|ta? Would you like something else?

Further examples:

Ne antoi sen jollekin toiselle perheelle.

They gave it to some other family.

Se tapahtui jo i takin vuosia sitten.

It happened some years ago.

Totuus on kai iolssalin sillä välillä.

The truth is perhaps somewhere in between.

Jos mä oon jo|hon|kin tyytyväinen, mä en muuta sitä.

If I'm satisfied with something (lit. 'into something'), I don't change it.

Notice these common expressions:

jo|sta|in syy|stä for some reason jo|lla|in tava|lla in some way

jo|ssa|in muodo|ssa in some form (or other)
jo|i|den|kin miele|stä in some people's opinion

io|ksi|kin aika|a for a time

To refer to a definite but unspecified 'some(one)', you use jo||ku. Both parts of this word decline, so the genitive singular is jo|n||ku|n, as in jonkun salkku 'someone's bag', and the nominative plural is jo|t||ku|t, as in Jotkut ei tykkää teestä 'Some people don't like tea'.

Here are the full paradigms of **jo|kin** 'something' and **jo||ku** 'someone':

sN	jo∣kin	jo∣∣ku
sG	jo n kin	(jo n  ku n)
sP	jo∣ta∣(k)in	(jo ta  ku ta)
sELA	jo sta (k)in	(jo sta  ku sta)
sINE	jo ssa (k)in	(jo ssa  kus ssa)
sILL	jo hon kin	(jo hon  ku hun)
sABL	jo lta (k)in	(jo lta  ku lta)
sADE	jo lla (k)in	(jo lla  ku lla)
sALL	jo lle kin	(jo lle ku lle)
sESS	jo na (k)in	(jo na  ku na)
sTRA	jo ksi kin	(jo ksi  kuk ksi)
pΝ	jo t kin	(jo t  ku t)
pN pG	jo∣t∣kin jo∣i∣den∣kin	(jo t  ku t) (jo i den  ku i den)
	_	
pG	jo i den kin	(jo i den  ku i den)
pG pP	jo∣i∣den∣kin jo∣i∣ta∣(k)in	(jo i den  ku i den) (jo i ta  ku i ta)
pG pP pELA	jo i den kin jo i ta (k)in jo i sta (k)in	(jo i den  ku i den) (jo i ta  ku i ta) (jo i sta  ku i sta)
pG pP pELA pINE	jo i den kin jo i ta (k)in jo i sta (k)in jo i ssa (k)in	(jo i den  ku i den) (jo i ta  ku i ta) (jo i sta  ku i sta) (jo i ssa  ku i ssa)
pG pP pELA pINE pILL	jo i den kin jo i ta (k)in jo i sta (k)in jo i ssa (k)in jo i hin kin	(jo i den  ku i den) (jo i ta  ku i ta) (jo i sta  ku i sta) (jo i ssa  ku i ssa) (jo i hin  ku i hin)
pG pP pELA pINE pILL pABL	jo i den kin jo i ta (k)in jo i sta (k)in jo i ssa (k)in jo i hin kin jo i lta (k)in	(jo i den  ku i den) (jo i ta  ku i ta) (jo i sta  ku i sta) (jo i ssa  ku i ssa) (jo i hin  ku i hin) (jo i lta  ku i lta)
pG pP pELA pINE pILL pABL pADE	jo i den kin jo i ta (k)in jo i sta (k)in jo i ssa (k)in jo i hin kin jo i lta (k)in jo i lla (k)in	(jo i den  ku i den) (jo i ta  ku i ta) (jo i sta  ku i sta) (jo i ssa  ku i ssa) (jo i hin  ku i hin) (jo i lta  ku i lta) (jo i lla  ku i lla)

In spoken Finnish, the forms given here in brackets are becoming increasingly rare; instead, people use the corresponding forms on the left.



## Exercise 5

Give English equivalents.

- 1 joku muu
- 2 jotain muuta
- 3 jotkut
- 4 kaikenlaista
- 5 monet luulee

# Unit Twelve

# Maton alla tuntuu olevan jotain

There seems to be something under the carpet

## In this unit you will learn:



- new ways to join up clauses and link verbs
- about two warmer-weather Finnish holidays, vappu and juhannus
- about restaurants and Finnish culinary specialities

# Dialogue 1



# Ruokakaupassa Food shopping (CD2; 1)



In a food shop, John learns about various Finnish culinary specialities by talking with a very patient salesperson (**myy**|jä).

JOHN	Anteeksi, voisitteko auttaa.	Haluaisin	ostaa	erilaisia
	suomalaisia ruokia			

MYYJÄ Tottakai. Minkälaista ruokaa haluaisitte?

JOHN Vähän kaikenlaista. Sellaista, mitä suomalaiset itse\* syövät ja erityisesti sellaista, mitä ei syödä muualla maailmassa.

MYYJÄ No ruisleipä on ehdottomasti suomalaista. Niitä löytyy täältä leipähyllystä. Samalla voitte ostaa karjalanpiirakoita, ne ovat todella herkullisia.

JOHN Mistä ne on tehty?

MYYJÄ Piirakoiden kuori on tehty ruis- ja muista jauhoista ja täytteenä on riisiä, perunaa tai ohraa.

JOHN	Hyvä, otan pussin sekä peruna- että riisipiirakoita.†
MYYJÄ	Kala-altaasta löydätte lohta. Se on suomalainen ruoka, samoin
	kuin lihapullat. Niitä voi ostaa valmiina kylmäaltaasta, vaikka
	yleensä niitä tehdäänkin itse jauhelihasta.
JOHN	Onko teillä lakkoja? Olen kuullut, että lakkaa pidetään
	marjojen kuninkaana.
MYYJÄ	Ainakin valmiina hillona sitä on. Voimme vielä tarkistaa onko
	niitä pakastettuna. Suomalaiset syövät paljon marjoja.
	Mustikoita, mansikoita ja vadelmia meillä on aina
	pakastettuina täällä kaupassa.
JOHN	Entäs jotain makeaa? Mitä suomalaiset syövät kahvin kanssa?
MYYJÄ	No pullat nyt ainakin kuuluvat kahvipöytään, erityisesti
	korvapuustit.
JOHN	Kiitoksia paljon avustanne.
MYYJÄ	Eipä kestä. Hyvä, että osasin auttaa. Toivottavasti

<sup>\*</sup> suomalaiset itse 'the Finns themselves'.

valintanne olivat onnistuneita.



# AB Vocabulary

ainakin	at least, anyway	kuningas	king (stem:
allas	basin, pool, tank (stem: altaX)	kuori e	kuninkaX) peel, skin, crust,
avu sta nne	for your help (apu)		bark
ehdo ttoma sti	absolutely,	kuulu-	belong
	unconditionally	liha+pulla	meatball
erityise sti	particularly	loh∣ta	sP of <b>lohi</b> e salmon
herkullinen	gourmet-style	löytä-	find
hillo	jam	löyty-	be found
jauheQ∣liha	mince(d meat)	maailma	world
jauho∣t	flour	makea	sweet
jotain	something	mansikka	strawberry
korva+puusti	'box on the ear', a	marja	berry
	kind of pastry	minkä lainen	what kind?

<sup>†</sup> sekä peruna- että riisipiirakoita: to say 'both X and Y', use sekä X että Y.

must∣ikka	bilberry	ruis	rye (stem: <b>rukiX</b> )
muu a lla	elsewhere	sama∣lla	at the same time
ohra	barley	samo∣i∣n	the same as;
onni e	luck, happiness		likewise
onn∣istu-	succeed	sellainen	a sort of
onn istu nut	successful	tarkista-	check
pakasta-	freeze	toivo ttava sti	hopefully
pakaste ttu	frozen	täyte	filling (stem:
piirakka	a kind of pie		täytteQ)
pussi	bag	vadelma	raspberry
riisi	rice	vali∣nta	choice

# Exercise 1



Make up your own short dialogues, in which you ask about things for sale in various shops. Ask what things are made of, whether the shop has larger or smaller (and cheaper and dearer) ones, how much things cost, and whether or not things are especially Finnish.

# Dialogue 2



## Vappu May Day (CD2; 2)



Learn about **vappu**, a holiday which Pia, a university student, thinks is the best in the whole year.

RUTH Mikä susta on vuoden paras juhla?

PIA Parhaasta en tiedä, mutta hauskin on kyllä vappu.

RUTH Ai miks niin?

PIA Ku mä olin pieni siman juominen, tippaleivät, serpentiinit ja ilmapallot, oli parasta mitä tiesin.

RUTH Ja nykyään?

PIA No nykyään vappu opiskelijoiden juhlana merkitsee paljon. Kello kuus vapun aattona lakitetaan Espalla Manta.\* Tunnelma on kyllä silloin huipussa.

RUTH Kai vappuna muutakin tapahtuu?

PIA No se on kyllä melkein ku karnevaalit. Helsingissä hulinoidaan silloin ihan kunnolla, vähän liiankin kunnolla.

RUTH Entäs vapunpäivänä?

PIA Vapunpäivä on vähän rauhallisempi. Silloin perheet menee vapputorille, vappukonserttiin ja jotkut jopa vappumarssille. Opiskelijat kerääntyvät Ullanlinnanmäelle piknikille.

<sup>\*</sup> Havis Amandan patsas Helsingin Esplanadilla.



# Vocabulary

aatto Espalla >	eve	liia∣n	too much, excessively
Esplanadilla		marssi	march
Esplanadi	a main street in	merkiTSE-	mean, signify
	Helsinki	pallo	ball
huippu	peak, summit	patsaX	statue
hulinoi-	act in hooliganish	piknikki	picnic
	manner	rauha llinen	peaceful
ihan	quite, very	serpentiini∣t	streamers
ilma+pallo	balloon	sima	mead
jopa	even, as much as	tapahtu-	happen
juhla	celebration, festival	tippa+leivä t	crullers (a kind
karnevaali	carnival		of deep-fried
kerä∣änty-	assemble, gather		doughnut-like
kunno∣lla	really (kunto good		pastry)
	shape)	vappu	May Day
laki∣tta-	put cap ( <b>lakki</b> ) on X		



# 💋 Language point

# Linking clauses 1: complement clauses built with participles

In earlier units you have seen how to link verbs together to form complex constructions such as *Haluaisin ostaa* uuden sanakirjan

'I would like to buy a new dictionary' (Unit 3) and **Mun pitää ostaa uusi sanakirja** 'I have to buy a new dictionary' (Unit 10). In this section you will learn how to join a clause like **Mä näin** 'I saw' with a clause like **se lähti** '(s)he left' to produce the complex construction **mä näin sen lähtevän** 'I saw her/him leave'.

Constructions of this type are built with complement clauses, and the kind we are talking about here all contain a participle. The main clause contains a verb of perceiving, feeling, knowing, thinking, wanting, or speaking. Common examples are

näke-	see	katso-	watch, view
kuule-	hear	tunte-	sense, feel
huomaX-	notice	kuvittele-	imagine, picture
toivo-	hope	suunnittele-	plan
pelkäX-	fear	ihmettele-	marvel
ajattele-	think	arvele-	think, assume
sano-	say	kerto-	tell
mainiTSE-	mention	kieltä-	deny

To link the other clause, you put its subject into the genitive and add the suffix =**vAn** to the stem of the verb. So in the example above we have:

#### se lähti → se|n lähte|vän

Instead of =**vAn**, you add =**neen** if the time of the second verb is earlier than that of the first:

Minä huomasin hänen lähteneen. I noticed that (s)he had left.

Note: This =neen is a form of the past active participle you learned in Unit 6, so its first n assimilates and causes sound changes accordingly: pääs|seen, huoman|neen. In colloquial Finnish such constructions are rare; people use two clauses instead, for example, Mä huomasin et se oli lähtenyt.

Here are some more examples of participial complement clauses:

## Mä kuulin jo|n||ku|n huuta|van pihalla.

I heard someone (lit. 'someone's') shouting in the yard.

## Myyjä arvelee minu|n halua|van jutella.

The salesperson thinks I want (lit. 'thinks my wanting') to chat.

#### Mikä se kertoi isänsä ol|lee|n?

What did (s)he say her/his father had been?

## Luuletteko minu|n hake|van teekuppia?

Do you think it's a teacup I'm after?

#### Pelkäsin tämä n väsyttä vän häntä.

I was afraid this was tiring him/her.

If the subject of both clauses is the same, the appropriate possessive suffix is added to the form built with =**vAn** or =**neen**, and the pronouns (**minun**, **sinun**, **hänen**, etc.) are used or omitted as usual, for example:

## Minä tunsin olelvalni varma sen saamisesta.

I felt sure of getting it.

#### Contrast

#### Mitä Pasi tekee tänä iltana?

What's Pasi doing tonight?

# Se soitti vähän ennen kun sä tulit ja sanoi tule|va|nsa käymään.

He rang a little before you came and said that he (Pasi) was coming to visit.

#### with

#### Mitä Pekka tekee tänä iltana?

What's Pekka doing tonight?

# Pasi soitti vähän ennen kun sä tulit ja sanoi *hänen* tule|va|nsa käymään.

Pasi rang a little before you came and said that he (Pekka) was coming to visit.

There are a few fine points we should note here. The first is that the less the subject is in control, the less likely it is to be put into the genitive. It is more likely to remain in the nominative (or partitive) if it refers to someone or something that is not dynamic, for example, something which merely exists. Example: poik|i|a 'some boys' in Siellä on poik|i|a 'There are some boys there' remains in the partitive in

## Mies sanoi siellä ole van poikia.

The man said that there were boys there.

Furthermore, the subject is not put into the genitive in complement clauses linked to a clause containing an indefinite verb form. Consider the partitive subject **pula**|a 'surnames' in

## Pula|a sanottiin erityisesti olevan ruuasta.

People said that there was a lack of food, in particular.

Finally, in all the examples we've been looking at so far, the complement clause plays the role of the object of the main verb: the phrase **sen lähtevän** in **Mä näin sen lähtevän** 'I saw him leave' is parallel to **sen laukun** 'her bag' in **Mä näin sen laukun** 'I saw her bag'. But complement clauses can also be linked to clauses containing intransitive verbs, as well. Verbs like **tuntu**- and **näyttä**- 'seem', **näky**- 'appear', and **kuulu**- 'be said to be' are commonly used in this way. In complement clauses made with these verbs, the subject is the same in both clauses but no possessive suffix is used. Examples:

## Aurinko tuntui paista|van vielä kuumemmin.

The sun seemed to be shining even more hotly.

## Täti kuuluu ole|van sairaana.

Aunty is said to be ill.

# Exercise 2

Translate into Finnish, using participial constructions:

- 1 I heard them leave.
- 2 He saw the train arrive.
- 3 She said she would come back tomorrow.
- 4 I hope I will meet him again.
- 5 He seemed to know who they were.

# Exercise 3

You will encounter participial constructions most often in more formal, especially written varieties of Finnish. Being able to decode them is more important than being able to form them yourself, so practise by seeing





whether you can understand these participial constructions (if you're stuck, translations are at the back of this book, as usual).

- Mä näin sen vaihtavan väriä.
- 2 Maton alla tuntui olevan jotain.
- Minä kiellän tietäväni mitään.
- 4 Haluan teidän pyytävän anteeksi.
- 5 Hän arveli ruuan olevan valmiina.
- 6 Haluatko meidän olevan kanssasi?
- 7 Haluan sinun tottuvan tähän.



# **S** Dialogue 3



## **Juhannus** Midsummer Day (CD2; 3)

Eeva and Kaarina discuss their plans for spending Midsummer Day.

Mitä sä meinaat tehdä iuhannuksena? FFVA

Mä meen mökille niin ku aina. KAARINA

FFVA Missä teidän mökki on?

KAARINA Sipoon saaristossa. Mitäs sä meinaat tehdä? EEVA Mä en oo ihan varma. Me ollaan yleensä Mikon

> kanssa menty Seurasaareen kattoon sitä perinteistä juhannuskokkoa, mut tänä vuonna ajateltiin tehdä jotain

muuta!

No kerro mitä. KAARINA

FFVA Kun on kerran juhannus\* niin ajateltiin, että kerran on

koettava† juhannuksena lavatanssit.

KAARINA Ai niinku vanhoissa Suomifilmeissä.

Just niin, ja sit me ajateltiin yöpyä teltassa jollain FFVA

leirintäalueella ‡

KAARINA Kuulostaa tosi kivalta!

<sup>\*</sup> Kun on kerran juhannus 'seeing that it's Midsummer Day'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> **koettava** 'has to be experienced'. More on this form in Unit 13.

<sup>†</sup> jollain leirintäalueella 'at some campsite'.

# Vocabulary



allueQ area, zone juhannus kse Midsummer Day

kokko bonfire

kattoon > katso|ma|an

kerra|n (for) once kerro

kerto-Q) of kerto- tell

imperative (i.e.

just > juuri just, precisely

kuul|ostasound

lava+tanssi|t platform dancing

leiri+ntä camping meinaXintend, mean

Suomi+filmilt Finn films

teltta tent

spend the night -va|öv

# Language point



## Linking clauses 2: 'after having X'D' and 'in order to X'

In colloquial Finnish, the usual way to link such clauses is with conjunctions. For example, you say 'after' with simple kun 'when' or the more explicit sen jälkeen kun:

(Sen jälkeen) kun mä pääsin työstä mä menin kotiin.

After I got out of work, I went home.

and you say 'in order to' with jotta, often with the conditional, as in

Lapsen pitäisi käydä ruotsinkielistä koulua, jotta saisi hyvän ruotsin taidon.

The child should attend Swedish-language school, so that it might acquire a good knowledge of Swedish.

In more formal Finnish there are verbal constructions which allow both verbs to be squeezed together into the same clause. For 'after', you put the verb into the partitive of its past passive participle (Unit 7); if the subject is a noun it goes into the genitive:

Peka|n lähde|tty|ä tö|i|hin minä soitin Irma|lle.

After Pekka left for work I rang Irma.

If the subject is a pronoun it is added as a possessive suffix to the end of the past passive participle form:

#### Pääs|ty|ä|ni töistä mä menin kotiin.

After I got out of work, I went home.

## Pääs|ty|ä|än töistä Pekka meni kotiin.

After he (= Pekka) got out of work, Pekka went home.

As always, **häne**|**n** or **se**|**n** is used if the subjects refer to different actors:

## Hänen pääs|ty|ä|än töistä hän meni kotiin.

After he (e.g. Pekka) got out of work, he (= someone other than Pekka, e.g. Juuso) went home.

For '(in order) to', a special form of the first infinitive is used; this form resembles the first infinitive in every way except that it ends not in **Q**, but in **KSE** plus the appropriate possessive suffix. This construction is used only if both verbs have the same subject. Examples:

#### Hän katsoi ikkunasta näh|däkse|en satoiko.

(S)he looked out of the window (in order) to see whether it was raining.

#### Hän meni naimisiin saa|dakse|en rahaa.

(S)he got married in order to acquire money.

#### Poika on liian nuori men näkse en naimisiin.

The boy is too young to get married.

#### Hän avasi suunsa osoitta akse en haluavansa sanoa jotain.

(S)he opened her/his mouth to show that (s)he wanted to say something.

Notice that the last example includes an example of a complement clause, as well (osoittaa haluavansa).



# Exercise 4

Have a look at these rather formal Finnish sentences, making sure you can recognize and decode the verbal constructions. English equivalents are given at the end of this book.

- 1 Levättyään hetken hän nousi istumaan.
- 2 Heti hänen sanottuaan sen minä ymmärsin.
- 3 Mä tein sen jotain tehdäkseni.
- 4 Minun täytyy lähteä kaupunkiin saadakseni asian toimeen.
- 5 Me emme ole täällä tutustuaksemme ihmisiin.

# Dialogue 4



## Ravintola Going to restaurants (CD2; 4)



This dialogue is in two parts. In the first part, Tomi wants to go with Sari to a restaurant, so he discusses options with his friend Pasi. In the second part we hear Tomi and Sari ordering their dishes at the restaurant.

## Ravintolaan

TOMI Mä oon menossa Sarin kanssa tänään ulos. Mä tarttisin vähän ideoita mihin me voitas mennä.

PASI Ai, sä oot nyt viimeinkin pyytäny Sarin ulos. Tehän voisitte mennä Kappeliin tai Kosmokseen. Nehän on molemmat hienoja paikkoja, joilla on pitkät perinteet. Salven on kanssa hyvä paikka, jos tykkää\* kalaruoasta.

TOMI Oot sä syöny Chez Dominiquessa?

PASI En oo. Eiks se oo Suomen paras ravintola?

TOMI On. Tiedät sä mitään uusia hyviä paikkoja?

PASI No ton Luomon pitäis kuulemma olla hyvä. Ja Savoysta saa<sup>†</sup> aivan upeeta gourmet-ruokaa. Ja monet käy syömässä Zucchinissa. Se on mun lempikasvisravintola, mut se taitaa olla auki vaan lounasaikaan.

томі Hmm... Täytyy miettiä asiaa.

PASI Kai te tuutte sitten Tigeriin meijän kaa‡ ku ootte syöny.

TOMI No täytyy kattoo. Mulla olis liput Tavastialle.

## **Ravintolassa**

TARJOILIJA Oletteko valmiit tilaamaan?

TOMI Joo. Mä ottasin alkupaloiksi ton katkarapukoktailin ja sit

lammasta mokkakastikkeessa.

SARI Mulle ensiks mätiä, paahtoleipää ja basilikakastiketta ja

sitte tota ankkaa mandariinikastikkeessa:

TARJOILIJA Kiitos. Ja mitä saisi olla juotavaksi?§

TOMI Pullo mineraalivettä ja sitten talon punaviiniä karahvissa.

TARJOILIJA Puolikas vai kokonainen?

TOMI Kokonainen.

kastlu-

get wet

<sup>§</sup> juo|tava|ksi 'for drinking, to be drunk' (see Unit 13).



# Vocabulary

aiatelllu >

ajateijiu >		Kast u-	ger wer
ajatel∣lut		kasvis+	vegetarian
alku+pala	starter	katka+rapu	prawn
ankka	(domesticated) duck	katotaan > katso∣taan	let's see
basilika	basil	kattoo > katso a	
disko	disco	kokonainen	entire
ensi s	for starters,	koktail	cocktail
	first of all	kol+kyt+luku	the Thirties
haluu tte > halua tte		kuullu > kuul lut	
hampurilainen	hamburger	lampaX	lamb (sN lammas)
kala+ruoka	seafood	mandariini	mandarin orange, tangerine
kanssa > myös	also	mietti-	think over
karahvi	carafe	mineraali+vesi	mineral water
kasta-	wet, dip (tr)	mokka	Mocha (coffee)
kast ikkeQ	sauce		flavour

<sup>\*</sup> jos tykkää 'if one likes'; instead of saying jos tykkäät 'if you like', Pasi depersonalizes this remark by using the third person singular with no subject pronoun; more on this construction in Unit 14, 'submerged subjects'.

<sup>†</sup> ja Savoysta saa: see note \*.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> meijän kaa > meidän kanssa.

mäti	fish roe	tarttisin >	
nostalgia	nostalgia	tarvits isi n	
ottasin >		tilaX-	order
otta∣isi∣n		ton > tuo n	
paahto+leipä	toast	tota > tuo ta	
puol∣ikkaX	half-sized	tuutte > tule tte	
rauha llinen	peaceful	tykkäX-	like (X-stA)
ravinto∣la	restaurant	upee > upea	
riippu-	depend	uusi∣ttu	renovated
tarjo∣ili∣ja	waiter/waitress	viime i n kin	at (long) last

# Exercise 5

Make up your own short dialogue, in which people ask about dishes on a restaurant menu, then make up their minds and order.

# Reading 1



## A cafeteria menu

Try working out all the dishes on offer at this college cafeteria this week. Do you remember the names of the weekdays?

Ма	IO
Chili tacot	Kreikkalainen salaatti
Kanarisotto	Aura-ananaslenkki
Kalaleike	Unkarilainen uunikala
Kasvispihvit	Kalakeitto

Ti Punajuuri-perunavuoka

Uunipaisti Pe

Hernekeitto, laskiaispulla Nasi goreing Jauhelihapihvi Lihamureke

Kasvishernekeitto Kuorrutettua kesäkurpitsaa ja

Ke tomaattia

Jauhelihapizza Kaikenlaiset muutokset ovat

Maksalaatikko mahdollisia

Herkkusieni-smetanakastike



# Vocabulary

ananas kse	pineapple	maksa+laatikko	liver casserole
Aura	a kind of blue	murekkeQ	stuffing
	cheese	muut os kse	change, alteration
herkku+	gourmet+	pihvi	steak
kana	chicken	puna+juuri e	beet(root)
kasvis+	vegetarian	salaatti	lettuce
kesä+kurpitsa	summer squash	sieni e	mushroom
kreikka lainen	Greek	tomaatti	tomato
kuorrute∣ttu	glazed	uuni+kala	baked fish
leikk eQ	slice	uuni+paisti	roast
lenkki	link (sausage)	vuoka	oven dish
mahdollinen	possible		



## An advertisement for a house

Myydään: omakotitalo

Kaunis ja hyväkuntoinen talo perheellesi suositulta omakotitaloalueelta Tampereen läheltä! Ihanteellinen lapsiperheelle. Aidattu piha, uimaranta ja päiväkoti lähellä, hyvät liikenneyhteydet ja peruspalvelut tarjolla. Avarat, valoisat huoneet ja oleskelutilaa runsaasti alakerrassa. Sähkölämmitys, iso leivinuuni sekä oma sauna. Keittiö uusittu vuonna 2003. Pihat molemmin puolin, takapihalla tilava pihavarasto, etupihalla autokatos. Junarata kuuluu, mutta talo ei ole suoraan radan varressa. Vapautuu nopeastikin tarvittaessa. Hinta 330,000 euroa. Kiinteistövero 300 euroa vuoden 2009 verotuksessa, sähkö noin 110 euroa/kk, vesimaksu 25 euroa/kk. Pinta-ala 163 m². Tontti 760 m². Rakennusvuosi 1992.

# Vocabulary



aidalttu fenced in (adj) aita|Xfence in ala⊹kerta lower floor auto+katoKsF carport avara spacious etu+ front hinta price hyvä+kunto|inen in good shape ihantee Ilinen ideal (adi) ihanteQ ideal (noun) juna+rata train track(s) kato KsE cover keitt|iö kitchen keitt o soup keittäcook kiinte istö real estate kuullube audible lapsi|perheQ family with child(ren) leivin+uuni baking oven molemmlin on both sides puol|in sell myyfor sale myy|dään nopea|sti|kin quickly, as well ole|skel|u living, staying detached house oma+koti+talo per|us+palvel|u-t basic services piha (court)yard

piha+vara|sto shed pinta+ala surface area päivä+koti nursery, kindergarten rakenn|uKsE building rakentabuild runsaalsti generously, galore suora straight suoralan directly, immediately suosilttu favoured sähkö+ electric heating lämmi|t|vksE lämmi|ttäwarm, heat taka+ back available tario|lla tarvit|ta|e|ssa if needed (INE second inf ind) tila space, room tilalva roomy, spacious tontti lot, plot of land ui|ma+ranta bathing beach valo∣isa light, bright vapa|utubecome free vara reserve, spare vara|sto storeroom X-n varre|ssa next to X vero tax vero|t|uKsE tax(ation) vesi+maksu water charge

# Unit Thirteen

# Mikä laulaen tulee...

Easy come ...



## In this unit you will learn:

- how to talk about sightseeing, places to live, and music
- about expressing necessity
- more about how to link verbs
- about the eight points of the compass
- some Finnish proverbs



# 👫 Dialogue 1



## Oppera Opera (CD2; 5)

RITVA Oletsä käyny jo Helsingin oopperatalossa?

LEEA Joo. Me käytiin Olavin kanssa kuuntelemassa Verdin Don Carlos ku Matti Salminen oli laulamassa.

RITVA Me ollaan nyt vasta menossa ensimmäistä kertaa Simon kanssa. Ajateltiin mennä kuuntelemaan Aulis Sallisen Viimeisiä kiusauksia.

Se on kuulemma tosi suosittu. Me taas ollaan vähän ajateltu I FFA ostaa liput ensi kesän Savonlinnan oopperajuhlille. Mitäs jos mentäs yhdessä?

RITVA Mitä niillä on ohjelmistossa?

LEEA Sallisen Palatsi, Wagnerin Lentävä hollantilainen ja Tannhäuser, Verdin Macbeth ja Marinski-teatterin esittämänä Tshaikovskin Mazeppa.

RITVA *Palatsi* ja *Mazeppa* vois olla kiinnostavia. Mun täytyy puhua Simon kanssa. Mitä liput maksaa?

LEEA Noin 35-80 (kolkytviis-kahekskyt) euroa paikoista riippuen.

# Vocabulary



esittä mä nä	as presented by	ohje lm isto	programme
hollantilainen	Dutch (person)	ooppera	opera
kiinnosta∣va	interesting	palatsi	palace
kiusaus kse	temptation	riippu∣en	depending
kuule mma	they say; I hear;	suosi ttu	favoured
	allegedly	teatteri	theatre
laula-	sing	vasta	not before; only
lentä∣vä	flying		(now)
mentäs >		viime inen	last
men tä isi in			





### Exercise 1

Write your own dialogue about your own and others' interest in music. You'll find the following vocabulary useful:

musa >	music	suosi∣ttu	popular
musiikki		klassillinen	classical
muusikko	musician	barokki	baroque
kriitikko	critic	moderni	modern
konsertti	concert	melu	noise
bändi	(rock) band	jatsi	jazz
orkesteri	orchestra	alku∣soitto	overture
laula∣ja	singer	ohjelma	programme
säveltä∣jä	composer	romppu	CD-ROM
<b>sävellys</b> kse	composition	poltta-	burn
sävel	melody (stem:	sopraano	soprano
	sävele-)	altto	alto
soitin	instrument (stem:	tenori	tenor
	soittime-)	baritoni	baritone
mp3-soitin	MP3 player	basso	bass
mp3-biisi	MP3 song	näyttele-	acts (on stage)
laul∣u	song	molli	minor
laula-	sing	duuri	major
lataX-	download	asteikko	scale
linkki	(Internet) link	viulu	violin
linkittä-	provide link	uru t	organ (stem: urku)



## 👫 Dialogue 2



### Nähtävyydet Seeing the sights (CD2; 6)

In their hotel room, Liz and Nick pore over the tourist brochure and try to decide what to see next in Helsinki.

NICK Mitä museoita siinä esitteessä suositellaan?

Kansallismuseo Mannerheimintiellä antaa hyvän yleiskuvan LIZ Suomen historiasta, kansasta ja kulttuurista. Ateneumissa on monta eri näyttelyä. Siellä on taidetta 1700-luvulta aina nykytaiteeseen asti.\* Ja kuulemma se Kiasmakin on hyvä paikka.

NICK Entäs kotimuseoita?

LIZ Täällä näyttää olevan Marsalkka Mannerheimin kotimuseo, presidentti Urho Kekkosen museo Tamminiemessä ja Suomen kansallistaiteilijan Akseli Gallen-Kallelan Museo Tarvaspäässä Espoossa.

NICK Mennään huomenna sinne Tarvaspäähän. Tänään voitas mennä sinne Kansallismuseoon. Eiks Eduskuntatalo ja Finlandiatalo oo kans Mannerheimintiellä?

LIZ Joo. Hyvä idea. Eduskuntatalossa onkin opastettuja kierroksia just lauantaisin ja sunnuntaisin.

NICK Se kallioon rakennettu kirkko.†

LIZ Temppeliaukion kirkko.

NICK Just se. Se on kyllä kans nähtävä.

LIZ Katotaan jos ehditään nähdä sekin tänään.

### Vocabulary

	ı	э			
A	г	7	h	n	١.
	4	n	٦	н	c
		ľ	٠,	L	,

Ateneum	(art gallery opposite	kierros kse	tour, turn
	the National Theatre)	kulttuurinen	cultural
Eduskunta+	Parliament (building)	marsalkka	field marshall
talo		nyky	contemporary
ehti-	have enough time	näh tä vä	must/should be seen
	(to X)	näy∣ttä-	show, appear
esite	brochure (stem: esitt eQ)	näy tt el y	exhibition
Espoo	city c. 20km west of	opaste ttu	guided (opasta-)
	Helsinki	suosittele-	favour, support
Finlandia+talo	Finlandia Hall	taide	art (stem: taiteQ)
kallio	cliff	taika	magic
kansa	nation	taita-	be able, possible
Kansallis+	National Museum	taiteili∣ja	artist
museo		voitas >	
Kiasma	a contemporary art	voi∣taisiin	
	museum	yleis+kuva	overall picture

<sup>\*</sup> aina nykytaiteeseen asti 'right up to contemporary art'.

<sup>†</sup> kallio|on rakenne|ttu kirkko 'church (which has been) built into a cliff'.



### Exercise 2

Decode these signs from the front of some museums in order to answer the questions.

Käsityömuseo ma-pe 11-17, la 11-15 Sinebrychoffin taidemuseo ke 9-20, to-la 9-17, su 11-17, opastukset su 15 Kansallismuseo ti-la 11-15, ti myös 18-21, su 11-16 Tuomarinkylän museo su-pe 12-16, to 12-20, la suljettu Didrichsenin taidemuseo su ja ke 14-16

- 1 When is the National Museum open?
- 2 Which museums aren't open on Saturdays?
- 3 Are there any guided tours of art museums on Sundays?
- 4 Can you visit the Handcrafts Museum at weekends? When?



### Exercise 3

Translate into Finnish:

- 1 Let's go to Finlandia Hall tomorrow.
- 2 Is it open on Tuesdays?
- 3 That's a must-see (nähtävä), I suppose.
- 4 What museum do you (polite) recommend?
- 5 I don't know whether I'll have time to see that as well.



### 🔊 Language point

# More on how to link verbs: expressing simultaneity and manner

#### Expressing simultaneity

In this construction, one verb refers to an action simultaneous with that of another. Colloquial Finnish has **sama|an aika|an kun** 'at the same time as', and **si|llä aika|a kun** 'while': **Se oli Lontoossa samaan aikaan kun minä** '(S)he was in London at the same time as I (was)'. More formal Finnish uses the inessive of the second infinitive:

#### Hänen tul|le|ssa|an takaisin minä olin töissä.

When (s)he came back I was at work.

The second infinitive is identical in form to the first infinitive, with two exceptions: instead of **A**, it has **e**; and instead of ending in **Q**, it takes the inessive -**ssA** (as here, to express simultaneity) or -**n** (to express manner; see below). Compare these forms (all second infinitives in the first person singular inessive):

	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV
English	to give	to need	to come	to get
first inf	anta∣ <i>a</i>	tarvi∣ <i>ta</i>	tul  <i>la</i>	saa  <i>da</i>
second inf	anta e ssa ni	tarvi  <i>te</i>  ssa ni	tul  <i>le</i>  ssa ni	saa  <i>d</i> e ssa ni
when I	give/gave	need(ed)	come/came	get/got

The inessive form of the second infinitive normally occurs with either a person suffix (like -ni here) or, if the subject is spelled out, with that noun in the genitive:

#### Liisa|n nukku|e|ssa minä menin ulos.

While Liisa was sleeping, I went outside.

Note that inessive forms of the second infinitive may also occur as indefinites, for example, **tarvittaessa** 'if needed (by someone)'. You will understand how these forms are built if you compare them with the corresponding indefinite conditional forms, which you met in Unit 10:

- anne|tta|isiin maini|tta|isiin men|tä|isiin saa|ta|isiin one would give, etc.
- anne|tta|e|ssa maini|tta|e|ssa men|tä|e|ssä saa|ta|e|ssa if/when one gives/gave, etc.

#### Example:

# Muisti on tärkeä erity|ise|sti aje|tta|e|ssa use|i|ta ohjelm|i|a sama|n+aika|ise|sti.

Memory is important especially *when one is running* several programs simultaneously.

#### Expressing manner

This is roughly the equivalent of 'singing' in '(s)he went home singing'. The form is the second infinitive with the suffix -n:

#### Hän meni kotiin laulaleln.

Colloquial: Se lauloi, kun se meni kotiin.

In colloquial Finnish, this form is frequent only in fixed expressions such as time expressions built with lähte- 'departs' and alka- 'begins', for example, 60-luvun alusta lähtien 'since the beginning of the sixties', viime syksystä alkaen 'since last autumn'.

In more formal Finnish, the second infinitive with this -n is also used to indicate concomitant action on the part of someone else; this second actor is then put into the genitive.

#### Example:

#### Tämä otetaan käyttöön vain tarpee n tullen.

This is used only if the need arises.

A construction with the opposite meaning is mentioned in Unit 6 (abessive of the third infinitive).



## 👫 Dialogue 3



#### **Asuminen** A place to live (CD2; 7)

In the street, Harri runs into Rasse, an acquaintance he's not seen in a while, and does some quick catching up.

#### [Kadulla]

HARRI [huutaa] Hei Rasse oota vähän!

RASSE Moi Harri!

Sua ei ookkaan näkyny\* vähään aikaan. HARRI

RASSE No me ollaan muutettu ja se on vieny tosi paljon aikaa.

Kämppä piti ensin remontoida.

Mihin te ootte muuttaneet? HARRI

RASSE Ostettiin Tapiolasta kaksio.

HARRI Ai, mistä sieltä?

RASSE Tietsä ne Otsonkallion kerrostalot, sieltä.

HARRI Mun täti asuu omakotitalossa Otsolahdessa. Viihdyttekste Tapiolassa?

RASSE Joo, kämppä on vähän pieni, mut toimiva. Kunhan tässä säästetään muutama vuosi niin sitten me kyllä ostetaan oma rivitaloasunto, jossa on piha, nyt meillä on vain partsi.... Kuule, mun on nyt juostava bussille, mut mä soitan sulle. Jos vaikka† tulisitte Emman kanssa käymään ens viikonloppuna.

HARRI No soittele, moi.

RASSE Moi!

### Vocabulary



VOOGIOO	, ,		
asu∣minen	living (somewhere)	ootte > ole tte	
asu∣nto	flat; apartment	Otso+lahti	(place name)
huuta-	shout	Otso n+kallio	(place name)
juos ta va	present passive	partsi >	balcony
	participle of	parvekkeQ	
	juokse- run	piha	yard, garden
kaks io	two-room flat	remontoi-	do repair work
kerros+talo t	block of flats;	rivi+talo+asunto	flat/house in a
	apartment		terrace
	building	soi tt ele-	give a ring,
kämppä >			phone
asu∣nto		säästä-	save
muu tta-	change; move house	Tapiola	(place name)
näk y ny >		tietsä > tiedä t sä	
näk∣y∣nyt		toimi va	present active
oma	(one's) own	tonini <sub>(</sub> ta	participle of
oma+koti+talo	detached house		toimi- work,
ookkaan >			be functional
olekaan		vie ny > vie nyt	
oota >	imperative of	viihdyttekste >	
odota Q	odotta-	viihdyt tte kö te	

<sup>\*</sup> Su|a ei ookkaan näkyny: roughly 'Haven't seen much of you', a little more closely: 'Not much of you has been seen'; note the use of partitive in the subject.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> vaikka used here, as so often, to introduce a suggestion or an alternative.



### Language point

# More on necessity: the present passive participle

Back in Unit 10, you learned how to express necessity with modal constructions, as in **Minu**|n pitä|ä lähte|ä 'I must leave'. Necessity may also be expressed with the present passive participle, for example, **Häne**|n on men|tävä nyt '(S)he has to go now'. This section shows you how to build and use this form.

In form, the present passive participle is like the past passive participle, but with final **AvA** instead of **U**. Compare the following form-pairs: the first form is the past passive participle, the second is the present passive participle:

Stem:	aja-	osaX-	mene-	vie-
pt pass ptcpl	aje∣ttu	pala∣ttu	men∣ty	vie∣ty
ps pass ptcpl	aje∣ttava	pala∣ttava	men∣tävä	vie∣tävä

Here are some examples of the present passive participle in action. As in sentences of the **minun täytyy** type, the actor is put in the genitive. The actor need not be mentioned explicitly, however; the best English equivalent is then quite often a passive sentence.

#### Sinu|n on ratkais|tava, lähdetkö vai et.

You must decide whether you're going or not.

#### Mu|n on kirjoite|ttava sille heti.

I must write to him/her at once.

#### Se|n on pala|ttava kotiin pariksi viikoksi.

(S)he has to return home for a few weeks.

#### Mei|dän on anne|ttava ruokaa kahdelletoista lapselle.

We have to give food to twelve children.

#### Nii den on löyde ttävä hänet.

They must find him/her.

#### Mu|n oli lue|ttava tenttiin.

I had to read for an exam.

#### Mu|n on makse|ttava vuokra.

I have to pay the rent.

# Vuokra on makse ttava kuukauden kymmenenteen päivään mennessä.

One must pay the rent by the tenth of the month. (= The rent must be paid by the tenth of the month.)

As usual, you can mitigate the necessity by using the conditional, for example, **Mu**|**n** olisi makse|ttava vuokra 'I ought to pay the rent'.

## Dialogue 4

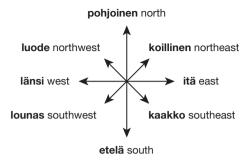


# **Ilmansuunnat** The eight points of the compass (CD2: 8)



#### [Kadulla]

- TUULA Kylläpä tänään tuulee kovaa ja kylmästi.
- SATU Pohjoistuuli on aina jäätävä. Säätiedotuksessa ne kyllä lupas heikkoa idänpuoleista tuulta ja vaihtelevaa pilvisyyttä.
- TUULA No ei se ole ensimmäinen kerta kun säätiedotus on väärässä. Tänään varmaan rupee satamaankin.
- SATU Syksyt on niin pitkiä. Huvittais tosi paljon lähteä etelän lämpöön ja auringon paisteeseen.
- TUULA Mun isoisä on aina sanonut että lounaistuuli tuo tullessaan lämpimän ilman.
- No se on kesällä. Talvella ei varmaan väliä tuuleeko koillisesta, kaakosta tai lounaasta, kylmä on kuitenkin. En yhtään ihmettelis, jos vaikka tänään tulis räntäkuuroja.
- TUULA Älä nyt oo niin negatiivinen. Voihan se poutaakin pitää tänään.
- SATU Länsirannikolle ne kyllä tais luvata hyvää säätä.
- TUULA Merellä tuulee kuiteskin kohtalaisesti aina, satoi tai paistoi.
- SATU Elämä olis varmaan vähän ykstoikkosta jos aina aurinko paistais.
- TUULA Enpä tiedä!



Points of the compass



# Vocabulary

aurinko	sun	luode	northwest (stem:
elä∣mä	life		luoteQ)
etelä	south	lupas > lupasi	
heikko	weak	(stem: <b>lupaX</b> -)	
huvitta-	amuse, cause one	lupaX-	promise
	to have fun	lämpimä n	sG of <b>lämmin</b>
idä∣n+	from the east,		warm
puole∣inen	easterly	lämpö	warmth, heat
ihmettele-	be surprised,	länsi te	west
	wonder	meri e	sP mer ta! sea
ilma n+	the points of the	negatiivinen	negative
suunna t	compass	paista-	shine
iso+isä	grandfather	paist eQ	shine, glare
jää tä vä	icy	pilvi e	cloud
kaakko	southeast	pilv inen se	cloudy
kohta lainen	moderate, medium	pilv is yys te	cloudiness
koillinen	northeast	pohjois+	north(ern)
kova∣a	hard, fast (adv)	pouta	fair weather
kuitenki(n)	anyway	rann∣ikko	shore, coast
kuiteski(n)	anyway	rupeX-	start, begin
kuuro	(rain)shower	räntä	hail
lounais+	southwest(ern)	sade	rain (stem: sat eQ)
lounaX	southwest; lunch	sata-	rain

Ì	sää	weather	vaihtele-	vary
	tais > taisi (stem: taita-)		väärä∣ssä	in the wrong; incorrect
ı	tiedoitus kse	report	yh tä än	at all
ı	tul le ssa an	when it comes	yks+toikkoinen	monotonous
ı	tuule-	(the wind) blows	yksi	one (stem: yhte-,
	tuuli e	wind		sP <b>yh tä</b> )

## Dialogue 5



#### Sananlaskuja Finnish proverbs (CD2; 9)



Kirsi explains some Finnish proverbs to Paul.

PAUL Musta ois hauska oppia joitakin suomalaisia sananlaskuja. Tiedät sä yhtään?

KIRSI No en mä nyt ole kovin hyvä niissä, mutta kyllä mä joitakin tiedän. Anna kun mietin vähän. [Hän miettii.] No esimerkiks tää:

Muu maa mustikka Oma maa mansikka.

PAUL Mitä se oikein tarkoittaa?

KIRSI No jotain semmosta, että oma maa on aina paras maa. On mulla joitain muitakin mielessä. Musta sananlasku 'Se koira älähtää, johon kalikka kalahtaa' on aina osuva. Se tarkottaa sitä, että se joka on syyllinen johonkin, tavallisesti puolustaa itseään äänekkäästi ja yrittää todistaa ettei oo syyllinen.

PAUL Noi on tosi hyviä. Muistatko vielä muita?

KIRSI Mitä sä pidät tästä: 'Hullu paljon työtä tekee, viisas selviää vähemmällä.'

PAUL Mä taidan tietää mitä se tarkoittaa. Luultavasti sitä, että on paras ajatella kunnolla miten joku juttu kannattaa tehdä, ettei joudu tekeen turhaa työtä.

KIRSI Just niin. On hyvä muistaa myös tämä: 'Joka\* toiselle kuoppaa kaivaa, se itse siihen lankeaa.'

PAUL Se onkin hyvä neuvo!

<sup>\*</sup> joka '(s)he who'.



# Vocabulary

hullu	fool, crazy, madman	puolusta-	defend
itse ä än	him/herself (sP)	sanan∣lasku	proverb
joutu-	wind up, end up	selviäX-	also <b>selviyty</b> -
just = juuri	just		manage, come
kaiva-	dig		through OK
kalahta-	clip, clap	semmos ta > semmois ta*	
kalikka	stick	= sellais ta	
kannatta-	be worthwhile	syy∣llinen	guilty
kov i n	very, quite	tarkka	precise
kunno lla	properly	tarkotta- >	mean, purport
kuoppa	pit, hole in the	tarkoitta-	
	ground	tava Ilise sti	usually (tapa way,
lankeX-	fall, tumble		habit)
luul ta va sti	probably	tekeen >	
miele ssä	in mind	tekemään	
mietti-	think over, ponder	tod∣ista-	prove (tosi te truth)
mustikka	bilberry	turha	useless, vain
neuvo	advice, counsel;	viisaX	wise
	council	vähe mmä llä	with less
oppi-	learn	yrittä-	try
osu va	telling (osu- hit the	älähtä-	yelp
	mark)	ääne∣kkäX	vociferous

<sup>\*</sup> Pronunciation note: in colloquial contexts, any diphthong ending in i after the first syllable is liable to lose this i, unless the form is a superlative. Thus we have sano for sanoi, auttas for auttaisi, and (here) semmosta for semmoista.



### Language point

# The present active participle =vA; participle overview

You have already met the present participle in connection with participial constructions (Unit 12). In that construction the participle is in the genitive, i.e. its shape is **-vA**|**n**.

But the present participle, like all participles in Finnish, is a fully fledged adjective with a full paradigm of case forms. So a present active participle like **osaa|va** 'knowing, who knows' is put into whatever case the rest of the clause requires, for example, the allative, as in

# Hän antoi vihkon suomea osaa|va|lle ranskalaise|lle lehtimiehe|lle.

(S)he gave the notebook to a French journalist who knows/knew Finnish.

On the other hand, the present participle (like all participles) is also a verb, so it can take direct objects (like **suome**|a in the example above) and other arguments, such as **Ranska**|an 'to France' in

#### Hän antoi vihkon Ranska|an lähte|vä|lle lehtimiehelle.

(S)he gave the notebook to a journalist who was leaving for France.

Contrast the following sentence, with the *past* active participle indicating priorness:

#### Hän sai vihkon Ranskalan lähtelneelltä lehtimieheltä.

(S)he got the notebook from a journalist who had left for France.

The English and, for that matter, the colloquial Finnish equivalent of such rather bookish constructions will usually be a clause introduced by a relative pronoun. Thus **Suomesta puhuva nainen** (in less bookish Finnish, **nainen**, **joka puhuu Suomesta**) is 'a woman who is talking about Finland', and **vaikeita aikoja kokeneita ihmisiä** (= **ihmisiä**, **jotka on kokeneet vaikeita aikoja**) is 'people who have lived through difficult times'.

#### Ei minulla ole ollut mainittavia ongelmia.

I haven't had any problems worth mentioning.



### Exercise 4

Unwind these noun phrases by using the relative pronouns jolka (or mikä).

 $\mbox{Model:} \quad \mbox{vuonna 1955 solmitulla sopimuksella} \rightarrow \mbox{sopimuksella}, \\ \mbox{joka solmittiin vuonna 1955}$ 

- 1 Saarenamaalla syntynyt lapsi.
- 2 saarta koskeva laki.
- 3 dokumentti (documentary) sata metriä maan alle rakennetusta kaupungista.
- 4 neljännen peräkkäisen mestaruutensa ottanut helsinkiläinen.



### Reading

Here are some more Finnish proverbs for you to have a go at decoding. There's a vocabulary list at the end to help you with the more unusual words and forms; the rest you'll find in the vocabulary at the back of this book. (Also see the Key to exercises.)

### Sananlaskuja

- 1 Parempi pyy pivossa kuin kymmenen oksalla.
- 2 Sanasta miestä, sarvesta härkää.
- 3 Pata kattilaa soimaa, musta kylki kummallakin.
- 4 Ei vara venettä kaada.
- 5 Auta miestä mäessä älä mäen alla.
- 6 Meni ojasta allikkoon.
- 7 Se parhaiten nauraa joka viimeksi nauraa.
- 8 Puhuminen hopeaa, vaikeneminen kultaa.
- 9 Aamun torkku, illan virkku, se tapa talon hävittää.
- 10 Mies tulee räkänokastakin, vaan ei tyhjän naurajasta.
- 11 Kun nokka nousee niin pyrstö tarttuu.
- 12 Mikä laulaen tulee, se viheltäen menee.

## Vocabulary



aamu|n drowsiness in the torkku morning allikko pool, puddle hopea silver härkä ОХ hävittäruin, destroy kaataoverturn, pour nouserise ditch oja oksa branch, bough pata pot oviq (hollow of the) hand (bird's, fish's) tail pyrstö

hazel grouse

snot, mucous

word

руу

räkä

sana

kattila kettle kulta gold kylki e side laula|en singing nauralaugh nauralia one who laughs nokka bill, beak; nose; prow sarvi e (animal's) horn soimaXreprove, upbraid tarttuget stuck tyhjä empty vaikeXEbe silent vara reserve, spare; foresight viheltä|en whistling virkku liveliness

### Unit Fourteen

# Karhut voi kai olla vaarallisiakin

Bears can be dangerous, I suppose



#### In this unit you will:

- · learn more about Finnish geography, real and fanciful
- learn animal and winter-sports vocabulary
- learn about verbs of motion
- revise the uses of the genitive
- learn new ways of being vague



# Dialogue 1



### **Suomen maakunnat** Regions of Finland (CD2; 11)

Listen in as Joonas and Orvokki talk about their families' backgrounds.

JOONAS	Onks teidän suvussa tehty* sukututkimusta?
ORVOKKI	No ei oikeestaan. Onks sun?
JOONAS	Joo, vähäsen.
ORVOKKI	Mistä päin sun vanhempas on kotosin?
JOONAS	Äidin suku tulee pohjosesta. Mun äiti on syntyny
	Kuhmossa, mutta paljon sukua on myös Oulussa. Se
	suku on pysytelly jokseenkin Pohjois-Pohjanmaalla.
ORVOKKI	Mistäs sun isäs suku on kotosin?
JOONAS	Pietarsaaresta Pohjanmaan maakunnasta.
ORVOKKI	Isän suku on karjalaisia Viipurista. Mun isä on syntyny
	Lappeenrannassa Etelä-Karjalan maakunnassa.

JOONAS Onks sun äitis kans sieltä päin?

ORVOKKI Ei. Äiti on Varsinais-Suomesta, Naantalista.

JOONAS Oot sä sitten uusmaalainen?

ORVOKKI Niin monet luulee, ku mä oon asunu jo niin kauan

Espoossa, mut mä oon syntyny Tampereella Pirkanmaalla.

JOONAS Tapasko sun vanhempas Tampereella?

ORVOKKI Joo. Ne molemmat opiskeli Tampereen yliopistossa.

## Vocabulary



jo|kse|en|kin somewhat kans > mvös also kaua|n for a long time lääni administrative province maa+kunta region monelt many oikeestaan > really oikea|sta|an opiskelestudy pohjonen se > north(ern) pohjoinen

pysy|ttelestay, remain sielltä pälin from thereabouts sisälllä inside suku kin, relative(s) suku+tutkimus genealogy syntybe born tapasko > tapas|i|vat|ko tapaXmeet uus+ person from maallalinen Uusimaa vanhemma|t parents

HämeQ region of (SW) Finland

Karjalainen se Karelian

Kuhmo Kymi e

Lappeenranta

Naantali

Oulu

Pietarsaari e

Pori

**TampereQ** 

**Uusimaa** 

Vaasa

Viipuri

<sup>\*</sup> Onks teidän suvussa tehty 'Has anyone done any genealogy on your (extended) family?'



### Exercise 1

Find the places listed at the bottom of p. 255 on a map of Finland, and then write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences by raiding Dialogue 1. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

- 1 Where are your mother's people from?
- 2 That's what a lot of people think.
- 3 They both studied at the University of Jyväskylä.
- 4 I've a lot of relatives in Oulu, as well.
- 5 Is your father also from there?



## 🔀 Dialogue 2



#### Suomalaisia eläimiä Finnish fauna (CD2; 12)

GREG Kuule Paula, eihän se pidä paikkaansa, että Suomessa olisi jääkarhuja?

PAULA No ei todellakaan. Se on vaan sellanen myytti Suomesta ulkomailla. Jääkarhuja täällä ei todellakaan kulje kaduilla. Ainut paikka, jossa voi niitä nähda on eläintarhassa.

GREG Karhuja täällä nyt kuitenkin on?

PAULA On, jonkin verran. Mäkin oon nähny yhden kerran karhun marjareisulla. Säikähdin tosi paljon, mut onneks se vaan tuijotti mua vähän aikaa, ja käänty sitten pois.

GREG Karhut voi kai olla vaarallisiakin?

PAULA Joo, mut ne käy harvoin ihmisten kimppuun. Ihan viime aikoina on ollu joitakin tapauksia, että sudet on hyökänny karjan kimppuun ja aiheuttaneet suuria vahinkoja.

GREG Onks Suomessa muitakin petoeläimiä?

PAULA On meillä ilveksiä ja ahmoja, mut ne on kyllä aika harvinaisia. Yleisimpiä metsäneläimiä Suomessa on hirvet, peurat ja jänikset. Lapissa pidetään paljon poroja elinkeinona, mut ne on samalla tavalla vapaana luonnossa ku hirvetki.

GREG No hyvä. Nyt mä voinki valistaa ihmisiä kotipuolessa, että Suomi ei olekaan ihan mikään villi pohjola, vaikka täällä onki paljon mielenkiintoisia eläimiä.

## Vocabulary



V 0 0 0 10 0 11	J., 7		
ahmo	wolverine	miele n+	interesting
aihe utta-	cause	kiintoinen	
ainut	sole, only	myytti	myth
ei tode lla kaan	not really	peto+eläin	beast of prey
el∣in+keino	means of survival	peura	wild reindeer
elä∣in ime	animal	pitä∣ä	be correct
eläin+tarha	Z00	paikka∣nsa	
harvina∣inen	rare	Pohjola	the North; ultima Thule
harvo∣in	rarely	poro	domesticated
hirvi e	deer	polo	reindeer
hyökkäX-	attacks	sellanen >	
ilves kse	lynx	sellainen	
jänis kse	hare	susi te	wolf
jää+karhu	polar bear	säikähtä-	be startled, alarmed
karhu	bear	tapa us kse	case (tapaX- meet
karja	cattle		with)
koti+puole ssa	back home	tuijotta-	stare
kulje∣Q	conneg. of	ulko+ma∣i∣lla	abroad
	kulke- go,	vaara∣llinen	dangerous
	walk	vahinko	damage; pity
käy-	attack	val∣ista-	enlighten (valo light)
kimppu un		X n verran	to X extent; jonkin
luo-	create		verran to some
luo∣nto	nature		extent
marja+reisu	berry-hunting	villi	wild
	expedition	yle∣inen	general, widespread

### Exercise 2

Arrange the following zoological vocabulary according to size of the animal, from the largest down to the smallest:





### Exercise 3

Sort according to wild/tame:

#### poro ankka kissa peura karia koira ilves ahmo



# 👫 Dialogue 3



#### Talviurheilua Winter sports (CD2; 13)

Karsten and Juhani enthuse over the variety of Finnish winter sports.

Suomen talvi on kyllä ihana, ku on niin paljon lunta, että KARSTEN

voi hyvin hiihtää metsässäkin.

Sähän alat kuulostaa ihan suomalaiselta, ku pidät niin JUHANI

kovasti hiihdosta.

Niin, enpä olis uskonu\* pari vuotta sitten, että hiihto tulee KARSTEN

mulle intohimoksi.

Suomalaisten suosituin talviurheilu on varmaan hiihto. JUHANI

> [He picks up a leaflet.] Hei, tässä lukee, että sillä on [he reads] 'pitkät perinteet. Ennen vanhaan sukset olivat tärkeä liikkumaväline talvella. Nyt juuri kukaan ei käytä niitä siihen tarkoitukseen, vaan lähinnä harrastusmielessä. Hiihtoa pidetään yhtenä parhaimmista liikuntamuodoista,

koska se vahvistaa niin monia eri lihaksia.' No niin.

KARSTEN Suomalaisethan on aina pärjänneet hyvin

hiihtokilpailuissa.

Niin on, ja samoin mäkihypyssä. Niitä voi pitää JUHANI

suomalaisten parhaina talviurheilulajeina.

Onhan sitte vielä jääkiekko. Suomihan voitti KARSTEN

> maailmanmestaruuden vuonna 1995, ja se sai hopeaa vuosina 1998, 1999, 2001, ja 2007 sekä pronssia 2000,

2006, ja 2008.

JUHANI Sähän alat tuntea Suomea paremmin ku mä. Se

maailmanmestaruus on kyllä tosi tärkee suomalaisille.

<sup>\*</sup> enpä olis(i) uskonu(t) 'I really wouldn't have believed'.

#### Vocabulary lun|ta sP of lumi e snow ennen long ago vanha|an mestar|uus te championship, eri different, diverse mastery harrastus+ as a hobby mäki+hyppy skijump mielelssä pronssi bronze hiiht|o skiing aet by OK päriäXhiihtäski suksi e ski hopea silver suosiltulin most favoured. ihana favourite lovely into+himo talvi+urheilu winter sport passion iää+kiekko ice hockey tarkoitlus kse purpose kova sti a lot urheilu+laii type of sport kuulostasound uskohelieve vahv∣istaliha|s kse muscle (liha strengthens (vahva) flesh, meat) vuon|na in (the) year (sESS liikkuma+ means of of vuosi te)

yhte|nä

sESS of vksi

### Exercise 4

välineQ



#### How things seem (-ItA) to one (-stA)

getting about

liikunta+muoto form of exercise

This is a good time to revise the most important verbs which refer to the way things strike our senses. They are **näyttä**- 'look, seem', **kuulosta**- 'sound', **maistu**- 'taste', **haise**- 'smell', and **tuntu**- 'feel, seem'. The way things seem is put in the ablative, for example, **Nyt näyttää kyllä huono|lta hetke|ltä** 'Now seems like a bad time', and the person who has the impression goes into the elative, for example, **Minu|sta vesi tuntuu kylmä|ltä** 'The water feels cold to me'.

Revise these verbs by building sentences using the following nouns and adjectives in various combinations (if you've forgotten any, look them up in the back of the book):

Noun	Adjective	Perceiver	
juusto	hyvä	minä	
talo	kallis	sinä	
ohjelma	kova	Orvokki	
kaupunki	makea	me	
kukka	mielenkiintoinen	lääkäri	
vuode	paha	lapset	
glögi	tuore	nainen	
yskä	vanha	hän	



# Language point

### More ways of being vague: submerged subjects

As you have seen in earlier units, Finnish sentences frequently leave the subject or main actor unspecified. There are two main ways in which subjects may be so 'submerged': if the submerged subject is more than one person, the indefinite forms of the verb are used, as in Espanjassakin vähennetään veroja 'They're lowering taxes in Spain, as well'. If the submerged subject could be a single person, the third person singular form is used, but without a subject pronoun, i.e. neither hän nor se. For example (Ø stands for the omitted pronoun): Joskus Ø joutulu odottamaan koko päivän 'Sometimes one ends up having to wait all day'. Such pronoun omission also works in constructions which mark the actor or experiencer with other cases, such as the genitive (Unit 10), as in Talvella Ø täytyy pukeutua lämpimästi 'In winter one must dress warmly'; compare Kesälläkin minun täytyy pukeutua lämpimästi 'Even in summer I have to dress warmly'. Note also the similar effect of omitting the specific personal pronoun from a construction such as minula nolotti, kun 'it made me (feel) embarrassed when' vs. Ø nolotti, kun 'it was embarrassing when'.

There is yet another way in which Finnish sentences can be less explicit than their English equivalents: detransitivized verbs. Hundreds of transitive verbs have intransitive analogues which are formed with the suffixes =U, =UtU, or =ntU; a sentence built with such a verb requires only a subject. Compare nake- 'sees' and nakly- 'is visible' in these two sentences:

Mä e|n näe kadun loppu|a. I can't see the end of the street.

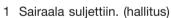
Kadun loppu e|i näy. The end of the street isn't visible.

Here are some more pairs of transitive and intransitive verbs:

English	Transitive	Intransitive	English
contain	sisältä-	sisält∣y-	be contained
remove	pois ta-	poist u-	be removed, depart
cover	peittä-	peitt y-	be covered
finish	lopetta-	lopp∣u-	come to an end
gather	keräX-	kerää∣nty-	be gathered, pile up
add, append	lisäX-	lisää∣nty-	be augmented
open	avaX-	ava utu-	open
interrupt	keskeyt∣tä-	keske yty-	be interrupted
moisten	kost utta-	kost∣u-	become moist
			(kostea 'damp, moist')
set free	vapa∣utta-	vapa∣utu-	become free (vapaa 'free')

### Exercise 5

A subject is submerged in each of the following sentences. Make up your own explicit versions, starting with the subjects suggested in brackets.



- 2 Ovi avautui. (tyttö)
- 3 Keskustelu keskeytyy. (isäni)
- 4 Täytyy järjestää huone. (pojat)
- 5 On pakko lähteä nyt. (me)
- 6 Autoa etsitään. (poliisi)

### Language point

# Nuances of some very useful verbs: pitä- and verbs of motion

You first met the verb **pitä**- back in Unit 2, where you learned that it means 'likes' when used with the elative (**Etsä pidä kahvi|sta?** 'Don't





you like coffee?'). In Unit 10 you saw how **pitä**-, like **täyty**-, expresses necessity in constructions such as **Mun piti mennä kauppaan vaihtamaan** 'I had to go into a shop to get change'.

This verb has several other common uses. It can be the equivalent of English 'keeps' (Pidä ikkuna auki! 'Keep the window open!'), 'holds' (Se pitää jotain kädessään '(S)he's holding something in her/his hand'), and 'considers' (and what you consider something to be is put into the essive: Hiihtoa pidetään hyvä|nä liikuntamuoto|na 'Skiing is considered a good form of exercise'). Notice also the following constructions: pitä|ä hauska|a 'has a good time'; pitä|ä puhee|n 'gives a speech'; pitä|ä huol|ta itsestään 'takes care of him/herself', pitää paikka|nsa 'holds true' (lit. 'holds its place').

#### Verbs of motion

The more specialized verbs of motion are usually fairly similar in scope and use to their English equivalents: you have already met many of the most common of these: lähte- 'leave, depart', saapu- 'arrive', nouse- 'rise', laske- 'descend', juokse- 'run'. Notice also liikku- and siirty- (intransitive), liikutta- and siirtä- (transitive), which are all 'move'. Liikku- and liikutta- focus more on the motion itself, siirty- and siirtä- more on the change of location. Liikutta- is also 'move (emotionally)': Kvartetin viimeinen osa liikutti yleisön kyyneliin 'The last movement of the quartet moved the audience to tears'. 'Moving house' is muutta-. Note also puuttu-, which translates both English 'be missing', as in puhe|esta puuttui 'was missing from the speech' and 'interfere, butt in', as in puuttui puhee|seen 'butted into the conversation'.

The more general verbs are also interesting, but from a different angle. Alongside **mene**- 'go' and **tule**- 'come', which from an English point of view are fairly straightforward, Finnish has a few other verbs of motion which lack close English equivalents. You have already encountered **käy**-. Depending on context, this verb can be translated as either 'go' or 'come': the essential difference is that a return trip is usually implied. Thus **Se kävi Ruotsi**|ssa '(S)he came/went to Sweden' (note the use of the stative, inessive case) implies that (s)he is no longer in Sweden, but has returned to wherever (s)he left from. Another common English equivalent is therefore 'visits': **Tule** 

**käymään!** 'Come and pay us a visit!' **Käy**- has many other common meanings, including:

- 1 'go' in the sense of 'be working', i.e. without locomotion, as in Mun kello käy edellä 'My watch is fast' (closer: 'goes ahead'); notice also Olut käy 'The beer is brewing', Ulkona käy kova tuuli 'There's a harsh wind outside', Meri käy 'There is a sea'.
- 2 'attend', as in käy koulu|a 'is attending school'.
- 3 'become', as in Kävi selväksi, ettei se auta meitä 'It became clear that it/(s)he wouldn't help us'. Notice also käy- ilmi, as in Kävi ilmi, että se oli naimisissa 'It turned out that (s)he was married'. Parallel constructions with the illative are also common, for example, Mun uneni kävi tote|en 'My dream came true', Suu käy hymy|yn 'Her/his mouth breaks into a smile'.
- 4 'walk', but this is more precisely **kävele**-; 'step', more precisely **astu**-; 'happen' (**tapahtu**-); 'be suitable' (**sopi**-); 'be valid' (**päte**-).

With 'motion-to' suffixes, **käy**- means something like 'attacks' or 'gets stuck into', for example, **Se kävi mua kurkku|un** '(S)he/it went for my throat', **yksityiskoht|i|in käymättä** 'without going into details'; notice also **Karhu ei käynyt lapsen kimppu|un** 'The bear didn't attack the child' (**kimppu** on its own is something like 'bunch').

Pääse- and joutu- deserve special attention because of their focus: whereas pääse- focuses on trying hard to get somewhere, managing to get somewhere (desirable), joutu- emphasizes a lack of intention. So we have Sen maalaus pääsi kansainväliseen näyttelyyn 'His/ her painting made it into an international exhibition', but Sen maalaus joutui roskakoriin 'His/her painting wound up in the bin'. Compare also Mä pääsin kertomaan koko jutun 'I managed/had a chance/ was allowed to tell the whole story', Mä jouduin kertomaan koko jutun 'I ended up/wound up telling the whole story'.

Then there is **kulke**-. This verb is also often translated as 'go', but it usually refers to regular, frequently channelled motion, especially that of vehicles, as in **Junat kulkee ajallaan** 'The trains run on time'. But notice also **Tästä kulki ennen joki** 'A river used to be/run here', **Kahviloissa huhut kulkivat vauhdikkaasti** 'In the cafés, rumours circulated swiftly'.

Finally, there is jää-. This verb is usually translated as 'stay' or 'remain', but you should remember that it takes 'motion-to' cases: '(S)he's staying at home' is **Se jää koti**|in.



### Exercise 6

#### Put into Finnish:

- 1 We went to Sweden last year.
- 2 Are you staying here or are you coming along?
- 3 The news (tieto) travels fast.
- 4 It turned out that she speaks Finnish.
- 5 He moved to Harold's place.



### Exercise 7

Viimeiset sanat. Translate these 'famous last words':

- 1 Ei ne pure jos sä et pelkää niitä.
- 2 Kyllä mä nämä vedet tunnen.
- 3 Ei sieltä junaa tähän aikaan tule.
- 4 Kyllä siltä sillalta eilen vielä ainakin pääsi.
- 5 Täällä Lapissa kaikki maisemat näyttää aika samanlaisilta.



# K Dialogue 4



### Korvatunturi Some fanciful geography (CD2; 14)

ANNI: Hei Paul, ootko jo lähettäny kirjeen joulupukille

Korvatunturille?

PAUL: Heh, heh! Mut miten niin Korvatunturille. Joulupukkihan asuu Pohjoisnavalla.

ANNI: No ei varmasti asu, vaan Suomen Lapissa, Korvatunturilla. Kyllä joulupukki on suomalainen, kysy vaikka keneltä tahansa\* Suomessa.

PAUL: Okei, okei, uskon kyllä sua. Halusin vaan vähän kiusata, kun suomalaiset on niin herkkiä tästä joulupukkiasiasta!

ANNI: Niin, ku joulupukki on niin tärkee osa joulua Suomessa.

Kaikki suomalaiset lapset uskoo, että joulupukki asuu

Korvatunturilla ja tekee työpajassaan tonttujen kanssa leluja
lapsille koko vuoden. Sitten jouluaattona pukki jakaa lahjat
matkustaen poroillaan ympäri suomen.

PAUL: Ja tontut on joulupukin korvaamattomia apulaisia?

ANNI: Joo. Ennen joulua ne kiertelevät ikkunoiden takana

kurkkimassa, jotta joulupukki tietää kuka on ollu kilttinä ja

kuka ei!

PAUL: Tuo on kyllä kiristystä, vaikka se kyllä varmaan toimii

hyvin. Lapset yrittävät olla kiltimpiä, jotta saisivat enemmän

lahjoja.

ANNI: Onhan se vähän huijausta, mutta kyllä tonttuja on ihan

oikeesti olemassa. Kirjoita vaikka joulupukille, jos et usko. Tässä on osoite: Joulupukin kamari, 96930 Napapiiri.

### Vocabulary



apu lainen	assistant	lelu	toy
herkkä	sensitive, touchy	matk usta-	travel (matka trip)
huijaus kse	swindle	napa+piiri e	Arctic Circle
jaka-	distribute	oikee sti >	
joulu+pukki	Father Christmas	oikea sta an	
kamari	chamber	okei	OK
ke(ne)ltä	sABL of kuka	on ole ma ssa	exists
kiertele-	travel around, rove	pohjois+napa	North Pole
kiltti	well-behaved, good	tahansa	-ever
kiristys kse	tension; extortion,	X∣n takana	behind X
	blackmail	toimi-	work, function
kiusaX-	tease	tonttu	elf
Korva+tunturi	a <b>tunturi</b> in	työ+paja	workshop
	Northern Finland	usko-	believe
korvaa maton	irreplaceable	ympäri	all over Finland
kurkki-	peep/peek	Suome n	
lahja	gift, present	yrittä-	try
lapsi e	child (sP las ta)		

<sup>\*</sup> kysy vaikka keneltä tahansa 'just ask anyone'.



### Exercise 8

(Refer to the previous dialogue if you're stuck.)

- 1 Ask a friend whether (s)he has sent a certain letter yet.
- 2 Tell him/her to ask any musician.
- 3 Tell him/her you believe him/her.
- 4 Say you just wanted to tease him/her.
- 5 Tell him/her that you know who's been good and who hasn't.



### 🙆 Language point

#### Revision: uses of the genitive

You have now met most of the constructions which use the genitive. This section provides a quick overview of these uses, which we may group into three basic types:

- 1 The genitive proper. This group includes possessives like **Heiki|n auto** 'Heikki's car' and postpositional and prepositional constructions like **talo|n takana** 'behind the house' and **kautta Turu|n** 'via Turku' (Unit 9). Here, too, belongs the adverb of intensity, as in **poikkeuksellise|n kaunis** 'exceptionally beautiful' (Unit 6).
- 2 Accusative marker. This use is characteristic only of nouns in the singular, for example, Mä näin Heiki|n eilen 'I saw Heikki yesterday' (Unit 5).
- 3 Subject in a modal construction, or of a linked verb. There are several subtypes:
  - (a) Heiki|n täyty|y mennä kotiin. Heikki must go home. (Unit 10)
  - (b) Heiki|n on mentävä kotiin. Heikki must go home. (Unit 13)
  - (c) **Heiki**|**n saapuessa minä lähdin.** I left as Heikki arrived. (Unit 13)
  - (d) **Heiki|n tul|tu|a minä lähdin.** Once Heikki had come, I left. (Unit 12)
  - (e) Minä lähdin Heiki|n näh|de|n. I left in full view of Heikki.(Unit 13)
  - (f) Minä lähdin Heiki|n huomaa|ma|tta. I left without Heikki noticing. (Unit 6)
  - (g) Mä kuulin Heiki|n lähtevän. I heard Heikki leave. (Unit 12)

There is also a common construction with **anta**-, expressing permission, for example:

- (h) **Mä annoin Heiki**|n ajaa mun autoa. I let Heikki drive my car. One last construction, built with the third infinitive, will come up in Unit 15:
- (i) Heiki|n kirjoitta|ma|ssa kirjee|ssä in a letter which Heikki wrote.

## Reading



### (CD2; 15)

#### **Olavinlinna**



Savonlinnan oopperajuhlat on yksi kesän tärkeimmistä kulttuuritapahtumista Suomessa. Se on kansainvälinen oopperafestivaali. Olavin linna on juhlien päänäyttämönä. Olavin linnan sanotaan olevan yksi kauneimmista keskiaikaisista linnoista pohjolassa. Se on vanha esimerkki Pohjoismaisesta yhteistyöstä; Ruotsin kuningas antoi tanskalaiselle ritarille tehtäväksi rakentaa Suomen maaperälle linnan Norjan kuninkaan kunniaksi.

### **Turun linna**

Turun linnan voisi luonnehtia yhdeksi Suomen kansallisista symboleista. Retki Turun linnassa on kuin Suomen historian oppitunti yli neljästä vuosisadasta, 1200-luvulta 1600-luvun loppuun. Linnaa alettiin rakentaa noin 1280. 1500-luku oli linnan historian värikkäin vuosisata. Toisessa maailman sodassa Turun linna tuhoutui pahoin. Sodan jälkeen aloitettiin restaurointi työ, joka saatiin päätökseen 1961.

#### Kalevala

Kalevala on Suomen kansalliseepos. Se ilmestyi ensimmäisen kerran 1835. Kalevala on käännetty 45 kielelle ja se on hyväksytty, ainoana suomalaisena teoksena, englanninkieliseen 'Maailman klassikot' – sarjaan.

#### **Eduskuntatalo**

Eduskuntatalo valmistui 1931 Arkadianmäelle. Rakennuksen suunnitteli professori J.S. Siren. Rakennuksesta tuli uuden Helsingin symboli.

#### Suomenlinna

Vuonna 1747 aloitettiin Viaporin/Sveaborgin/Suomenlinnan rakentaminen saarelle Helsingin edustalle. Suomenlinnasta tuli alueen mahtavimpia linnoituksia. Suuri laivasto asettui linnoitukseen. Suomenlinnaa on kutsuttu 'Pohjolan Gibraltariksi'. Suomensodassa linnoituksen oli antauduttava venäläisille joukoille. Nykyään Suomenlinnasta on tullut suosittu vapaa-ajanvietto paikka. Siellä on myös museoita kuten Armfelt ja Ehrensvärd museo, sukellusvene Vesikko ja pohjoismainen taidegalleria. Osa Suomenlinnaa on vieläkin sotilasaluetta.



## Vocabulary

ale ttiin	past indefinite of alka-	päätös kse restauroi nti	decision, ruling
asettu-	be set up, take up a position	retki e	trip, excursion
ed usta galleria	place in front of X gallery	saari e sarja	island series
kansa∣i∣n+ välinen	international	sotilaX sukellus kse	soldier
klassikko kunnia	classic honour, glory	suunn=ittele-	diving plans
laiva sto linno itus kse	fleet fortification	tapahtu ma teh tä vä	event, happening task
luonnehti- maa+perä	characterizes soil, ground	tuho utu-	is destroyed, damaged
mahta∣va Norja	huge, great, mighty Norway	valmistu- väri∣kkäX	be prepared, made ready colourful
oppi+tunti pohjois+ mainen	class northern-country (adi)	yhteis+	joint, mutual

### Unit Fifteen

### Vakavia asioita

#### Serious matters

### In this unit you will:



- · read about Finnish authors, Turku, social security, and the EU
- · learn more about how to say 'self' and 'other'
- · meet two more uses for the third infinitive
- · learn about the remaining four case suffixes
- revise how to say 'everyone', 'no matter what', 'from somewhere', and the like

# Dialogue 1



#### Suomi ja Euroopan unioni (CD2; 16)



Two friends, lida and Riitta, talk about the EU and Finland's relationship to the EU.

Voit sä auttaa mua? Mulla olis\* pari kysymystä EU:sta ja Suomen suhteesta EU:hun. Kirjotan yhteiskuntatiedon esitelmää.

RIITTA Joo, totta kai. Anna tulla.

IIDA Millon Suomesta tuli EU:n jäsen?

RIITTA 1. tammikuuta 1995 yhdessä Itävallan ja Ruotsin kanssa. Sitä ennen Suomessa järjestettiin kansanäänestys, jossa noin 57 prosenttia kansalaisista äänesti EU:n puolesta.

IIDA No mitä kaikkea EU on tuonut tullessaan?

RIITTA No nyt suomalaiset voi matkustaa Euroopassa vapaasti ja muuttaa toiseen EU-maahan ja tehdä siellä töitä. Erilaiset EU-direktiivit on osa Suomen lainsäädäntöä, ja maatalous ja kaikenlaiset hankkeet saa tukea EU:lta.

IIDA Ja Suomen valuutta on nyt euro markan sijaan.

RIITTA Aivan. Euro otettiin käyttöön käteisvaluuttana vuonna 2002.

IIDA Mitä mieltä suomalaiset on EU:sta?

RIITTA Monia harmittaa liiallinen byrokratia ja joidenkin mielestä Brysselillä on liikaa valtaa.

Brysselistä puheenollen, kuinka monta edustajaa Suomella on Euroopan parlamentissa?

RIITTA Muistaakseni Suomella on 13 meppiä.

IIDA Ja kuka edustaa Suomea EU:n huippukokouksissa?

RIITTA Eurooppa-neuvoston kokouksissa Suomea edustaa pääministeri.

IIDA Okei. Eiköhän tää riitä. Katson netistä lisää tietoa EU:sta. Kiitos paljon.

RIITTA Eipä kestä.

<sup>\*</sup> olis (> ol|isi) The conditional is used here, as often, to mitigate a request.

# Vocabulary



	y , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
anna Q tulla	bring it on, shoot	liika	too much
byrokratia	bureaucracy	maa+talo us te	agriculture
direktiivi	directive		(talous
esi tel mä	presentation	_	husbanding)
esi ttele-	make a	meppi	MP
	presentation	mi tä kaikke a	what kinds
hankk eQ	venture, initiative (stem: <b>hanke</b> )	mi∣tä miel∣tä	of things of what opinion
hankk i-	attain, procure,		(mieli e mind)
	supply	muista kse ni	as I recollect
harmitta-	irk	puhe en+ol le n	speaking of X
huippu	peak, summit	X stA	
ltä+valta	Austria	X∣n sija∣an	instead of X
jo i den kin	in some		(sija (exact)
miele∣stä	people's		place)
	opinion	suhteQ	relation(ship)
järje∣stä-	arrange,		(stem: <b>suhde</b> )
	organize	tiede	science (stem:
järki e	sense, brains		tiet∣eQ, cf. tietä- know)
koko us kse	meeting	tot∣ta kai	of course,
käte∣is+	cash ( <b>käsi</b>	ισιμα και	vou bet
	te hand)	tuki e	support
käyttö∣ön	adopt (take	tul le ssa an	when it
otta-	into use)	tuijiejssajaii	comes/came
lai n	legislation	valuutta	currency
+säädä∣ntö	( <b>säätä</b> - regulate)	yhteis+kunta	society
laki	law	yhteis+kunta	sociology
		+tiet eQ	Sociology
liia∣llinen	excessive		

### Exercise 1

Write your own Finnish dialogue, in which someone from Britain explains his or her attitude towards the EU to someone from Finland. You can have them discuss referenda, exports and imports, hopes and fears.





### Canguage point

### More submerged subjects: saying how you feel

People are often governed (or at least swayed) by their emotions. and Finnish grammar has a way of reflecting this. Alongside such expressions as Mä oon iloinen 'l'm happy', Mä oon pettynyt 'l'm disappointed', Harri on vihainen 'Harold is angry', Finnish even more commonly uses a construction in which a verb, always in the third person, governs the person with the emotion or feeling. This person is put into the partitive. Thus, for example, Finns are less likely to say Mä oon väsynyt 'I am tired' than Mua väsyttää, more closely 'tires me', an expression in which there is no agent specified. Other examples include:

mua nukuttala I'm feeling sleepy mua pyöryttä ä I'm feeling dizzy

mua pelotta|a I'm afraid

mua huvittala I feel like. I enjoy

I'm thirstv mua ianottala mua ihmettälä I'm amazed I detest mua inhottala

mua arvelutta|a I'm concerned mua ärsyttälä It irritates me mua nolottala I'm embarrassed



# 🔀 Dialogue 2



### Turku Åbo (CD2; 17)

Turku, now Finland's second (or, in population, fourth) city, was originally her first: its heyday began in the sixteenth century, when what is now southwest Finland was part of the kingdom of Sweden. A university (Turu|n Akatemia, Åbo Akademi) was founded at Turku/Åbo in 1640 (later moved to Helsinki), and it was the capital until 1812. Turku now has two new universities, one Swedish and one Finnish.

RIITTA	Mitä sä teit viime viikonloppuna?
JULIA	Kävin Turussa.
RIITTA	Millanen matka oli?
JULIA	Tosi onnistunut. Mä opin paljon Suomen vanhasta
	pääkaupungista.
RIITTA	Turku taitaa olla perustettu* jo 1200-luvulla.
JULIA	Joo. Vuoden 1154 arabialaisessa Idrīsī:n kartassa† mainittiin
	kaks paikkaa Suomesta. Ne oli Turku ja Häme.
RIITTA	Kävitsä Turun Tuomiokirkossa?
JULIA	Tietysti. Se oli upea kirkko. Se vihittiin 1300.
RIITTA	Sitte sä varmaan tutustuit Mikael Agricolaanki.‡
JULIA	Kyllä. Hänhän <sup>§</sup> oli Turun piispana ja ensimmäisen
	suomenkielisen aapisen tekijä. Mä kävin myös Turun
	linnassa.
RIITTA	Tykkäsitkö?
JULIA	Olin haltioissani. Mä olen keskiaikaisten linnojen ihailija.
RIITTA	Mitä muuta sä ehdit nähdä?
JULIA	Kävin Luostarinmäen käsityöläismuseossa katsomassa miten
	ennen vanhaan elettiin Turussa. Sieltä mä ostin nekkuja ja
	söin itseni melkein kipeeks.
RIITTA	Tiesitsä että Turusta julistetaan joka vuosi joulurauha kello
	kaksitoista jouluaattopäivänä.
JULIA	En tienny. Mutta tiedän että Turun Akatemia perustettiin
	1640.

Sulla tais olla\*\* antoisa viikonloppu.

Oli. Mutta vielä jäi paljon näkemättä.††

RIITTA

JULIA

<sup>\*</sup> taitaa olla perustettu 'must have been founded; I guess it was founded'.

<sup>†</sup> arabialaisessa Idrīsī:n kartassa 'on the Arab map of (ash-Sharīf al-)Idrīsī' (12th century geographer and adviser to Roger II, Norman king of Sicily).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> Mikael Agricola: see Exercise 2.

<sup>§</sup> hän|hän 'he, (as) you know, . . .'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Olin haltioissani 'I was on cloud nine'.

<sup>\*\*</sup> Sulla tais olla 'you must have had'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>††</sup> (mutta) jäi paljon näkemättä '(l) missed a lot', closer translation: 'much remained unseen (of me)'.



# Vocabulary

			1 1 6
aapinen	primer	käsi+työ∣läis	handicrafts
anto∣isa	productive,	+museo	museum
	rich	millanen >	
arabia lainen	Arab(ic),	millainen	
	Arabian	nekku	toffee cone
ele ttiin	pt ind of <b>elä</b> -	onn istu-	succeed, come
ihaili∣ja	admirer		off well
itse ni	myself	per usta-	found
joulu+aatto	day before	piispa	bishop
+päivä	Christmas	tais > taisi,	
joulu+rauha	Christmas	pt of <b>taita</b> -	
	peace	teki∣jä	maker, author
juli∣sta-	proclaim,	tienny =	
	declare,	tietä nyt	
	make public	tuomio+kirkko	cathedral
	(julkinen)	upea	magnificent,
keski+aika inen	medieval	_	grand
kipeeks >		vihki-	consecrate
kipeeksi			



### Exercise 2

Dig the answers to these out of the dialogue above.

- 1 When was Turku cathedral consecrated?
- 2 What was founded in 1640?
- 3 Who was Mikael Agricola?
- 4 What kind of museum is at Luostarinmäki?

## Language point



## Self and other

English 'myself', 'yourself', 'herself', 'ourselves' and the like are rendered in Finnish by the word **itse** with the appropriate possessive suffix. For example:

Mä söin itse|ni kipeeksi. I ate myself sick.

Se katselee itse|ä|än peilistä. (S)he looks at him/herself in

the mirror.

Tunne itse|si! Know thyself!

Mu|lla on itse|lla|ni kolme lasta. I have three children myself.

But **itse** does not take suffixes when it is used to mean 'even' (= **jopa**) or 'none other than', as in:

Se on itse julkeus.

(S)he is arrogance personified.

Itse presidentti on sanonut, että...

None other than the president (him/herself) has said that . . .

Vankien täytyi huolehtia itse kurista.

The prisoners even had to see to discipline.

'Other' and 'another' are a bit more complicated. In reciprocal situations such as 'They loved one another' you have a choice. (1) You use **toinen** in the appropriate plural case and with the appropriate possessive suffix, as in **Ne rakasti tois**|i|a|an, or (2) you use **toinen** twice, the first time in the nominative singular and the second time with the appropriate possessive and case suffix, as in **Ne rakasti toinen tois**|ta|an.

**Toinen** refers to one or the other of two known entities; **muu** is 'other' in the sense of 'something else', or 'different'. Indeclinable **eri** is 'other' in the sense of 'separate', 'distinct', and 'various'. There is some overlap in the use of these three words, but keeping these distinctions in mind should help. Contrast:

toise|ssa huonee|ssa muu|ssa huonee|ssa eri huonee|ssa in the other room

in another (= different) room in another (= separate) room



Put into Finnish

- 1 They already know one another.
- 2 He's always talking about himself.
- 3 I've left my bag in the other room.
- 4 There were also a few other guests.
- 5 They came to visit at two different times.
- 6 I couldn't get anyone to believe me (= myself).



## 🔊 Language point

# Four more noun suffixes: abessive, instructive, comitative, and prolative

These suffixes are all somewhat rare, but you will need at least to recognize them.

The abessive, -ttA, you have already met, in connection with the third infinitive (Unit 6). With ordinary nouns, it means 'without'; thus vaiva|tta 'without trouble' is just a more formal way of saying ilman vaiva|a (Unit 7). It usually occurs with the singular, but notice the expression mu|i|tta mutk|i|tta 'without (any further) ado' (mutka 'bend, curve'). You'll come across this suffix mostly in fixed phrases; don't try making up your own unless you want to sound silly.

You have also already met the *instructive*: it is the -**n** which is added to the second infinitive (Unit 13). With ordinary nouns, it means something like 'with' or 'by means of', for example:

jala|n on foot

om|i|n käs|i|n with one's own hands

koste|i|n silm|i|n with moist eyes

ehdo|i|n tahdo|i|n intentionally (ehto 'stipulation',

tahto 'wish')

As these examples indicate, the instructive is used most commonly in the plural. The *comitative*, on the other hand, is *always* used in the plural, even when its meaning is singular. Its form is the suffix -ne-; when attached to the last (or only) noun in the phrase, this is followed by the appropriate possessive suffix. For example:

## Se lähti ystäv|i|ne|en.

(S)he left with her/his (own) friends.

## Se haluaa muuttaa perhe|i|ne|en Suomeen.

(S)he wants to move to Finland with her/his (own) family.

## Joulupukki ilmestyi poro|i|ne|en ja lahjo|i|ne|en.

Father Christmas appeared, with his reindeer and his presents.

As these examples suggest, the comitative means something a little more than simple accompaniment (which is expressed by **kanssa** or **kera**, Unit 9). Whereas **perhee**|**nsä kanssa** is no more than 'with his/her family', **perhe**|**i**|**ne**|**en** is closer to 'family and all'.

The *prolative*, -tse, means 'via' or 'by means of' and is restricted to a few types of expression. Some of the more common uses are: puhelim|i|tse 'by telephone', lentoposti|tse 'via air mail', sähköposti|tse 'by email', meri|tse 'by sea', ma|i|tse 'by land', oikeuste|i|tse 'through the courts' (oikeus 'justice', tie 'road, route'), and with postpositions, for example, Kissa juoksi aidan al|i|tse 'The cat ran under the fence', Hän vetäisi t-paidan päänsä yl|i|tse '(S)he pulled his/her T-shirt over his/her (own) head', talon ta|i|tse '(by way of) behind the house' (from taka), reiä|n lävi|tse '(via) through the hole' (reikä, läpi).

## Exercise 4

Match up the items in columns A and B so that they make some kind of sense.

АВ

Se kertoi mulle kaiken vanhempineen.
 Ne muuttaa Ruotsiin puhelimitse.
 Mä näin sen omin silmin.

## Dialogue 3



# **Vähän Suomen taloudesta** A little about Finland's economy **(CD2; 18)**



At the airport, Peter and Heikki discuss unemployment, imports, exports, and souvenirs.

PFTFR Millainen Suomen taloudellinen tilanne nyt on? Melko hyvä, sanoisin. Suomi on tyypillinen läntinen HEIKKI teollisuusmaa. Meillä korkea verotus ja suuri julkinen sektori kuten muissakin Pohjoismaissa. Palvelujen osuus tuotannosta on suuri. Valtionvelka on suhteellisen alhainen. PETER Entä millainen työttömyyssaste Suomessa on? HEIKKI Se on siinä 9 prosenttia. PETER Olen kuullut, että Suomessa oli vaikea lama 1990-luvun alussa. Pitääkö se paikkansa? HEIKKI Joo, Suomi kärsi kovasti Neuvostoliiton hajoamisesta ja pankkikriiseistä. Työttömyysaste oli pahimmillaan 17 prosenttia. Ja mitkä maat on nykyään Suomen suurimpia PETER kauppakumppaneita? Venäjä, Ruotsi ja Saksa on suurimpia, mutta Suomi tekee HEIKKI paljon kauppaa myös Iso-Britannian, Yhdysvaltojen, Alankomaiden ia Kiinan kanssa. PETER Mitkä ovat Suomen vientivaltteja? Olen tietysti kuullut Nokian kännyköistä. Joo, Nokia on Suomen tunnetuin yhtiö maailmalla. Suomi HFIKKI on myös suuri paperin, teräksen ja konetekniikan viejä. Suomessa on iso kemianteollisuus ja tietysti Suomi vie puutavaraa. PFTFR Ajattelin ostaa tuliaisia vaimolleni. Se saisi olla jotain suomalaista Mitä suosittelisit? Marimekon tekstiilit ovat tyylikkäitä ja hyvää laatua. Aarikan HEIKKI puiset tavarat, liittalan lasi ja Arabian posliini ovat myös hyviä tuliaisia. Kannattaa kanssa katsoa Kalevala-koruja. Fazerin suklaa on myös aina tervetullutta.

PETER Lähdenpä tästä ostoksille ennen koneen lähtöä.

HEIKKI Nähdään koneessa!

# Vocabulary



alha∣inen	low	pu∣inen	wooden (puu)
alk u	beginning	puu+tavara	things made
asteQ	degree, level		of wood
kannatta-	be worth it	sii∣nä	about
kauppa+kummppani	trading	suklaa	chocolate
	partner	talo ude llinen	economic
kemia n+teollisuus	chemical	tavara∣t	wares
te	industry	tekstiili t	textiles
koneQ	machine,	teo llinen	industrial
	aeroplane	teo llis uus te	industry
koru	ornament, jewellery	terve+tullut	welcome
kärsi-	suffer, bear	tila∣nteQ	situation
laatu	quality	tunne tu imm i sta	pELA of
laht ö	departure		tunnetuin
lama	depression		best-known (Unit 8)
länt inen	western	tuo ta nto	production
melko	fairly		•
	,	tyypi llinen	typical
metalli	metal	työ tön mä	unemployed
muu a lla kin	elsewhere, as well	työ ttöm yys te	unemployment
Neuvo sto+liitt o	Soviet Union	tyyli∣kkäX	stylish ( <b>tyyli</b> style)
ostos kse	purchase, shopping	valt io n+velka	state (national) debt
palvel u	service	vie-	take away;
pankki+kriisi	banking crisis		export
posliini	porcelain,	vie∣jä	exporter
	china	vie nti	export



# St Dialogue 4



## Suomalaisia kirjailijoita Finnish authors (CD2; 19)

In a bookshop, Mrs Marple enquires into Finnish literature.

MRS MARPLE Päivää! Haluaisin ostaa suomalaisten kirjailijoiden

kirjoittamia kirjoja.\* Voisitteko suositella jotakin?

Aleksis Kiven Seitsemän veljestä on hyvin suosittu. MYYJÄ MRS MARPLE Se minulla jo onkin.† Kerään nimittäin suomalaista

> kirjallisuutta. Minulla on myös Mika Waltarin Sinuhe egyptiläinen ja Emil Sillanpään Nuorena nukkunut.

josta<sup>‡</sup> hän sai Nobelin kirjallisuuspalkinnon.

Ai jaa. Sofi Oksasen Puhdistus on myös todella hyvä. MYYJÄ

Eikös se saanutkin Finlandia-palkinnon pari vuotta sitten? MRS MARPLE MYY.JÄ Joo, sai. Voin myös suositella lämpimästi Monika

Fagerholmin kirjoja Ihanat naiset rannalla ja

Amerikkalainen tyttö.

Eikös ne olekin kirjoitettu alunperin ruotsiksi? MRS MARPLE

ÄLYYM On. Maailmalla luetaan paljon myös Arto Paasilinnan

kirioia. Jäniksen vuosi taitaa olla kaikkein kuuluisin.§

MRS MARPLE Olisin myös kiinnostunut lastenkirjoista ja sarjakuvista.

Lastenkirjoista tulee ensimmäisenä mieleen<sup>1</sup> Mauri ÄLYYM

> Kunnaksen Koiramäki-kirjat ja Tove Janssonin Muumikirjat. Sarjakuvista tunnetuin on Juban piirtämä Viivi ja

Wagner. Siitä on tehty jopa näytelmä.

Entä mitä dekkaria suosittelisit? MRS MARPLE

No, Reijo Mäen Vares-romaaneja luetaan paljon ja MYYJÄ

Leena Lehtolaisen Maria Kallio-kirjasarjaa myös.

Minun täytyykin miettiä vähän. On paljon mistä valita. MRS MARPLE

Kiitos paljon avusta.

<sup>\*</sup> suomalaisten kirjailijoiden kirjoittamia kirjoja 'some books written by Finnish

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> Se minulla jo onkin 'l've already got (a copy of) that'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> jo|sta 'for which'.

<sup>§</sup> kaikke|i|n kuulu|is|in 'the most popular of all'.

<sup>1</sup> tule|e...miele|en 'comes to mind'.

Vocabu	llary		
aik u inen	adult	nuore∣na	sESS of <b>nuori</b> e
akvaario	aquarium		young
alun+perin	originally	nuor∣iso	youth
dekkari	detective novel	nä i n	I saw ( <b>näke</b> -)
egyptiläinen	Egyptian	näyt el mä	play
ihana	delightful, fine	näytteQ∣+ikkuna	display window
jopa	even	palk∣into	prize
kado tta-	lose	piirtä-	draw
kato X-	go missing	puhdist us	cleansing, purge
keräX-	collect		(puhdista-)
kiinnostu-	take an	puu+tarha	garden, orchard
	interest in	saa∣ja	winner, 'getter'
kirja ili ja	writer	sarja+kuva	cartoon, comic
kirja llis uus te	literature	suosi ttele-	recommend
las ten	pG of <b>lapsi</b> e	vaiva∣tta	without difficulty
	child	valiTSE-	choose
lämpimä∣sti	warmly (lämmin	vapa∣us te	freedom
	warm, stem:		(vapaa free)
	lämpimä)	veljes∣tä	sP of <b>veljes</b>
nimi∣ttäin	you see		(stem: veljekse-)
nukku∣nut	fallen asleep		one of a set of brothers
	(nukku-)		Diotricis

Explain in Finnish to a Finn about contemporary English-language authors: what books they have written, what prizes they have won, which ones are read by whom, and so on.





## 🙆 Language point

## Two more uses for the third infinitive

In Unit 6 you learned how to form the third infinitive, and its more common uses in colloquial style. Here we look at two more of its uses.

The first use is common enough in both colloquial and more formal Finnish. It consists of the third infinitive plus the suffix-chain

### -is-i-IIA-PX

where 'PX' stands for any possessive suffix, and it means something like 'on the verge of doing X'. So, for example, 'I was (just) about to fall' is Mä olin putoamaisillani. Roughly equivalent is the first infinitive, with optional vähä|Ilä ('with a little'): Mä olin (vähällä) pudota.

The second use is much more common in written than in spoken Finnish. It is as if we could, in English, turn 'the house that Jack built' into 'the by-Jack-built house'.

## talo, jonka Jack rakensi ↔ Jacki|n rakenta|ma talo

This construction is fully declinable; for example, in the inessive we have

# talo|ssa, jonka Jack rakensi ↔ Jacki|n rakenta|ma|ssa talo|ssa

'in the house which Jack built' or, translated more closely: 'in the by-Jack-built house'

Its conciseness makes this construction very handy, for instance:

## Jatkosodassa Suomi koetti saada talvisodassa menettämänsä alueet takaisin.

In the War of Continuation, Finland attempted to get back the areas which it had lost in the Winter War.

# Me totutaan hyvin nopeasti *uuden tekniikan aiheuttamiin muutoksiin* ympäristössämme.

We quickly get used to changes in our environment which have been brought about by new technology.

Here are a few more examples:

## demar|i|en johta|ma|ssa hallitukse|ssa

in a government led by the Social Democrats

## kirjeesi, jo|n|ka innoitta|ma|na minä kirjoitin tämän

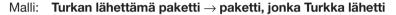
your letter, inspired by which I wrote this

### meidän valitse|ma|ssa|mme konee|ssa

in the machine (which) we chose

## Exercise 6

Rewrite these phrases in colloquial Finnish.



- 1 isän keittämää keittoa.
- 2 lasten kirjoittamat tarinat.
- 3 Goethen mainitsemassa romaanissa.

# Dialogue 5



## Sosiaaliturvasta 1 Social security 1 (CD2; 20)



- ANSA Koska sulla on laskettu aika?\*
- KIRSI Mä kävin eilen äitiysneuvolassa. Laskettu aika on nyt sitte kesäkuun kymmenes.
- ANSA Milloin sun äitiysloma alkaa?
- KIRSI Toukokuun alkupuolella. Turkka ottaa isyyslomaa sit ku vauva on syntyny.
- ANSA Silloin kun meidän Erkki synty, mä sain äitiysrahaa kahdeksankymmentä prosenttia (80%) palkasta, mut nyt ne on tainnu laskee sitä.
- KIRSI Kyllä ne tais sitä laskea, mut mä en nyt muista paljonks se on.
- ANSA Ootsä ajatellu jäädä kotiin äitiysloman loputtua?†
- No ollaan me sitä ajateltu, kun kerran sitä kotihoidontukea saa siihen asti kun vauva täyttää kolme.<sup>‡</sup>

## Sosiaaliturvasta 2 Social security 2

BRIAN Miten sä rahoitat sun opiskelut?

TONI Mä saan valtion opintotukea ja sit mä teen vähän töitä opiskelun ohessa. Mä voisin myös ottaa valtion takaamaa opintolainaa,§ mut se on sit markkinakorkoista.

BRIAN Miten sitten opiskelujen jälkeen?

No tarkoitus olis löytää töitä: Mut jos niit ei heti löydy, niin mä saan sitte työttömyyskorvausta tai toimeentulotukea.

BRIAN Maksaako valtio myös eläkkeet?

TONI Joo, valtio ja työeläkelaitokset. Eläke on kai noin kuuskyt prosenttia (60%) palkasta.

BRIAN Pitääkö siitä sitten maksaa myös sairaala ja terveyskeskuskulut?

TONI Kyllä niistä pitää vähän maksaa. Terveyskeskuksissa se on noin neljätoista euroa kerta tai noin 28 euroa per vuosi ja sairaalakäynneistä maksetaan myös paljon vähemmän ku mitä ne oikeesti maksaa.<sup>¶</sup>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>¶</sup> maksetaan myös paljon vähemmän ku mitä ne oikeesti maksaa: note the two senses of maksa-: 'they pay much less than what they really cost'.



# Vocabulary

alku+puole∣lla asti	in the first half as far as, until (postposition)	is yys+loma	paternity leave (isä father, loma break)
avustus kse	assistance (apu help)	kork o	interest (rate) (korkea high)
elä kkeQ	pension	korvaus kse	compensation
	( <b>elä</b> - live)	korva X-	replace

<sup>\*</sup> laskettu aika 'expected date of delivery' (lit. 'reckoned time').

<sup>†</sup> äitiysloma|n lopu|ttu|a 'once maternity leave has ended'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> siihen asti kun vauva täyttää kolme 'until the baby reaches three (years old)' (lit. 'until then when the baby completes three').

<sup>§</sup> valtio|n takaa|ma|a opinto|laina|a 'an education/study loan guaranteed by the state'.

koska koti+hoido n +tuki e kulu t	when, because home care support costs, expenses	taka X-	guarantees, backs (taka na behind)
laske-	count, reckon;	tark oitus kse	aim, intention, purpose
neuvo la ohe ssa	advice centre alongside (PP	terveys+keskus kse	health centre (terveQ healthy)
opi nto+laina	with G) study loan	toime en+tul o tuki e	getting by support
opi nto+tuki e opi skel u t	support for study, scholarship studies	työ+eläke+laitos kse	work pension system
palkka	pay, wage, salary	työ+paikka työ ttöm yys <i>t</i> e	place (in work) unemployment
per rah oitta-	per (preposition with N) funds ( <b>raha</b>	täyttä- valtio	complete, fill (the) state
sairaa la+käy nti	money) stay in hospital	vauva	( <b>valta</b> power) baby
sosiaali+turva	social security be kept, be	äiti ys te	maternity ( <b>äiti</b> mother)
Sany-	preserved	äiti ys+loma	maternity leave

## Language point



## 'Somehow', 'everyone', 'whatever' and 'elsewhere'

The Finnish expressions for these quasi-logical concepts are formed fairly regularly. We may distinguish seven categories:

1 The *interrogative*. You should know all of these by now. Check that you do with this list:

kuka who? mikä what? millainen what kind of? kumpi which (of two)? miten how? missä where? mistä from where? minne to where? milloin, koska when? miksi whv? palionko how much?

Forms of **mikä** and **millainen** also serve to modify nouns, for example, **mi|ssä paika|ssa** 'in what place?', **millais|i|a filme|j|ä** 'what kinds of films?'

- 2 The indifferent. Here, a free choice is on offer: compare English ever as in whoever, or no matter as in no matter where. In Finnish, you simply add vaan to the interrogative, for example, kuka vaan 'no matter who', missä vaan 'wherever'. More formal Finnish has tahansa or hyvänsä instead: milloin tahansa 'whenever', millainen hyvänsä 'no matter what kind'.
- 3 The indefinite. These are made with some- in English, as in someone, somewhere. In Finnish, the root is jo-, so we have jo|ku 'someone' and jo|kin 'something'; jo|ssa|in 'somewhere', jo|sta|in 'from somewhere' and jo|nne|kin 'to somewhere'; and jo|ten|kin, jo|lla|in tava|lla 'somehow', jo|sta|in syy|stä 'for some reason'.
- 4 The negative. These are used with the negative verb (and with the prohibitive). They are formed by adding -#n to the interrogative if this ends in an A, otherwise by adding -kAAn. Thus 'no one' is (ei) kuka|an, and 'to nowhere' is (ei) minne|kään. 'Never' is (ei) koska|an or (ei) milloin|kaan. They are also often used in yes/no questions, expressing uncertainty: Onks ketä|än täällä? 'Is there anyone here (at all)?' Again, forms of mikä|än modify nouns: ei mi|ssä|än talo|ssa 'in no house'.
- 5 The *universal*. This is the opposite of the negative, and is expressed by a separate set of stems, most of which you should know by now. 'Always' is **aina**, 'all', 'every', 'everyone' and 'everything' are **kaikki**; the words for 'everywhere' are built from **kaikki**|a-: **kaikki**|a|**lla**, **kaikki**|a|**lle**, **kaikki**|a|**lta**.
- 6 The *demonstrative*. Corresponding to **se** 'this/that/it' we have **silloin** 'then', **sellainen**, **semmonen** 'such (a)', **siellä** 'there'; corresponding to **tuo** 'that' we have **tuolloin** 'at that time', **tuollainen**, **tommonen** 'that kind of (a)', **tuolla** 'there (yonder)'. **Semmonen** is widely used in casual speech; cf. English 'kinda'.

7 The other. One or the other of a definite two is toinen. Notice that the words for 'elsewhere' are built to a stem muu|a-: muu|a|lla, muu|a|lle, muu|a|lta, for example, jossain muualla 'somewhere else'.

## Exercise 7

Translate into English:

- 1 Sellaista voi tapahtua kenelle tahansa.
- 2 Onks täällä jossain hyvä hotelli?
- 3 Älä missään tapauksessa tee sitä!
- 4 Kuka tahansa teistä olisi tehnyt samoin.
- 5 Poika ei tiennyt minne muualle katsoa.



## Unit Sixteen

# Älköön sanottako!

Let it not be said ...



## In this unit you will learn:

- a little about Finnish history, and about sisu
- more ways of expressing uncertainty
- more about participles
- some computerese



# 👫 Dialogue 1



## **Sisu** (CD2; 22)

Helka offers Matthew a 'Sisu' pastille, and the conversation turns to the perennial question: how do we define Finnish sisu?

HELKA [tarjoaa pastillin] Saako olla sisua?

MATTHEW Kiitti. Onpas nämä voimakkaita, siksi kai niitä kutsutaan

sisuiksi?

HFI KA Joo, näitä pastilleja on valmistettu Suomessa jo pitkään.\*

> Nimi viittaa suomalaisten käsitykseen suomalaisesta sisusta, joka on ollut kautta aikojen† ja edelleen kuvaa

suomalaista perusluonnetta.

Se on siis eräänlainen myytti, joka kuitenkin on hyvin MATTHEW

todellinen suomalaisille.

HFI KA Niin se varmaan on. Sisu on sisu. Sitä ei voi kääntää eri

kielille. Se merkitsee jokaiselle henkilökohtaisesti ehkä eri

asiaa, mutta silti kaikki ymmärtävät mitä sillä tarkoitetaan. Mä itse kuvaisin sisun joksikin sellaiseksi, että ei anna periksi,<sup>‡</sup> vaikka ois kuinka vaikeeta.<sup>§</sup> Suomalaisen sisun on sanottu näkyvän<sup>¶</sup> niin urheilussa, kun myös sodassa ja muissa vaikeissa paikoissa.

MATTHEW No niin. Lähdetään nyt sinne tenttiin ettei myöhästytä.\*\* Siellä varmasti tarvitaan suomalaista sisua!

<sup>\*\*</sup> ett|ei myöhästy|tä 'so that one isn't late'.

Vocabular	У		
erää n lainen	some kind of	silti	nevertheless
henki lö+kohta inen joka inen	personal each	sisu	mental/physical stamina
<b>käs∣itys</b> <i>k</i> se	idea, view,	sota	war
	conception	tarjoX-	offer
kääntä-	turn,	tentti	test
	translate (tr)	tode llinen	true
luo∣nteQ	character ( <b>luo</b> -)	valmis∣ta-	manufacture, prepare
myytti	myth		(valmiX ready)
myöhä∣sty-	is late (for X: X-#n)	viittaX-	point, beckon; refer
pastilli	pastille	voi ma kkaX	strong, powerful

## Exercise 1

Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences by raiding the dialogue above. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)





<sup>\*</sup> jo pitkä|än 'for a long time now'.

<sup>†</sup> kautta aikoljen 'through the ages'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> ei anna periksi 'one doesn't give in'.

<sup>§</sup> vaikka ois kuinka vaikeeta > vaikka olisi kuinka vaikea(t)a 'no matter how difficult it is'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Suomalaise|n sisu|n on sanottu näky|vä|n 'it has been said that Finnish sisu is evident'.

- 1 It means something a little different to each person.
- 2 I suppose that's why they're called 'Sisu'?
- 3 For Finns, it's quite true.
- 4 Don't give in!
- 5 This really is strong!



# PK Dialogue 2



## Pieni kertaus Suomen historiasta In history class (CD2; 23)

The teacher (opettalia) leads a revision session on some highlights of Finnish history.

OPETTAJA Otetaanpa\* pieni kertaus Suomen historiasta ennen

ensi viikon kokeita. Milloin Suomi itsenäistvi? Pekka!

PFKKA Kuudes (6.) joulukuuta tuhat

vhdeksänsataaseitsemäntoista (1917).

OPETTAJA Mikä oli Suomen asema ennen itsenäistymistä?

ULLA Ennen itsenäistymistä Suomi oli Venäjän autonominen

suurruhtinaskunta ja Venäjän Tsaari oli Suomen suuriruhtinas.

JUHA [viittaa innokkaasti] 1808–1809 oli Suomen sota, jolloin

Ruotsi menetti Suomen Venäjälle.

Kenestä tuli† Suomen ensimmäinen presidentti OPETTAJA

tasavallaksi julistamisen jälkeen?‡

Juho Kusti Stålberg. Ja eiks sitte 1918 alkanu Sisällissota? **PILVI** 

OPETTAJA Totta. Se kesti vain muutaman kuukauden, mutta sen

seurauksena kuoli lähes yhtä paljon ihmisiä kuin§

Talvisodassa. Kuka muistaa, kuinka kauan Talvisota kesti?

Talvisota alko 30. marraskuuta 1939 ja päätty JUKKE

huhtikuussa 1940.

OPETTAJA Entäs Jatkosota?

Se alko kesäkuussa 1941 ja rauha tuli syyskuussa 1944. JUKKE

Mitkä olivat 50-luvun tärkeimpiä tapahtumia? OPETTAJA Armi Kuuselasta tuli Miss Universum 1952. MAIJA PEKKA Ja Helsingin olympialaiset oli kans -52.

Entäs poliittisesti tärkeitä tapahtumia? OPETTAJA

Porkkalan luovutus oli tammikuussa 1956 ja Urho PII VI

Kekkosesta tuli presidentti.

JUHA	Eiks se ystävyys, yhteistyö ja avunanto sopimus
	Neuvostoliiton kanssa allekirjoitettu joskus 50-luvulla?
OPETTAJA	Ei. YYA-sopimus allekirjoitettiin ensimmäisen kerran jo
	1948. Mikä on ETYK-sopimus?
ULLA	Se oli se Euroopan turvallisuus- ja yhteistyökonferanssi,
	joka allekirjoitettiin Helsingissä 1975.
OPETTAJA	Tunti loppuukin kohta. Muistakaa kerrata Suomen presidentit.
JUKKE	Mauno Koivostosta tuli presidentti 1982 Kekkosen jälkeen.
OPETTAJA	Hyvä. Muistakaa se sitten kokeissakin. [Kello soi.]
	Menkäähän nyt välitunnille.

<sup>\*</sup> ote|taan|pa 'let's have'

# Vocabulary



al∣le+kirjo∣itta-	sign	poliittise sti	politically
autonominen	autonomous	päätty-	end, be finished
avu∣n+anto	giving of aid	rauha	peace
historia n+tunti	history class	seura us kse	consequence
innokkaX	keen,	seura X-	follow
	enthusiastic	Sisä∣llis+sota	Civil War
Jatko+sota	War of	soi-	ring, (re)sound
	Continuation .	sopi mus kse	treaty
jolloin	when	suur+ruhtinaX	Grand Duke
keisari	emperor	suur+ruhtinas	Grand Duchy
<b>kertaus</b> kse	revision	+ <b>kunta</b>	
kerta X-	revises, reviews	Talvi+sota	Winter War
kohta	soon	tasa+valta	republic (tasa n
kokeQ	examination		evenly, equally)
konferanssi	conference	tsaari	Tsar
kuole-	die	turva Ilis uus te	security
luovutus kse	surrender, handing over	väli+tunti	break between classes
menettä-	lose	yhte∣is+työ	collaboration
olympialaise t	Olympic (game)s	ystäv∣yys te	friendship

<sup>†</sup> kenestä tuli 'who became?' (lit. 'out of whom came . . .').

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> tasavalla|ksi julista|mise|n jälkeen 'after the declaration (as) becoming republic'.

<sup>§</sup> yhtä paljon ku(i)n 'as many as'.



Here are the answers. What are the questions? (Peek back at the dialogue if you can't remember.)

- 1 Se alkoi kesäkuussa 1941.
- 2 Juho Kusti Stålberg.
- 3 Mauno Koivostosta.
- 4 1917.12.6.
- 5 Lähes yhtä paljon ihmisiä kuin Talvisodassa.



## Language points

## The potential mood

This mood indicates a degree, however slight, of doubt or hesitation. It occurs rarely in colloquial Finnish, but is easy to form and to recognize.

The suffix is -Ne-, added directly to the verb stem. The N behaves exactly like the N of the past active participle. Compare the forms:

Stem	anta-	huomaX-	nouse-	vie-
pt ac ptcpl s3 pn	anta nut anta ne e	huoman nut huoman ne e	nous sut nous se e	vie nyt vie ne e
class	1	II	III	IV

The final chunks of class II stems (X, (E)XE, TSE) assimilate to the N, but the N assimilates to the s, I, or r final in class III stems once their final e's have been cancelled: tul|Ie|e 'may/might come', pur|re|e 'may/might bite'. Parallel to the past active participles nähnyt, tehnyt we have the potential forms näh|ne|e, teh|ne|e. The indefinite potential looks just like the past passive participle, but with =Aneen instead of =U: anne|tt|aneen, huoma|tt|aneen, nous|t|aneen, vie|tt|äneen.

The only irregularity is in the verb 'be'. In the personal forms of the potential, this is not **ole**- but **lie**-, so we have **lie**|**ne**|**e** 'may/might be'. Also, the connegative is **liene**|**Q**, so we have **Se ei liene**<sup>p</sup> **pelkkä sattuma** 'It may not be mere chance'. The perfect potential, too, is

formed with **lie**|ne-: En tiedä, mihin he lie|ne|vät menneet 'l don't know where they might have gone'. Only the indefinite is built to ole-: ol|t|aneen 'one might be'.

As you have already seen, colloquial Finnish has other ways of expressing such doubts. Besides such little words as **ehkä**, **kai** 'perhaps' there is also widespread use of the verbs **saatta**-, **mahta**-and **taita**-. For example, instead of **Useimmat muista**|**ne**|**vat hänen puheensa**, you say **Useimmat taitaa muistaa sen puheen** 'Most will probably remember his speech'. Here are some more examples:

## Missä mahta|a olla postilaatikko?

Where might there be a letterbox?

### Saatta|a tulla kaunis kesä.

Summer may turn out to be beautiful (this year).

## (Third person) directives

These are quite rare in colloquial Finnish. They are similar to imperatives in that they express the wishes of the speaker, but their function is to place the obligation not on the addressee, but on some third party, as in English 'Let them come forward' or 'Let there be light'.

The suffixes are -kOOn (third person singular) and -kOOt (third person plural). You add them to verb stems in exactly the same way as the second person plural imperative suffix -kAA. Compare:

p2 imperative	anta∣kaa	huomat∣kaa	men∣kää	vie∣kää
s3 dir	anta koon	huomat koon	men∣köön	vie köön
p3 dir	anta koot	huomat∣koot	men∣kööt	vie kööt

Unlike imperative forms (Unit 3), directive forms require their direct object nouns to take the accusative suffix -n. Contrast:

p2 imperative	Anta∣kaa minulle lasi!	Give me a/the glass!
s3 dir	Anta koon minulle lasi n!	Let him/her give me
		a/the glass!

The connegative is -kO, which is added to the stem in exactly the same way as the -kO of the imperative: Älköön men|kö 'Let him/her not go'. There are also indefinite forms: anne|tta|koon 'may someone give, may it be given', äl|köön sano|tta|ko 'let it not be said'.

The directive is most frequently heard in certain fixed and useful expressions, such as Onneksi olkoon! 'Congratulations', and Olkoon menneeksi! 'So be it!'

This is a good place to mention the formal first person plural imperative, which is built with the suffix-chain -kAA-mme in a manner parallel to the second person plural imperative. You will probably only ever come across it in rukoil|kaa|mme 'Let us pray'.



# 👫 Dialogue 3



## **Koli** (CD2: 24)

Alisa invites Cheryl to join her and others on a rambling weekend trip to Koli...

ALISA Hei Cheryl, kiva nähdä sua. Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä\* Kolille patikoimaan viikonloppuna. Haluut sä tulla mukaan?

Kuulostaa kivalta. Missä se Koli on? CHERYL

Se on noin 70 kilsan päässä täältä Joensuusta. Me aiotaan ALISA vuokrata auto, kun se on helpoin ja halvin tapa mennä sinne kun meitä on lähdössä ainakin Anniina, Paula ja mä.† Niin, ja sä, jos haluut tulla mukaan.

Voisin lähteäkin. Nyt on hyvä viikonloppu lähteä, kun ei ole CHERYL paljon tekemistä ensi viikoksi ja patikoiminen sattuu olemaan yksi lempiharrastuksistani.

ALISA Sitä paitsi Kolin kansallispuisto – yksi monista Suomen Suomen kansallispuistoista – on maisemiltaan<sup>‡</sup> aivan upea. Kolin korkein kohta on Ukko-Kolilla, 34 metriä merenpinnasta ja sen huipulta näkee pitkälle Pielis-järvelle.

CHERYL Talvella siellä on varmaan hyvät laskettelumahdollisuudet, kun se on niin korkeella.

Joo on. Näin etelässä ei juuri ole parempia ALISA laskettelurinteitä. Mutta mä itse kyllä tykkään enemmän käydä Kolilla näin syksyisin patikoimassa ja katsomassa hienoja maisemia. Metsissä on paljon erilaista kasvillisuutta ja elaimiä ja myös useita uhanalaisia kasvilajeja kasvaa Kolin alueella.

CHERYL Käytkö sä usein Kolilla?

ALISA Kyllä mä yleensä käyn pari kertaa vuodessa ja useamminkin,§ varsinkin jos haluan viedä vieraita

tutustumaan Koliin. Vähän aikaa sitten kuulin, että Koli on

ollut suosittu pyhiinvaelluspaikka Suomen

kansallisromantiikan aikana. Kuulemma lukuisat taiteilijat, esimerkiksi Edelfeldt, Sibelius ja Aho ovat ammentaneet

luovuuttaan Kolin maisemissa.

CHERYL No kyllähän mun historian opiskelijana täytyy<sup>1</sup> lähteä tutustumaan niihin maisemiin!

#### Vocabulary Aho Juhani Aho kansa|llis+pu|isto national park (1861-1921),kasvagrow short-story kasv|i plant writer and kasvi|llis|uus vegetation novelist te ammentascoop, ladle; kilsa > draw kilometri **Edelfeldt** Albert Edelfeldt laske|ttel|u tobogganing (1854-1905),artist lempi e favourite: love halvlin luku|isa superlative numerous of halpa luolvluus te creativity Joe|n+suu city in East mahdo|llis|uus possibility, Central te opportunity Finland

<sup>\*</sup> me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä 'the girls and I are going' (lit. 'we're going with the girls').

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> **meitä on lähdössä ainakin Anniina**, **Paula ja mä** 'there'll be at least A., P. and me going'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> maisemiltaan 'by virtue/because of its landscapes'.

<sup>§</sup> ja useamminkin 'and even more often'.

<sup>¶</sup> mu|n historia|n opiskelija|na täyty|y 'as a history student, I must'.

ma ise ma mere n+pinta	landscape sea level	pyh i in+vaellus kse	pilgrimage
metri	metre	romantiikka	Romanticism
muka∣an	along	sattu-	happen; hit; hurt
näin	like this; <b>näin etelässä</b> this far south	Sibelius kse	Jean Sibelius (1865–1957)
paitsi	except; si tä paitsi in addition	uha n+ala inen	endangered, under threat ( <b>uhka</b> threat)
patikoi-	hike, ramble	varsin kin	especially



Read the following sentences out loud, step by step, in the sequence indicated. The idea is to make the various building blocks come to you naturally.

Kuule

Kuule, me ollaan

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä Kolille

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä Kolille patikoimaan

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä Kolille patikoimaan viikonloppuna.

Now repeat this routine, but replace (a) **tyttöjen kanssa** with (1) **poikien kanssa**, (2) **vanhempieni kanssa**, (3) **muutamien ystävien kanssa**, and (b) **Kolille** with (1) **maalle**, (2) **Kiteelle**, or (3) any other place you like.

Mä yleensä käyn

Mä yleensä käyn Ruotsissa

Mä yleensä käyn Ruotsissa pari kertaa vuodessa.

Replace (a) **Ruotsissa** with (1) **New Yorkissa**, (2) **Ranskassa**, (3) **kirjastossa**, and (4) other places of your own choosing, and

(b) pari kertaa vuodessa with (1) kaks kertaa viikossa, (2) joka kesällä, and (3) kolme kertaa päivässä. Picture yourself doing what you're saying you do: watch out for bizarreness (like going to New York three times a day).

## Dialogue 4



# **Suomen koulusysteemi** Finnish education (CD2: 25)



Mrs Furr and Mrs Skeene, foreigners living in Finland, talk about the education system there.

Kaksi suomessa asuvaa ulkomaalaista rouvaa keskustelee suomen koulusysteemistä. Mrs Furr on juuri muuttanut Suomeen ja Mrs Skeene on asunut Suomessa jo useita vuosia.

MRS FURR	Minua huolestuttaa* vähän, miten Brian sopeutuu uuteen kouluunsa.
MRS SKEENE	Minun mielestä sinun on turha huolestua <sup>†</sup> siitä.
	Suomalainen peruskoulu on mielestäni‡ erittäin hyvä.
	Krista käy nyt peruskoulun 6. (kuudetta) luokkaa ja
	viihtyy oikein hyvin. Ensi vuonna hän siirtyykin sitten
	jo yläasteelle, 7. (seitsemännelle) luokalle.
MRS FURR	Montako vuotta tämä peruskoulu kestää? Se on kai
	pakollista koulua?
MRS SKEENE	Kyllä. Oppivelvollisuus Suomessa päättyy 16 (kuudentoista)
	vuoden iässä.§ Silloin ollaan peruskoulun 9. (yhdeksännellä)
	eli viimeisellä luokalla. Peruskouluun kuuluu siis 9
	(yhdeksän) luokkaa, jotka jakautuvat ala- ja yläasteeseen.
	Ala-asteeseen kuuluvat luokat 1-6 (yksiviivakuus), ja
	yläasteeseen luokat 7-9 (seitsemänviivayhdeksän).
MRS FURR	Millaisia opiskeluvaihtoehtoja Suomessa on
	peruskoulun jälkeen?
MRS SKEENE	Hyvin monenlaisia. On esimerkiksi lukio, ammatilliset
	laitokset, ja niiden jälkeen on opistot, ammattikorkeakoulut
	ja yliopistot. Lukio kestää yleensä 2-4 vuotta ja sen

päättyessä<sup>¶</sup> saa ylioppilastodistuksen, jolla voi hakea

opiskelemaan yliopistoihin ja ammattikorkeakouluihin. Ammatilliset oppilaitokset antavat käytännönläheistä

koulutusta eri aloille.

MRS FURR Mitä Krista aikoo tehdä peruskoulun jälkeen?

MRS SKEENE Hän ei ole vielä päättänyt sitä. On niin monia hyviä

vaihtoehtoja. Mutta onhan hänellä vielä kolme vuotta

aikaa miettiä.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> se|n päätty|e|ssä 'when it is finished' (Unit 13).



# Vocabulary

ala	area	luk io	(something
ala+asteQ	lower grade		like a senior
ammati∣llinen	vocational, trade-		secondary school or sixth
eri∣ttäin	especially, particularly		form college; luke- read)
esi+merki∣ksi	for example	luokka	class, form
huole stu-	worry (over)	mone n+lainen	of many sorts
huole stu tta-	cause worry	mu n miele stä	in my opinion
ikä	age	opi∣sto	college
iä∣ssä	sINE of ikä	oppi+laitos kse	educational
jaka∣utu-	be divided		institution
kesku st ele-	chat	oppi+velvollisuus	compulsory
korkea+koulu	'high school', college	te	education (lit. 'learning duty')
koulu∣tta-	educate	pako llinen	• /
koulu t us kse	education	·	compulsory
käytännö∣n +läheinen	hands-on	perus+koulu	elementary school
lait∣os <i>k</i> se	institute	pää∣ttä-	finish; decide

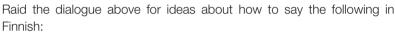
<sup>\*</sup> minula huolestuttala 'l'm worried'.

<sup>†</sup> sinu|n on turha huolestu|a 'there's no point in your worrying'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> miele|stä|ni 'in my opinion'.

<sup>§ 16 (</sup>kuudentoista) vuoden iä|ssä 'at the age of 16' (ikä 'age').

sope utu-	settle in, fit in	vaihto+ehto	alternative
systeemi	system	viihty-	get on, thrive
tod ista-	bear witness,	yle ensä	in general
	testify ( <b>tosi</b> te truth)	yli+oppilaX	university student
tod ist us kse	certificate	ylä+asteQ	upper grade
turha	vain. emptv		





- 1 What do you intend to do after university?
- 2 In my opinion, Scottish elementary school is especially good.
- 3 It's compulsory, I suppose?
- 4 I'm a little worried (about) how the cat is going to get used to its new home.

## Language point

# Q

## Participles as adjectives

In the previous unit, you learned how the third infinitive can be used instead of an entire clause.

All four participles can be used in this way, as well. The constructions are typical of more formal varieties of Finnish, but you will need to be able to recognize and decode them if you want to be able to read most written Finnish.

Study the similarities and differences between the clause (C) and participle (P) constructions in the following examples:

Present active participle:

- P kaunasta johtu∣va kaksintaistelu
- C kaksintaistelu, joka johtuu kaunasta a duel which derives from a grudge

- P uusissa markkinoilla olevissa tietokoneissa
- C uusissa tietokoneissa, iotka ovat markkinoilla in the new computers which are on the market

Past active participle:

- P lahja heidän 80 vuotta täyttäneelle naapurilleen
- C lahja heidän naapurilleen, joka on täyttänyt 80 vuotta a gift to their neighbour, who has reached his/her 80th birthdav

Present passive participle:

- P sairaalassa hoidettavat tapaukset
- C tapaukset, joita täytyy hoitaa sairaalassa the cases which have to be treated in hospital

Past passive participle:

- P vain pieni osa vuonna 1981 Afrikkaan annetusta avusta
- C vain pieni osa siitä avusta, joka vuonna 1981 annettiin Afrikkaan

only a small part of the aid which was given to Africa in the year 1981



## 🥦 Dialogue 5



## Mikroilemassa Coping with computers (CD2; 26)

Two friends, lida and Jenni, talk about computers and computing.

- Me ostettiin tänään uus tietokone, semmonen tosi hieno uus IIDA miniläppäri. Mitä koneita teillä on?
- No, meillä on kaks konetta, toinen huvikäyttöön ja toinen\* JENNI ihan töihin.
- Ai jaa. Olis pitäny ostaa† kans sellanen‡ ulkonen kovalevy. IIDA Oot sä kuullu siitä?
- JENNI Oon mä kuullu mut en mä oo ikinä suunnitellu ostavani§ sitä.
- Se on semmonen<sup>‡</sup> että siihen voi tallentaa kauheesti kuvia IIDA ja videoita ja ottaa ne pois koneelta niin et ne ei täytä sun konetta ja hidasta sitä. Ulkoselle kovalevylle voi myös laittaa turvakopiot kaikista tiedostoista.

JENNI Mut eiks siihen oo myös kans muistitikku olemassa?

IIDA On, mut ulkoselle kovalevylle mahtuu paljo enemmän tavaraa.

JENNI Ai. Meidän pitäs uusia vanhan koneen näyttö ja hankkia sellanen<sup>‡</sup> langaton näppäimistö ja langaton hiiri.

IIDA Joo, sellanen<sup>‡</sup> littee näyttö on tosi hyvä. Mitä ohjelmia sä muuten käytät?

JENNI No tietty¶ tekstinkäsittelyohjelmaa ja internettiä ja kuvanmuokkausohjelmaa. Onks teillä se uusin kuvanmuokkausohjelma jolla saa kans videoita muokattua?\*\*



JENNI Joo, on meillä se. Mä latasin sen yheltä maksulliselta nettisivulta.

IIDA Entä käytättekö te kotona ollenkaan printteriä vai printtaat sä kaiken töissä?

JENNI Kyllä mä printtaan kotona ja töissä. Esim kaikki junaliput ja leffaliput on nykyään tosi helppo tulostaa kotona.

IIDA Totta.

<sup>\*\*</sup> saa...video|i|ta muokat|tu|a 'one can edit videos', more closely translated: 'one gets videos edited'. This construction with saa-, which has the past passive participle in the singular partitive (muokat|tu|a) or the singular translative (muokat|u|ksi) implies that some (intentional) effort is involved. There is also a parallel construction with tule- which implies that the result was unintentional: mitä taas tuli tehtyä/tehdyksi 'what have l/you/(she)/they done now?'



#### ocabulary/ esim > kova+levy hard drive esimerkiksi (levy disk) hankkiuse (käyttäget käytt∣ö use) helppo easv laittaput, arrange hidas|taslow X down wireless (lanka (hitaX) langa|ton wire, thread) hiiri e mouse lataXdownload (not) ever iklilnä (neti|stä), (ikä age) upload kauhee|sti > an awful lot (netti|in) kauhea|sti

<sup>\*</sup> toinen ... ja toinen 'one ... and one ... '

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>†</sup> Olis pitäny ostaa (> olisi pitänyt ostaa) 'one should have bought' Note how lida omits the pronoun m(in)un here, thereby taking herself out of the spotlight.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>‡</sup> **sellanen**, **semmonen** (< **sellainen**, **semmoinen**) These words are extremely common in spoken Finnish; they serve to introduce a term with which the speaker disavows complete familiarity (cf. English 'one of those . . .', 'a kind of . . .').

<sup>§</sup> en...suunnitelu(t) ostavani 'I didn't plan to buy' (complement clauses built with participles, Unit 12).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> **tietty** 'of course'; in colloquial speech, this simple participle can be used instead of the adverb derived from it (**tiety|sti**).

leffa littee > litteä mahtu- maks u llinen	film flat have enough room to fit paid, not free of charge	ohje lma printtaX- printteri	programme, program print (from a computer) (computer) printer
muista- muist i	remember memory (capacity to remember)	suunn itt ele- tallenta- tavara teskti n+käsittely	plan store stuff, goods word
muist i+tikku muokka us	(USB) memory stick editing (muokkaX- work on, work up, improve, revise, cultivate)	tied o sto	processing (käsittely treatment, handling, ultimately from käsi hand) (computer) file
muu ten	by the way, anyway	tiet o	data; fact (tietä-)
netti+sivu nyky ä än näppä im istö nä y tt ö	webpage nowadays (typewriter) keyboard (näppäX- touch/strike lightly) (computer) display	tieto+koneQ tul o sta- turva+kopio ulko nen > ulko inen uusi-	computer print (from computer) backup copy external update

## **Additional vocabulary**

Here's some extra vocabulary that is useful in discussing anything to do with computers.

akku+kest∣o	battery life	koti+sivu	homepage
alusta-	format	lähi+verkko	local network
ehe∣yttä-	defrag	ole t us+arvo	default value
em o	motherboard	optinen asema	optical drive
hake m isto	directory	palvel∣in <i>im</i> e	server
hakemisto+puu	directory tree	portti	port
hiiri+ajuri	mouse driver	purka-	unzip, decompress
imuroi-	download	romppu	CD(-ROM)
kilo∣tavu	megabyte	siirtä-	move/transfer (tr)
korppu	small (3.5 inch)	tiivistä-	zip, compress
	floppy		



## Exercise 5

When it comes to vocabulary, you're on your own from here on. But you have already learned enough to extrapolate. Start now by making intelligent guesses at the forms and meanings of the empty cells:

	А	В
1		mahdollisuus te possibility
2		turvallisuus te security
3	todellinen true	
4		velvollisuus te duty, obligation
5	<b>ystävä</b> friend	ystävyys te friendship
6		luovuus te creativity

# Key to exercises

## Unit 1

### Exercise 2

1 I am English. 2 I am an engineer. 3 I am a Scottish musician. 4 You are a foreigner (= not Finnish). 5 You are an Italian diplomat.

## Exercise 3 (CD2; 27)

1 Oletteko te lääkäri? 2 Hän/se on unkarilainen ohjaaja. 3 Mä olen englantilainen liikemies. 4 Hän/se on ranskalainen matemaatikko. 5 Mä olen kanadalainen opiskelija.

### Exercise 4

1 tanskalainen 2 Kreikka 3 norjalainen 4 hollantilainen 5 Albania 6 ukrainalainen 7 turkkilainen 8 portugalilainen.

## Exercise 5 (CD2; 28)

1 Oletteko te suomalainen? 2 Oletteko te lukkoseppä? 3 Oletteko te venäläinen? 4 Oletteko te poliisi? 5 Oletteko te ranskalainen?

## Exercise 6 (CD2; 29)

1 Japanilainenko se on? 2 Insinöörikö sä olet (*or*: te olette)? 3 Palomiesko se on? 4 Saksalainenko sä olet (*or*: te olette)? 5 Poliitikkoko se on?

### Exercise 7a

1 the fish's tail 2 the door of the house 3 the taste of the fish 4 the end of summer 5 the owl's wing 6 the size of the disk 7 Liisa's room 8 the clarinetist's interpreter.





### Exercise 7b

1 tuka|n 2 silla|n 3 arki|n 4 tyypi|n 5 pöydä|n 6 laiva|n 7 Englanni|n 8 keito|n 9 kengä|n 10 Saksa|n 11 Turu|n 12 paika|n 13 virra|n 14 jala|n.

### Exercise 8a

1 the name of the lake 2 the mushroom's taste 3 the beginning of the new year 4 the choosing of the child's name 5 the elements of water and fire 6 Finland's new newspaper 7 the taste of new blood 8 the beating of a butterfly's wing.



## Exercise 8b (CD2; 30)

1 ranskalaisen viinin maku 2 rahan väri 3 pienen talon ovi 4 talon pieni ovi 5 Ruotsin pääkaupunki 6 lääkärin italialainen ystävä 7 Lontoon historia 8 puvun uusi hinta 9 uuden puvun hinta 10 muusikon parta.

## Unit 2

### Exercise 1

1 M(in)ä pidän kahvista. 2 Pidätkö s(in)ä (or, more colloquial: pidätsä) teestä? 3 Se (ore formal: hän) pitää keväästä. 4 M(in)ä pidän viinasta, se (hän) pitää viinistä. 5 Me pidämme Suomesta.

### Exercise 2

1 m(in)ä sanon 2 me näemme 3 Pidättekö (te) Pariisista? 4 Ne etsii (more formal: he etsivät) asuntoa. 5 Se (more formal: hän) puhuu Suomesta. 6 Näetkö s(in)ä? (or, even less formal: näetsä?)



## Exercise 3 (CD2; 31)

1 Mä pidän vedestä, mutta mä juon mieluummin maitoa. 2 Mä pidän kalasta, mutta mä syön mieluummin juustoa. 3 Mä katselen televisiota, mutta mä kuuntelen mieluummin radiota. 4 Mä puhun englantia, mutta mä puhun mieluummin suomea. 5 Mä pidän klarinetista, mutta mä kuuntelen mieluummin pianoa.

### Exercise 4a

1 saunan jälkeen 2 sodan jälkeen 3 aamiaisen jälkeen 4 kokeen jälkeen 5 tauon jälkeen 6 sateen jälkeen.

### Exercise 4b

1 instead of Helsinki 2 under (the) water 3 behind the new factory 4 (lit.) because of a sick tooth 5 instead of a test 6 (lit.) behind the need 7 under a beautiful statue 8 after an expensive lunch.

## Fxercise 5

1 ennen saunaa 2 ennen sotaa 3 ennen aamiaista 4 ennen koetta 5 ennen taukoa.

## Exercise 6

1 unkaria 2 italiaa 3 ruotsia 4 ranskaa 5 hollantia.

## Exercise 7

Some possible answers include: Jari katsoo televisiota. Anna etsii kynää. Jussi pesee autoa, lattiaa. Satu maalaa taloa, taulua. Se lukee lehteä, kirjaa. Se kirjoittaa kirjettä, artikkelia, postikorttia. Se kuuntelee kasettia, levyä. Lapsi syö omenaa, puuroa.

## Exercise 9 (CD2; 32)

1 Presidentillä on iso auto. 2 Onks sun olut tummaa? 3 Talon ovi on vihreä. 4 Baarimikolla on ruotsalainen vaimo. 5 Onko Teidän asunto pieni? 6 Szilvialla on kaunis ääni.

### Exercise 10a

1 (S)he has a lot of time. 2 We have a little time. 3 (S)he doesn't have any money. 4 There's no space on this table. 5 I have five dogs. 6 Do you have a favourite band? 7 Finland has a lot of wood = There's a lot of wood in Finland.

## Exercise 10b (CD2; 33)



1 Hänellä on paljon rahaa. 2 Pekalla on monta ystävää. 3 Meillä on sukua Lapissa. 4 Onko sinulla koira? 5 Minulla on seitsemän koiraa. 6 Minulla ei ole suosikkibändiä. 7 Tässä huoneessa on tilaa.

Some possible answers: Minulla on tietokone, mutta mulla ei ole radiota. Minulla ei ole autoa, mulla on pyörä. Minulla ei ole kynää, mutta minulla on paperia.

### Exercise 12

Some possible answers: Minulla on kuppi, mutta siinä ei ole kahvia. Minulla on lompakko, mutta siinä ei ole rahaa. Minulla on kynä, mutta siinä ei ole mustetta.

## Unit 3

## Exercise 3

1 seuraa/seuratkaa minua 2 tuo(kaa) mehua 3 avaa/avatkaa ovi 4 sulje/sulkekaa ikkuna 5 pane/pankaa kissa ulos 6 hae/hakekaa lääkäri 7 vie(kää) televisio pois 8 syö(kää) kakkua 9 auta/auttakaa poliisia 10 unohda/unohtakaa se.

### Exercise 4

1 Älä seuraa minua! Älkää seuratko minua! . . .

### Exercise 6

1 Se saapuu Turusta. 2 Ne asuu (or, formal: He asuvat) Helsingissä. 3 Ne odottaa ulkona. 4 Mitä se sanoo? 5 Missä te asutte? 6 Missä ne nukkuu? 7 Miksi sä odotat? 8 Milloin me lähdemme? 9 Ne tietää, missä me asumme.



## Exercise 7 (CD2; 34)

1 Valitettavasti mä en tiedä sen osoitetta. 2 Olen pahoillani, mutta mä en tiedä sen puhelinnumeroa. 3 Mä en tunne sen isää. 4 Mä en tunne sen poikaa. 5 Mä en tunne sen vaimoa.

### Exercise 8

1 Sanokaa jotain suomeksi! 2 Kertokaa jotain Helsingistä! 3 Lukekaa se mulle! 4 Istukaa! 5 Kirjoittakaa mulle postikortti! 6 Odottakaa ulkona!

1 sano 2 kerro 3 lue 4 istu 5 kirjoita 6 odota.

## Exercise 10

1 Kuuntele vaan! 2 Sammuta vaan! 3 Avaa vaan! 4 Imuroi vaan! 5 Ota vaan!

### Exercise 11

1 Kuunnelkaa vaan! 2 Sammuttakaa vaan! 3 Avatkaa vaan! 4 Imuroikaa vaan! 5 Ottakaa vaan!

## Exercise 12

1 kieltä- 2 niele- 3 tuo- 4 valitse- 5 reagoi- 6 katso- 7 kiipeX- 8 vanhene-

## Exercise 14 (CD2; 35)

1 Se/hän taitaa olla ruotsalainen. 2 Niillä/heillä taitaa olla iso talo. 3 Te taidatte tarvita kahvia. 4 Sä taidat olla ussi täällä. 5 Sulla taitaa olla vanha versio.

## Unit 4

### Exercise 1a

1 Helsingissä 2 pullossa 3 pöydällä 4 asemalla 5 yhdessä päivässä 6 Suomessa 7 Englannissa 8 kesällä 9 ensi kuussa 10 oikealla.

### Exercise 1b

1 with the help of the police 2 by bus 3 with a big spoon 4 Season it with butter. 5 They're travelling by train.

### Exercise 2

1 asemalta 2 asemalla 3 laiturilla 4 junalla 5 kello kuudelta 6 Juusosta 7 Juusolta 8 pöydältä 9 kupista 10 vasemmalla.

1 asemalle 2 pöydälle 3 Eilalle 4 hyllylle 5 kuppiin 6 Tanskaan 7 kaupunkiin 8 teehen.

### Exercise 4a

1 I'll get you some water. 2 I don't think this is important. 3 Two people are talking at the same time. 4 Tell her/him! 5 You're asking the wrong guy. 6 Everybody in this room knows it.



## Exercise 4b (CD2; 36)

1 Jätä laukku eteiseen. 2 Mä pistän lasin takaisin kaappiin. 3 Aila on vielä junalla. 4 Mä kirjoitan kirjeen Juusolle. 5 Lähetä postikortti Heikille Lontooseen. 6 Aikataulu on hyllyn takana. 7 Auto on aseman edessä. 8 Vie minut Pariisiin! 9 Milloin me ollaan perillä? 10 Onks mehua lasissa?

### Exercise 7

1. ulos ovesta ja vasemmalle 2. Missä mahtaa olla pankki? 3. Se tekee kaksitoista euroa. 4. Mitä maksaa postimerkki Englantiin?

## Unit 5

### Exercise 1

1 asutaan 2 menemme 3 halutaan 4 ei pidetä 5 emme lue 6 puhumme 7 ei tarvita.

### Exercise 2

1 jalat 2 huone 3 kaupungit 4 kadut 5 hammas 6 pullot 7 poika 8 tytöt.

### Exercise 3

1 kirjoissa 2 talossa 3 saarelta 4 laseista 5 pankeille 6 hampaaseen 7 taloihin 8 töihin 9 vesiin 10 jalkaan 11 housuihin 12 huoneesta.

### Exercise 4 (CD2; 37)



1 uuslila taloljla 2 halpoljla takkeljla 3 vapalilta kansoljla 4 hyvlilä ystävlilä 5 nuorlila opiskelijolilta 6 vanholjla opettajlila 7 tuorelilta marjoljla 8 kauhelilta asiolilta 9 samoljla ihmislilä 10 hyvlilä numerolilta.

### Exercise 5

1 lampun 2 voileipiä 3 ovi 4 autoa 5 juustoa 6 kirjeen 7 kirjeitä 8 kirjeet.

### Unit 6

### Exercise 1

1 Mitä s(in)ä haluat, näitä vai noita? 2 Mitä s(in)ä haluat, jäätelöä vai kakkua? 3 Haluatsä (Haluatko sinä) viiniä, olutta, vai mehua? 4 Mä syön nä(m)ä voileivät. 5 T(u)ossa on suklaatuutti.

### Exercise 2

1 sä ostat 2 he sanoivat 3 te osasitte 4 me haluamme 5 mä voin: voi|n and vo|i|n 6 hän muuttaa 7 ne saapui 8 mä tarvitsin 9 se joi 10 me huusimme.

### Exercise 3 (CD2; 38)



1 Missä sä olit? 2 Mitä se sanoi? 3 Kissa söi hiiren. 4 Mä autoin vähän. 5 Näitsä hänet? 6 Ne otti (more formal: he ottivat) sen pois. 7 Mihin sä pistit sen? 8 Kuka mainitsi sitä? 9 Kenelle sä annoit sen? 10 Mistä sä löysit sen? 11 Se tarkeni ulkona t-paidassa. 12 Mä lensin ikkunasta ulos.

### Exercise 4

1 Se meni. 2 Ne ei tulleet. 3 Mä istuin tässä. 4 He sanoivat. 5 Etkö nähnyt sitä? 6 Mä luin sen. 7 Me ostimme uuden auton. 8 Me emme tavanneet. 9 Hän ei saanut kirjettä Tanjalta. 10 Ne lähetti(vät) rahan (= the money)/rahaa (= some money).

### Exercise 5

- 1 Tulkaa kotiin syömään! 2 Juokse tuonne katsomaan! 3 Mene uimaan!
- 4 Lähtekää kävelemään! 5 Tule tänne katsomaan tätä!

### Exercise 6

1 mentiin 2 katsotaan 3 syödään 4 haluttiin.

### Exercise 7

1 tärkeä 2 oikeastaan 3 hulluksi 4 puhumaan 5 pitäisi 6 mainitsemaan 7 menisi.

### Unit 7

### Exercise 1

1 loputon 2 kengätön 3 työtön 4 poluton 5 hampaaton 6 mauton 7 muodoton 8 lumeton 9 auringoton 10 virheetön.

### Exercise 2

1 non-existent 2 unwritten 3 unwashed 4 unbaked 5 uneaten 6 uninhabited.

### Exercise 3

1 rakennettu 2 käyttämätön 3 maalaamaton 4 syöty 5 keitetty 6 kuorimaton 7 purettu 8 sanomaton 9 pakattu 10 sortamaton.

### Exercise 4

1 Mä oon tullut I have come. 2 se on hakenut; she has fetched/applied for 3 Ne on saapunut; They have arrived. 4 Ootsä ollut Hesassa?; Have you been in Helsinki? 5 Mä oon avannut ikkunan; I've opened the window. 6 Me ollaan avattu ikkuna; We've opened the window. 7 Me ollan tultu; We've come. 8 Hän on tarvinnut apua; He has needed some help. 9 Mistä se on saanut rahan; Where has (s)he got the money from? 10 On pimennyt; It has got dark.

### Exercise 5

1 Se ei ole<sup>1</sup> lähtenyt. 2 Mä en ole huomannut sitä. 3 Ne on sanonut jotain. 4 Mä olen nähnyt sen jo. 5 Me ei olla<sup>v</sup> vielä puhuttu siitä. 6 Mä olen tavannut hänet.

Key to exercises 313

### Exercise 7

### Malted potato casserole

2 kg potatoes1 dl wheat flour

4-5 dl milk

2-3 tbs melted butter

2 tsp salt

nutmeg

Boil the potatoes until they are done, and peel them immediately after letting them give off their steam. Mash the potatoes and sprinkle the flour into them (lit. 'into the mass'). Let the mixture malt/ferment for a few hours or even until the next day. Stir a few times. Add the milk, butter and flavourings. Pour the mixture into a buttered oven dish and bake (it) at 150 degrees for about two hours.

### Unit 8

### Exercise 1

1 nopeampi 2 selvempi 3 mukavampi 4 kiltimpi 5 voimakkaampi 6 pienempi 7 paksumpi 8 ohuempi 9 punaisempi 10 terveempi.

### Exercise 2

- 1 Sä olet/oot nuorempi ku(i)n mä (or: mä olen/oon nuorempi kun sä).
- 2 Pihvi on kalliimpi ku(i)n keitto. 3 Espanja on isompi ku(i)n Portugali.
- 4 Lääkäri on vanhempi ku(i)n lapsi. 5 Paperi on kevyempi ku(i)n kulta.

### Exercise 3

1 Mä etsin kuivempaa viiniä. 2 Mä etsin halvempaa vihkoa. 3 Mä etsin pienempää laukkua. 4 Mä etsin yksinkertaisempaa vastausta. 5 Mä etsin makeampaa mehua.

### Exercise 4

1 Mä oon löytänyt kuivemman viinin. 2 Mä oon löytänyt halvemman vihkon. 3 Mä oon löytänyt pienemmän laukun. 4 Mä oon löytänyt

yksinkertaisemman vastauksen. 5 Mä oon löytänyt makeamman mehun.

### Exercise 7

1 ujoimmalta 2 tummin 3 kylmin 4 kovimmasta 5 isoimpaan 6 suurimmat 7 nuorimmissa 8 tervein 9 iloisin 10 pisimmälle.



### Exercise 8 (CD2; 39)

- 1 Se on nuorin luokassa. 2 Tanska on Euroopan vanhin kuningaskunta.
- 3 Tämä laukku on raskaampi kun m(in)un, mut(ta) s(in)un on raskain.
- 4 Nopein voittaa, mut(ta) hitain on paras.

### Unit 9

### Exercise 1

1 poikien isä 2 tyttöjen nimet 3 suurempien radiojen hinnat 4 huoneiden numerot 5 monien muiden maiden lait.

### Exercise 2

Some sample answers: 1 Mä herään tavallisesti noin puoli kahdeksan. 2 Mä lähden klo seitsemän. 3 Meillä syödään illallista yleensä kello kuudelta. 4 Arkipäivinä mä meen nukkumaan noin puoli yhdeltätoista.

### Exercise 3

1 seitsemän kertaa 2 päivässä 3 kaksi kertaa 4 vuodessa.



### Exercise 4 (CD2; 40)

1 Se seisoi poikien edessä. 2 Ne pani kirjeen takaisin lampun alle. 3 Mä haluaisin mennä Tukholmaan Turun kautta. 4 Kirkko on koulun vieressä. 5 Ne vei meidät (~ Meidät vietiin) rakennuksen taakse.

### Unit 10

### Exercise 2

1 Jospa minulla olisi (mulla ois) aikaa! 2 Jospa mä tietäisin, mitä sä tarkoitat! 3 Jospa sä jäisit vähäks aikaa! 4 Jospa me ei tehtäs sitä! 5 Jospa me ei ois menty sinne eilen!

### Exercise 3 (CD2; 41)



1 M(in)un täytyy/pitää mennä kotiin. 2 Irma voisi tietää siitä. 3 Ne ei viitsi tulla (meidän) mukaan. 4 Minne sä meinaat/ajattelet mennä tänä iltana? 5 Se joutui kirjoittamaan koko kirjeen. 6 M(in)un on tärkeä(t)ä/tärkeetä voimistella vähintään kolme kertaa viikossa. 7 Meidän pitäis(i) kirjoittaa sille. 8 S(in)un ei pidä vastata. 9 S(in)ä et saa vastata.

### Exercise 4

1 Sulla on varmaan joku hyvä syy lukea sitä, vai? 2 Se vaaditaan kaikilta opiskelijoilta. 3 Ruotsi on suomen toinen virallinen kieli. 4 Eiks suurin osa suomalaisista osaa ruotsiakin? 5 Ranskassa kaikkien virkamiesten pitää osata ranskaa.

### Exercise 5

1 sen huoneeseen 2 sen puhetta 3 sen vaimo 4 mun kuppiin 5 teidän vuoro 6 sen luona (Note: Remember that it is also less formal to say mä juoksin than (minä) juoksin; mun than minun; mä oon ollu than olen ollut.)

### Exercise 6

1 Se seisoi meidän takana|mme. 2 Avaimet löydettiin teidän huonee|sta|nne. 3 Se ei halunnut esitellä ystävä|ä|nsä. 4 Miksi pudistat pää|tä|si? 5 Se joi puolet olue|sta|an.

### Exercise 7

1 care 2 shout 3 access 4 think, believe 5 beginning 6 holding 7 word 8 number.

### Exercise 8

1 Mieluummin mä otan kahvia partsilla (parvekkeella). 2 Mitä kello on nyt? Puol neljä. 3 Me sovittiin tyttöjen kanssa ett tavataan Espalla (Esplanaadilla) kahdeksalta. 4 Kat(s)otaan siellä mitä tehdään. 5 Mun täytyy hoitaa ensin pari juttuu (juttua).

### Unit 11



### Exercise 2 (CD2; 42)

1 Tämä on se huone, jo|sta/mi|stä me puhuttiin. 2 Noi kirjat, jotka/mitkä on ylimmäisellä hyllyllä, on mun. 3 Sanakirja, jo|n|ka/mi|n|kä mä unohdin kotiin, on parempi. 4 Uusi opettaja, jo|ta te ette tunne, tulee huomenna.

### Exercise 3

1 yhä yksinkertaisemmin 2 halvimmin 3 mitä pikimmin 4 syvemmin 5 Se tuli aikaisemmin.

### Exercise 4

1 kolme viidennestä 2 neljä kuudennesta 3 seitsemän kahdeksannesta 4 kaksi kolmannesta 5 kaksikymmentäkaksi seitsemännestä.

### Exercise 5

1 someone else 2 something else 3 some people 4 all kinds of (stuff) 5 many people think.

### Unit 12

### Exercise 2

1 Mä kuulin niitten/niiden lähtevän. 2 Hän näki junan saapuvan. 3 Se sanoi tulevansa takain huomenna. 4 Toivon tapaavani hänet jälleen. 5 Se tuntui tietävän keitä ne oli.

Key to exercises 317

### Exercise 3

1 I saw it change colour. 2 There seemed to be something under the carpet. 3 I deny knowing anything. 4 I want you to apologize. 5 (S)he thought the food was ready. 6 Do you want us to be with you? 7 I want you to get used to this.

### Exercise 4

1 After (s)he had rested (s)he stood up. 2 As soon as (s)he said it I understood. 3 I did it in order to have something to do. 4 I have to go into town in order to see to something. 5 We aren't here to meet people.

### Unit 13

### Exercise 2

1 Tuesday through Saturday 11–15 (Tuesdays also in the evenings 18–21), and Sundays 11–16. 2 Tuomarinkylä, Didrichsen. 3 Yes: at the Sinebrychoff museum, at 3 in the afternoon. 4 Yes. Saturdays 11–15.

### Exercise 3

1 Mennään sinne Finlandiataloon huomenna. 2 Onks se auki tiistaisin? 3 Se taitaa olla nähtävä. 4 Mitä museota te suosittelette? 5 Mä en tiedä, ehdinkö nähdä senkin.

### Exercise 4

- 1 lapsi, joka on syntynyt Saarenmaalla 2 laki, joka koskee saarta
- 3 dokumentti kaupungista, joka rakennettiin sata metriä maan alle
- 4 helsinkiläinen, joka on ottanut neljännen peräkkäisen mestaruutensa.

### **Proverbs**

Here are some English (very rough) equivalents of some of the proverbs:

1 Better a bird in the hand than two in the bush. 3 The pot calling the kettle black. 6 Out of the frying pan into the fire. 7 He who laughs last laughs loudest/best. 8 Silence is golden. 9 Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise. 12 Easy come, easy go.

### Unit 14



### Exercise 1 (CD2; 43)

1 Mistä sun äitis suku on kotoisin? 2 Niin monet luulee. 3 Ne molemmat opiskeli Jyväskylän yliopistossa. 4 Mulla on paljon sukua myös Oulussa. 5 Onks sun isäs kans sieltä päin?

### Exercise 2

norsu karhu susi kissa hiiri mikrobi.

### Exercise 3

Wild: peura, ilves, ahmo; Tame: poro, ankka ('wild duck' is sorsa), kissa, koira, karja.

### Exercise 5

1 Hallitus sulki sairaalan. 2 Tyttö avasi oven. 3 Isäni keskeyttää keskustelun. 4 Poikien täytyy järjestää huone. 5 Meidän on pakko lähteä nyt. 6 Poliisi etsii autoa.

### Exercise 6

1 Viime vuonna me käytiin Ruotsissa. 2 Jäät sä tänne, vai tuut sä mukaan? 3 Tietoi kulkee nopeasti. 4 Kävi ilmi, että se puhuu suomea. 5 Se muutti Harrin luo.

### Exercise 7

1 They won't bite (you) if you're not afraid of them. 2 Of course I know these waters! 3 No train's going to come from that direction at this hour. 4 You could still get across that bridge last night, anyway. 5 All the landscape looks pretty much the same up here in Lappi.



### Exercise 8 (CD2; 44)

1 Ootko jo lähettäny sen kirjeen? 2 Kysy vaikka keneltä muusikolta! 3 Mä uskon (kyllä) s(in)ua. 4 Halusin vaan vähän kiusata s(in)ua. 5 Mä tiedän, kuka on ollut kiltti ja kuka ei.

Key to exercises 319

### Unit 15

### Exercise 2

1 1300. 2 Turku Academy. 3 Bishop of Turku and author of the first Finnish primer. 4 A handicrafts museum, with exhibits illustrating old Turku ways of life.

### Exercise 3 (CD2; 45)



1 Ne tuntee jo toisensa. (more formal: He tuntevat jo toisensa.) 2 Se puhuu aina itsestään. 3 Mä jätin mun laukun toiseen huoneeseen (= on purpose). Mun laukku jäi toiseen huoneeseen (= inadvertently). 4 Siellä oli myös pari muuta vierasta. 5 Ne tuli käymään kahtena eri aikana. 6 Mä en saanut ketään uskomaan itseäni.

### Exercise 4

1 Se kertoi mulle kaiken puhelimitse. 2 Ne muuttaa Ruotsiin vanhempineen. 3 Mä näin sen omin silmin.

### Exercise 6

1 keittoa, jota isä keitti 2 tarinat, jotka lapset kirjoitti(vat) 3 romaanissa, jota Goethe mainitsi.

### Fxercise 7

1 That sort of thing can happen to anyone. 2 Is there a good hotel somewhere (around) here? 3 Don't do it under any circumstances! 4 Any one of you (= it doesn't matter which) would have done the same. 5 The boy didn't know where else to look.

### Unit 16

### Exercise 1

- 1 Se merkitsee jokaiselle vähän eri asiaa. 2 Siksi kai kutsutaan sisuksi.
- 3 Se on hyvin todellinen suomalaisille. 4 Älä anna periksi! 5 Onpas tämä voimakasta!

### Exercise 2

1 Milloin alkoi jatkosota? 2 Kuka oli Suomen ensimmäinen presidentti? 3 Kenestä tuli presidentti Kekkosen jälkeen? 4 Milloin Suomi itsenäistyi? 5 Kuinka paljon ihmisiä kuoli Suomen sisällissodassa?



### Exercise 4 (CD2; 46)

1 Mitä sä aiot tehdä yliopiston jälkeen? 2 Minusta skotlantilainen peruskoulu on erittäin hyvä. 3 Se on kai pakollista? 4 M(in)ua huolestuttaa vähän, miten kissa sopeutuu uuteen kotiinsa.

### Exercise 5

A1 mahdollinen 'possible' A2 turvallinen 'secure' B3 todellisuus te 'reality' A4 velvollinen 'obliged' B6 luova 'creative'.

# Appendix A

# Overview of Finnish verb inflection

### Stem type

	1	II	III	IV
Stem	tappa- tietä- muutta- repi-	tapaX- katkeX- tarviTSE- vaikEXE-	mene- näke- pääse-	saa- käy- tuo-
s1 ps	tapan tiedän muutan revin	tapaan katkean tarvitsen vaikenen	menen näen pääsen	saan käyn tuon
s3 pt	tappoi tiesi muuti repi	tapasi katkesi tarvitsi vaikeni	meni näki pääsi	sai kävi toi
s3 cd	tappaisi tietäisi muuttaisi repisi	tapaisi katkeaisi tarvitsisi vaikenisi	menisi näkisi pääsisi	saisi kävisi toisi
s3 dir	tappakoon tietäköön muuttakoon repiköön	tavatkoon katketkoon tarvitkoon vaietkoon	menköön nähköön pääsköön	saakoon käyköön tuokoon

322 Appendix A

### Stem type

	1	II	III	IV
sup	tappanut tietänyt muuttanut repinyt	tavannut katkennut tarvinnut vaiennut	mennyt nähnyt päässyt	saanut käynyt tuonut
ind pt	tapettiin tiedettiin muutettiin revittiin	tavattiin katkettiin tarvittiin vaiettiin	mentiin nähtiin päästiin	saatiin käytiin tuotiin
1 <sup>st</sup> inf	tappaa tietää muuttaa repiä	tavata katketa tarvita vaieta	mennä nähdä päästä	saada käydä tuoda
ind ps	tapetaan tiedetään muutetaan revitään	tavataan katketaan tarvitaan vaietaan	mennään nähdään päästään	saadan käydään tuodaan

# Appendix B

# Overview of Finnish nominal inflection

Stem	matto	linkki	pata sota	suklaa	maa suo	paperi ammatti	laatikko suosittu	omena peruna
NS NS	matto	linkki	pata	suklaa	maa	paperi	laatikko	omena
sG	maton	linkin	padan	suklaan	maan	paperin	laatikon suositun	omenan
SР	mattoa	linkkiä	pataa	suklaata	maata suota	paperia	laatikkoa suosittua	omenaa
SILL	mattoon	linkkiin	pataan sotaan	suklaaseen	maahan suohon	paperiin ammattiin	laatikkoon suosittuun	omenaan perunaan
pd	mattojen	linkkejen	patojen sotien	suklaiden, suklaitten	maiden soiden	paperien, papereiden ammattien	laatikoiden suosittujen	omenoiden, omenien
рР	mattoja	linkkejä	patoja sotia	suklaita	maita soita	papereita ammatteja	laatikoita suosittuja	omenoita perunoita
pILL	mattoihin	linkkeihin	patoihin sotiin	suklaisiin, suklaihin	maihin soihin	papereihin ammatteihin	laatikoihin suosittuihin	omeniin, omenoihin perunoihin

Stem	isompA	isoimpA	кäТЕ	toTE	eläiME	naiSE	sateQ	renkaX	vastauKsE
Ns Ns	isompi	isoin	käsi	tosi	eläin	nainen	sade	rengas	vastaus
sG	isomman	isoimman	käden	toden	eläimen	naisen	sateen	renkaan	vastauksen
SР	isompaa	isoimpaa, isointa	kättä	totta	eläntä	naista	sadetta	rengasta	vastausta
SILL	isompaan	isoimpaan	käteen	toteen	eläimeen	naiseen	sateen	renkaaseen	vastaukseen
pg	isompien,	isointen	käsien,	tosien,	eläinten,	naisten,	sateiden	renkaiden	vastauksien,
	isonten		kätten	totten	eläimien	naisien			vastausten
РР	isompia	isoimpia	käsiä	tosia	eläimiä	naisia	sateita	renkaita	vastauksia
pILL	isompiin	isoimpiin	käsiin	tosiin	eläimiin	naisiin	sateisiin,	renkaisiin	vastauksiin
							sateihin		
Stem	toivoTTOMA	talouTE		sano NUTE	lämpimä	keväT	oluTe	kolmaNTE	tuhaNTE
Ns	toivoton	talous	i iš	sanonut	lämmin	kevät	olut	kolmas	tuhat
sG	toivottoman	talouden	_	sanoneen	lämpimän	kevään	oluen	kolmannen	tuhannen
ВS	toivottonta	taloutta		sanonutta	lämmintä	kevättä	olutta	kolmatta	tuhatta
SILL	toivottomaan	n talouteen		sanoneeseen	lämpimään	kevääseen	olueen	kolmanteen	tuhanteen
pg	toivottonten,	, talouksien,		sanoneiden	lämpimien	keväiden	oluiden	kolmansien	tuhansien,
	toivottomien	en talousten	sten						tuhanten
В	toivottomia	talouksia		sanoneita	lämpimiä	keväitä	oluita	kolmansia	tuhansia
pILL	toivottomiin	talouksiin		sanoneihin,	lämpimiin	keväihin,	oluihin,	kolmansiin	tuhansiin
				sanoneisiin		keväisiin	oluisiin		

## Appendix C

### Finnish names

You'll meet over thirty Finnish given names in this book, and will probably have noticed that only a few are familiar-looking. To give you an overview, here's a list of some of the more common ones. Notice that most (but not all!) names ending in **a** refer to females, and most (but not all!) ending in **o** refer to males.

### Women:

vvoilleil.				
Aija	Anja	Eija	Hanna	Hilkka
Aila	Arja	Elina	Helena	llona
Aliisa	Eeva	Erja	Hilja	Irja
Irma	Liisa	Onerva	Selja	Tuula
Juulia	Lilja	Paula	Senja	Unelma
Kaarina	Maija	Raija	Silja	Ursula
Karoliina	Marja	Reija	Sirkka	Veera
Laila	Martta	Riitta	Solja	Veija
Laina	Milja	Ritva	Sonia	Viia
Launa	Minna	Saija	Sorja	Vilja
Lea	Mirja	Saima	Susanna	
Leea	Netta	Sanna	Tarja	
Leena	Niina	Seija	Tuija	
Aale	Hele	Irene	Salme	
Aune	Helle	Laine	Salome	
Enne	Hille	Roine	Synnöve	
Aili	Armi	Helmi	Outi	Tuulikki
Ainikki	Auni	Kirsti	Päivikki	Virpi
Allikki	Heidi	Kyllikki	Salli	
Anneli	Heli	Meeri	Taimi	
Annikki	Hellikki	Meri	Terhi	
Aino	Pirkko	Tellervo	Vuokko	
Aamu	Anu	Keiju	Maiju	
Eedit				

326 Appendix C

Men: Elja Ilkka Joosua	Jorma Juha Konsta	Kustaa Miikka Mika	Pekka Turkka	
Aare Ale Helge	Aarne Joose Kalle	Aarre Tuure Valle	Aate	Aatte
Aarni Ahti Antti Artturi Eeerikki Eeli	Eemeli Eenokki Erkki Heikki Ilmari Joni	Jooseppi Juhani Jussi Kai Kalevi Lassi	Lauri Leevi Martti Matti Olavi Olli	Pentti Sakari Seeli Taavetti Tapani
Aapo Aarto Aatto Aimo Alho Alpo Antero Arvo Asko	Eero Eino Esko Into Jaakko Jalo Jarkko Kaarlo Kauko	Keijo Launo Leo Mauno Niilo Paavo Raimo Reijo Risto	Sampo Simo Sorjo Tapio Tauno Teijo Terho Timo Toivo	Urho Urpo Usko Veijo Veikko Viljo
Eetu Äijö Väinö Yrjö	Hannu	Samu	Teemu	
Aleksis Armas	Aulis Eelis	Hannes Joonas	Mooses Tuomas	Uljas
Eevert	Roobert			

Finnish surnames are many: there are about 76,000 of them. Natural and topographic features are quite common, either alone as in **Laakso** ('valley'), **Saari** ('island'), **Koski** ('rapids'), or in derived forms (**Saarinen**, **Koskela**, **Koivisto**, **Sinisalo**). Roughly half end in **=nen** or **=IA** (like **Mäkinen** and **Mäkelä**, both from **mäki** e 'hill').

Nicknames also abound. For example, someone named **Matti** may also be called **Masa**, **Masi** or **Matsu** by friends.

# Finnish-English glossary

For nouns written here as ending in  $\mathbf{X}$  or  $\mathbf{Q}$ , see pages 31–3; for verbs written here as ending in  $\mathbf{X}$ , (E)XE, or TSE, see page 59.

Α		ankka	(domesticated) duck
aalto	wave	anta-	give
aamu	morning	antautu-	surrender
aapinen	primer	anteeksi	excuse me
aatto	eve; night before X	apu	aid, assistance
aiheuttaa-	cause	asema	station, position
¹aika	time (sG <b>aja</b>   <b>n</b> )	asia	matter, affair
<sup>2</sup> aika	(adv) fairly, somewhat	asteQ	degree, stage
aikaisemmin	earlier	asti	as far as, until
aiko-	intend		(postposition)
aikuinen	adult	asu-	reside, live
aina	always	asunto	flat; apartment
ainakin	at least	aukaise-	open (tr)
aineQ	(subject) matter	aurinko	sun
ainoa	only, sole	autta-	help, assist
ainut	only, sole	avautu-	open (itr)
aivan	quite; precisely	avaX-	open (tr)
aja-	drive		
ajattele-	think	В	
ala+	lower	baari	bar
alEXE-	drop, fall, descend		
alka-	begin (itr)	E	
alku	beginning	е-	negative verb
alla	under (PP)	edessä	in front of X (PP)
alle	(to) under (PP)	eduskunta	parliament
aloitta-	begin (tr)	edusta-	represent
alta	from under (PP)	eepos kse	epic
alueQ	region, area	ehkä	maybe, perhaps
amerikkalainen	American	ehti-	have time, do X in time
ammatillinen	professional-, trade-	eli	in other words
ammatti	profession, trade	elin ime	organ (anatomy)

elokuu	August	harmaa	grey
elä-	live	harrastus kse	hobby, interest
eläin ime	animal	harva	rare
elämä	life	harvinainen	rare
enempä-	more	harvoin	rarely
englanti	English (language)	hauska	nice, pleasant
Englanti	England	hedelmä	fruit
enimpä-	most	heikko	weak
enintään	at most	heinäkuu	July
ennen	before; preposition	heittä-	throw
	w/P	helmikuu	February
ensi	next	helppo	easy
ensimmäinen	first	henki e	spirit, life, person
ensin	first	henkilö	person
entä(s)	what about	herkkä	sensitive, touchy
eri	various, different	herkullinen	gourmet-
erikoinen	separate, special	herneQ	pea
erilainen	different, various	heti	at once, right away
erittäin	especially	hetki e	moment
erityinen	particular, individual	hetkinen	moment
eräX	a certain	hieno	fine
esimerkki	example	hiihto	skiing
esineQ	object	hiihtä-	ski
esittele-	introduce	hiiri e	mouse
esitteQ	brochure	hikoile-	sweat
esittä-	present	hillo	jam
ete en	to in front of (PP)	hirveä	frightful
etelä	south	hirvi e	deer, stag
että	that (cj)	hoita-	take care of, tend
			(to)
F		hopea	silver
flunssa	'flu, headcold	huhtikuu	April
		huippu	peak, summit
G		hullu	fool(ish), mad
glögi	mulled wine	huomaX-	notice
		huomenna	tomorrow
Н		huoneQ	room
hajoX-	break up, dismantle,	huuta-	shout
	dissolve (tr)	huvitta-	amuse
hake-	fetch, apply for	hylly	shelf
halki	across (PP)	hyppäX-	jump, hop
hallinto	administration	hyvin 	well .
hallitus kse	government	hyvä 	good
halpa	cheap	hyväksy-	approve (tr)
haluX-	want	hyvästi	farewell!
hampurilainen	hamburger	hyökkäX-	attack

han	you know, after all	joutu-	end up in X, wind up
härkä	OX		Xing; hurry
hävittä-	destroy	juhla	celebration
		julista-	declare, proclaim
I		jumala	god, God
ihan	quite	juo-	drink
ihana	lovely	juokse-	run
ihmeQ	wonder, miracle	juotava	drinkable; for drinking
ihmettele-	wonder, be amazed	just	just
ihminen	human being	juttu	story; matter, affair
ikkuna	window	juuri	just
ikä	age	juusto	cheese
ilma	air	jälje∣llä	left over
ilman	without X (PP)	jälke en	after X (PP)
ilmesty-	appear, be published	jälki e	trace, (foot)print
ilta	evening	järjestelmä	system
insinööri	engineer	järvi e	lake
iso	big	jättä-	leave behind (tr)
istu-	sit	jää	ice
isä	father	jää-	remain, stay behind
itse	self;		
	(him-, her-, it-)self	K	
itsenäisyys te	independence	kaata-	pour
itä	east	kadotta-	lose (tr)
		kahdeksan	eight
J		kahvi	coffee
ja	and	kai	maybe, perhaps
jaa	yeah	kaikenlainen	all kinds of
jaka-	divide, apportion,	kaikki e	all, every(one)
	distribute	kakku	cake
jakautu-	be distributed, be	kaksi hte	two
	divided	kaksitoista	twelve
jalka	foot, leg	kala	fish
jatka-	continue (tr)	kalja	(weak) beer
jauha-	grind	kallio	cliff
jauheQ∣liha	mince	kalliX	expensive, dear
jauho∣t	flour	kannatta-	be worthwhile
jo	already; (in questions)	kans	also, too
4	yet	kansa	nation, people
¹joka	each, every	kansallinen	national
<sup>2</sup> joka	relative pronoun	kanssa	with (PP)
joo	yeah	kanta-	carry, bear
jos	if	karhu	bear
joskus	sometime(s)	kartta	map
joulu	Christmas	kastikkeQ	gravy, sauce
joulukuu	December	kasva-	grow (itr)

kasvi	plant	kiitos	thank you
katka rapu	prawn	kiitti	thanks
katkeX-	break (itr)	kilpailu	contest, competition
katoX-	go missing, disappear	kilsa	kilometre (sl)
katso-	watch, look at,	kiltti	well-behaved, 'good'
	behold	kimppu	bunch
katu	street	kioski	kiosk
kauan	for a long time	kipeä	sore; ill
kauas	(to) far away	kirja	book
kauhea	terrible, awful	kirjailija	writer
kaukaa	from far away	kirjallisuus te	literature
kaukana	far away	kirjeQ	(postal) letter
kauniX	beautiful	kirjoitta-	write
kauppa	shop	kirkkaX	bright, clear
kaupunki	city	kirkko	church
kaut ta	via (PP)	kiva	fine, great, lovely
keino	means	kivi e	stone
kello	clock; at X o'clock;	koetta-	try
	bell	¹kohta	spot, place, point
kera	with X (PP)	<sup>2</sup> kohta	soon
kerran	once	koira	dog
kerros kse	storey	koko	whole, entire; size
kerta	time, occasion	kolme	three
kertaX-	repeat, revise	koneQ	machine; aeroplane
kerto-	tell, recount	korkea	high
keräX-	gather	kortti	card
keskelle	to the middle of (PP)	korva	ear
keskellä	in the middle of (PP)	koska	because; when
keskeltä	from the middle of	koskaan	never (with neg. verb)
kesken	amid (PP)	kotiin	(to, headed)
keski e	middle		home(ward)
keskiaikainen	medieval	kotoisin	originally from (X-stA)
keskiviikko	Wednesday	kotona	at home
keskus kse	centre	koulu	school
keskusta	centre	koura	hand (for grasping)
keskustele-	converse, chat	kova	hard
kestä-	last, endure; can	kovin	very
	(with)stand	kuin	as; than
kesä	summer	kuinka	how
kesäkuu	June	kuitenkin	anyway
kevät	spring ( <b>kevää</b> -)	kuka	who?
kiekko	disk, puck	kukka	flower
kieli e	language; tongue	kulta	gold
kielioppi	grammar	kumpi	which? (of two)
kiinnosta-	interest	¹kun	when; if; seeing
kiinostu-	be interested in		that

<sup>2</sup> kun = kuin		laiva	ship
kunnes	until	laji	type, sort, kind
kunta	commune	lapsi e	child (sP las ta)
kunto	good shape; ability	lasi	glass
kuole-	die	laske-	descend, come
kuppi	cup	idoke-	down; count
kutsu	invitation	lauantai	Saturday
kutsu-	call: invite	laula-	
kuu	moon; month	laulu	sing
kuukausi te	month	lauseQ	song
kuule-	hear	lauseQ lautanen	sentence
kuule- kuulemma		lehti e	plate, dish
kuulosta-	I hear/they say that		leaf; newspaper
kuulu-	sound	leipo-	bake
Kuulu-	be audible, can be	leipä	bread
	heard; belong;	lempi e	favourite; love
	mitä kuuluu?	lentokenttä	airport
les some a	How are you?	lepäX-	rest (itr)
kuuma	hot, warm	liha	meat
kuuntele-	listen	lihas kse	muscle
kuusi e	spruce	liian	too (much)
kuusi te	Six	liitty- 	join, be added
kuva	picture	linna 	fortress, castle
kuvaX-	describe, depict	lippu 	ticket; flag
kyllä	surely, really	lisä+	additional
kylmä	cold	lokakuu	October
kylä	village	loma	break
kymmenen	ten	Lontoo	London
kynttilä	candle	loppu	end
kysy-	ask (question;	loppu-	end (itr)
	cf. <b>pyytä</b> -)	loputta-	end (tr)
kysymys kse	question	luke-	read
kyynärpää	elbow	luku	chapter; number
kämppä	hut; flat	lumi e	snow (sP lun ta)
kännykkä	mobile/cell phone	luo-	create
kävi(si)	pt (cd) of <b>käy</b> -	luo(kse)	to X's place (PP)
käy-	go (and come	luokka	class
	back); turn out	luona	at X's place (PP)
	(see Unit 14)	luonteQ	character
käyttä-	use	luota	from X's place (PP)
käänty-	turn (itr)	lupaX-	promise
kääntä-	turn (tr)	luule-	think (that )
		luultavasti	probably
L		lähelle	(to) near (PP)
laatikko	box	lähellä	near (PP)
lahja	gift, present	läheltä	from near (PP)
laitta-	prepare, make	lähes	nearly

lähettä-	send	mies	man; husband
lähte-	leave (itr), depart, go		(miehe-)
lähtö	departure	mietti-	think over, consider,
lämmin	warm ( <b>lämpimä</b> -)		ponder
länsi te	west	mikä?	what?
läpi	through (PP)	millainen?	what kind of?
lääkäri	doctor, GP	milloin?	when?
lääni	county	minun	mine, my
löyty-	be found	missä?	where?
löytä-	find	miten	how
		mm.: muun	inter alia
M		muassa	
maa	land; country(side);	moi	Hi; Bye
	ground	molemma t	both
maailma	world	moni e	many
maakunta	region	muista-	remember
maaliskuu	March	mukaan	along with X;
maanantai	Monday		according to X (PP)
maatalous te	agriculture	mukana	along with X (PP)
mainiTSE-	mention	mukava	pleasant, comfortable
maisema	landscape	mummo	grandma
maista-	taste (tr)	museo	museum
maistu-	taste (itr)	musta	black
maito	milk	musteQ	ink
makea	sweet;	mustikka	bilberry
	pleasant-tasting	mutta	but
maksa-	pay; cost	muu	other
malli	model, pattern	muualla	elsewhere
mansikka	strawberry	muuan	a certain; a few
marja	berry		(muutama-)
markkina( t)	market(s)	muutta-	change (tr); move
marraskuu 	November		house 
matka	journey, trip	myy-	sell
matkusta-	travel	myy∣jä	salesperson
meinaX-	mean (to), intend	myöhästy- 	be late
melkein	fairly, quite	myös	also, as well
mene-	go	myöten	along; as far as
meno	going (on menossa	91.1	(postposition w/P)
	be going)	mäki e	hill
meri e	sea, ocean	mökki	cabin, hut
m out iTCE	(sP mer ta!)	N	
merkiTSE- merkki	mean, signify	N nainan sa	woman
merkki metsä	mark, symbol, sign forest	nainen se naura-	woman laugh
metsa mielenkiintoinen	interesting	naura- neiti	o .
mielenkiintoinen mieli e	mind		young lady; Miss four
men e	IIIIII	neljä	IOUI

niinkuin	like, as	Р	
nimi e	name	paha	bad
nimittäin	you see; I say that	paikka	place
_	because	paista-	shine
noin	like that; about,	paitsi	beside, except (PP)
	roughly	paketti	package
nouse-	rise	pala	piece
nukku-	sleep	paljo∣n	lots, many
numero	number	paljonko?	how much?
nuori e	young	palkinto	prize, award
nyky+	present-day,	palkka 	salary, wage, pay
	contemporary	pallo	ball
nykyään	nowadays	pankki	bank
nyt 	now	paperi	paper
näin 	like this, in this way	paras	best (parhaX)
näke-	see (first inf. näh dä)	parempi	better
näkemiin 	Goodbye!	pari	pair, a few
näky-	be visible	passi 	passport
näyttä-	show; look, appear	peli	game
0		pelkäX-	fear
odotta-	weit for owners	perheQ	family
odotta- ohli	wait for, expect	perinteinen	traditional
	past (PP)	perinteQ	tradition
ohjelma	programme	perjantai	Friday
oikea oikein	correct	peruna	potato
	really, very	perus+	basic found. base
ojenta- ole-	offer, extend, pass be	perusta-	wild reindeer
ole-		peura pianisti	pianist
010	the way it is;	pianisti pieni e	small, little
oluTE	beer	pierii e piirakka	pasty
oma	one's own	pikku	little
onnistu-	succeed, come out	pilvi e	cloud
Offinista-	OK	pitkin	along (postposition
opettaja	teacher	pitkiii	w/P)
opettele-	learn	pitkä	long
opiskele-	study	pitä-	hold; like (-stA)
opiskelija	student	pohja	bottom; North
oppi-	learn, study	pohjoinen	north(ern)
osa	part	poika	boy (sG <b>poja</b>   <b>n</b> )
osaX-	know how (to X)	poikki	through, across (PP)
osoitteQ	address	poltta-	burn; smoke
osta-	buy	L- 2	(tobacco)
otsa	forehead	polvi e	knee
otta-	take	poro	domesticated reindeer
ovi e	door	posti	mail; post
		h	, poor

m a atima a ulelei	-1		-1
postimerkki	stamp	ranta	shore, coast
prosentti	per cent	rauha	peace, quiet
puhelin ime	telephone	rauta	iron
puhtaX	clean	rautatie	railway, railroad
puhu-	speak	ravintola	restaurant
pukki 	ram	repi-	to tear
pulla	bun	riippu-	hang; depend
pullo	bottle	riittä-	be enough; suffice
puna+	red	rikkoutu-	be broken
punainen	red	rinta	breast, chest
puolesta	PP on behalf of	rinteQ	slope
puoli e	(be)half; side	rouva	married woman, Mrs
puolueQ	(political) party	rukiX	rye (sG <b>rukii</b>   <b>n</b> )
puolusta-	defend	runo	poem
pure-	bite	ruoka	food
purka-	unpack, decompress	ruotsalainen	Swedish
pussi	bag	ruotsi	Swedish (language);
puu	tree, wood		Sweden
puutarha	garden	rupeX-	start, get stuck in
pysty-	be able		
pysy-	stay, remain, not	S	
	move/change	saa-	get, receive;
pyytä-	ask (for; cf. kysy-)		be allowed to
päin	abouts; towards	saame	Saami (person,
päivä	day		language)
pärjäX-	get by	saapu-	arrive
pää	head; end	saaristo	archipelago
pääkaupunki	capital	sairaala	hospital
pääse-	manage to go/come;	sairaX	ill, sick; patient
	get (through/by/in, etc.)	saksa	German (language); Germany
pääsy	entry	sama	same
päätty-	end (itr)	samanlainen	similar
päättä-	end (tr), decide	sana	word
pöytä	table	sano-	say
		sata	hundred
R		sata-	rain
raha	money	satanen	100(-euro) note; the
rahoitta-	fund, provide with		number 100
	money	sateQ	rain
rakennus kse	building	sattu-	happen
rakenta-	build	sauna	(see Unit 9)
rakenteQ	structure	seitsemän	seven
rannikko	shore, coast	sekaisin	mixed up, jumbled
ranska	French (language);	sekä: sekä X	both X and Y
	_	1/	

että Y

France

selkä	back	syö-	to eat
selvä	clear; OK	säily-	be preserved
seteli	banknote	sää	weather
seuraX-	follow	<b>sääri</b> e	leg
sijaan	instead of X (PP)	säästä-	to pollute
silloin	then (at that time)		
sisko	sister	Т	
sisällä	inside (PP)	taa kseQ	to behind X (PP)
sisässä	inside (PP)	taas	again
sisään	(to) inside (PP)	tai	or
sitten	then (subsequently); so	taita-	be capable; be likely; 'must' (Unit 3)
soi-	ring, sound	taiteQ	art
soitta-	make X ring/sound;	taiteilija	artist
	play	takaa	from behind X (PP)
soittele-	call, phone	takaisin	back (adv)
sopeutu-	settle in, fit in (itr)	takana	behind X (PP)
sopi-	agree (tr)	takia	on account of X (PP)
sopimus kse	agreement, treaty	takki	coat, jacket
sorta-	trample, bully	talo	house; building
sosiaaliturva	social security	talvi e	winter
sota	war	tammikuu	January
sovitta-	fit (tr), accommodate	tapa	way, custom
	(tr)	tapahtu-	happen
sukellus kse	diving	tapaX-	meet
suklaa	chocolate	tarha	enclosure, yard
suku	kin, relatives	tarina	story
sulkeutu-	close, shut (itr)	tarjoX-	offer
sunnuntai	Sunday	tarkasta-	check
suomalainen	Finnish (adj)	tarkista-	check (and rectify)
suomi e	Finnish (language)	tarkoitta-	mean, intend
Suomi e	Finland	tarkoitus kse	purpose
suoritta-	perform, execute,	tarpeeksi	sufficiently, enough
	carry out	tartte- >	
suosittele-	recommend	tarviTSE-	
suosittu	favoured, popular	tarviTSE-	need; be necessary
suu	mouth	tavallinen	usual, customary
suuri e	great, large	tavara	stuff; tavara t wares
syksy	autumn	teke-	do, make (first inf
symboli	symbol		teh∣dä)
synty	birth	terveQ	healthy
synty-	be born	terveys te	health
sytyttä-	light, ignite	tie	road
syy	cause, reason; blame,	tietysti	of course
	guilt	tietä-	know
syyskuu	September	tiistai	Tuesday

tiiviotä	o o moro o o	U	
tiivistä- tiiviX	compress	•	fausianan
	dense	ulkomaalainen	foreigner
tila	room, space	upea	splendid
todella	truly	urheilu	sport
toimi e	function(ing); tule-	usea	frequent
toimi-	toime en manage	uskalta-	to dare, be so bold
	work, function		(as to)
toinen	other (of two); the	usko-	to believe
14-1-4-	other	uudelleen	again
toista	+teen, e.g. <b>viisitoista</b> fifteen	uusi te	new
tori	market	V	
torstai	Thursday	vaali	election
tosi te	true; truly, really	¹vaan	(but) rather; go ahead!
tottu-	get used to	<sup>2</sup> vaan = vain	
toukokuu	May	vaati-	to demand, require
tuhat nte	thousand	vai	or (in questions)
tuke-	to support	vaihta-	to change (tr)
tuki e	support	vaihtoehto	alternative
tule-	come	vaikea	difficult
tuliaise t	gifts given by, or	vaikka	although; even;
	party thrown for,		for example
	one arriving	vaimo	wife
tulkki	interpreter	vain	only
tunnelma	feeling, mood	vaiva	difficulty
tunte-	to know; feel	vakavasti	seriously
tunteQ	feeling	valitettavasti	unfortunately
tunti	hour; lesson	valitta-	complain
tuntu-	feel (itr), seem	valkoinen	white
tuo-	to bring; import	valmiX	ready; finished
tuoreQ	ripe	valta	power
tutustu-	get to know	valtio	(the) state
tuuli e	wind	vanha	old
tyhjä	empty	vanhemma∣t	parents
tykkäX-	like	vapaa	free
tyttö	girl	varaX-	to book, reserve
työ	work	varma	sure, certain
työttömyys te	unemployment	varmaan	certainly
tähden	for the sake of X	varten	for X (PP)
	(PP)	vasemmalle	to the left
tänään	today	vasta	not until
tärkeä	important	vastaan	against X; opposite
täti	aunt(y)		X (PP)
täysin	completely	vastapäätä	opposite (PP)
täyttä-	to fill, complete	vastaX-	to answer, reply
täyty-	be necessary	vasten	against X (PP)

vastoin	contrary to X	vähän	a little
	(preposition w/P)	väli	interval
vauva	baby	välillä	between X and Y (PP)
veli	brother (sG velje n)	väri	colour
veneQ	boat		
venäjä	Russian (language);	Υ	
	Russia	yhdeksän	nine
veri e	blood (sP ver ta!)	yhdessä	together
vesi te	water	Yhdysvalla∣t	the United States
vie-	to take (away); export	yhteensä	all together
vielä	still, yet	yhtä	(just) as
vieraX	stranger; guest	yhtään	at all
viere∣llä	next to X (PP)	yhä	ever, still; with
viere ssä	next to X (PP)		comparative
vietto	spending, celebrating		'Xer and Xer'
viettä-	spend, celebrate	yksi hte	one
vihannes kse	vegetable	yksitoista	eleven
viihty-	get on, thrive	yleensä	in general
viikko	week	yli	over X (PP)
viiko∣n+loppu	weekend	yliopisto	university
viimeinen	last (= final)	ylittä-	to cross (tr)
viimeksi	for the last time	yllä	over, above X (PP)
viimeQ	last (= most recent)	yläpuolella	above X (PP)
viina	spirits	ymmärtä-	to understand
viini	wine	ympäri	around X (PP)
viipy-	stay, tarry	yrittä-	to attempt, try
viisaX	wise	yskä	cough
viisi te	five	yskä-	to cough
viitsi-	feel like (X-ing:	ystävä 	friend
	X TAQ)	yö	night
viittaX-	refer; beckon	уöру-	to spend the night
viiva	line	Ä	
voi	butter	Ä	
voi-	be able; can	äiti	mother
voitta-	to win	äänekkäX	loud
vuokraX-	to hire, rent	äänestä-	to vote
vuo ksi	for X (PP)	ääni e	voice; sound
vuosi te vuoteQ	year	ääressä	at X (PP)
vuoteQ vähitellen	bed	Ö	
variitelleli	gradually, little by	öljy	oil
	iitiie	Оіју	OII

# **English-Finnish glossary**

Α		art	taiteQ
a little	vähä∣n	as; than	kuin
able, be	voi-, pysty-	as far as, until	asti
about, roughly	noin	ask (for)	pyytä-
according to	X n mukaan	ask (question)	kysy-
address	osoitteQ	at all	yhtään
administration	hallinto	at home	kotona
adult	aikuinen	at least	ainakin
aeroplane	lentokoneQ	at once, right away	heti
again	taas, uudelleen	at X's place (PP)	X n luona
age	ikä	aunt(y)	täti
agree (tr)	sopi-	autumn	syksy
agreement, treaty	sopimus kse		
aid, assistance	apu	В	
air	ilma	baby	vauva
airport	lentokenttä	back	selkä
all, every(one)	kaikki e	back (adv)	takaisin
all kinds of	kaikenlainen	bad	paha
along with	mukana	bag	pussi
already	jo	ball	pallo
also	myös, kans	bank	pankki
alternative	vaihtoehto	banknote	seteli
although	vaikka	bar	baari
altogether	yhteensä	be	ole-
always	aina	be worthwhile	kannatta-
American	amerikkalainen	beautiful	kauniX
amuse	huvitta-	because; when	koska
and	ja	beer	olut (sG oluen)
animal	eläin ime	before	ennen
answer	vastaX-	begin	alka-
anyway	kuitenkin	beginning	alku
approve	hyväksy-	behind	takana
around	ympäri	believe	usko-
arrive	saapu-	bell	kello

belong	kuulu-	child	lapsi e
besides	paitsi	chocolate	suklaa
best	paraX	church	kirkko
better	parempi	city	kaupunki
between	välillä	class	luokka
big	iso	clean	puhtaX
bite	pure-	clear; OK	selvä
black	musta	clock	kello
boat	veneQ	close (intr)	sulkeutu-
book	kirja	cloud	pilvi e
book, reserve	varaX-	coffee	kahvi
both	molemmat	cold	kylmä
bottle	pullo	colour	väri
bottom; North	pohja	come	tule-
box	laatikko	complain	valitta-
boy	poika (sG pojan)	completely	täysin
bread	leipä	continue (tr)	jatka-
breast, chest	rinta	correct	oikea
bring; import	tuo-	country(side)	maa
brother	veli (sG veljen)	cup	kuppi
build	rakenta-		
building	rakennus kse	D	
bunch	kimppu	day	päivä
burn	poltta-	decide	päättä-
but	mutta	demand	vaati-
butter	voi	depend	riippu-
buy	osta-	descend	laske-
		describe	kuvaX-
С		die	kuole-
cake	kakku	different	erilainen
call, phone	soitta-	difficult	vaikea
call; invite	kutsu-	difficulty	vaiva
can	voi-	doctor, GP	lääkäri
capable, be	taita-	does, makes	teke- (inf tehdä)
capital	pääkaupunki	dog	koira
card	kortti	door	ovi e
carry, bear	kanta-	drink	juo-
cause	aiheuttaa-	drinkable	juotava
celebration	juhla	drive	aja-
centre	keskusta	duck	ankka
certainly	varmaan		
change (tr)	muutta-	E	
change, convert	vaihta-	each, every	joka
chat	keskustele-	ear	korva
cheap	halpa	earlier	aikaisemmin
check	tarkasta-	east	itä

easy	helppo	friend	ystävä
eat	syö-	fruit	hedelmä
elsewhere	muualla		
empty	tyhjä	G	
end	loppu, pää	game	peli
end (itr)	päätty-	garden	puutarha
England	englanti	gather	keräX-
English	englanti(lainen)	get, receive	saa-
enough, be	riittä-	get by	pärjäX-
entry	pääsy	get to know	tutustu-
evening	ilta	gift, present	lahja
excuse me	anteeksi	girl	tyttö
expensive	kalliX	give	anta-
		glass	lasi
F		go	mene-
fairly	aika	go (and return)	käy-
fairly, quite	melkein	god, God	jumala
family	perheQ	good	hyvä
far away	kaukana	Goodbye	näkemiin
farewell!	hyvästi	gradually	vähitellen
father	isä	great, large	suuri e
fear	pelkäX-	ground	maa
feel (itr), seem	tuntu-		
f 1 (1)			
feel, sense (tr)	tunte-	Н	
feel, sense (tr) feel like it	tunte- viitsi-	H happen	tapahtu-
			tapahtu- kova
feel like it	viitsi-	happen	•
feel like it feeling, mood	viitsi- tunnelma	happen hard	kova
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for	viitsi- tunnelma hake-	happen hard head	kova pää
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä-	happen hard head health	kova pää terveys te
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva	happen hard head health healthy	kova pää terveys te terveQ
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi	happen hard head health healthy hear	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule-
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj)	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta-
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language)	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj)	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv)	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adi) first (adv) fish	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX-
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA)	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä-
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adi) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX-	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward)	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow food	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX- ruoka	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward) hospital	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin sairaala
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow food foot, leg	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX- ruoka jalka	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward) hospital hot, warm	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin sairaala kuuma
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow food foot, leg for a long time	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX- ruoka jalka kauan	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward) hospital hot, warm hour; lesson	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin sairaala kuuma tunti
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow food foot, leg for a long time for example	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX- ruoka jalka kauan esimerkiksi	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward) hospital hot, warm hour; lesson house; building	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin sairaala kuuma tunti talo
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow food foot, leg for a long time for example for the last time	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX- ruoka jalka kauan esimerkiksi viimeksi	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward) hospital hot, warm hour; lesson house; building how	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin sairaala kuuma tunti talo kuinka
feel like it feeling, mood fetch, apply for find fine, great, lovely Finland Finnish (adj) Finnish (language) first (adj) first (adv) fish flat; apartment flower follow food foot, leg for a long time for example for the last time foreigner	viitsi- tunnelma hake- löytä- kiva Suomi suomalainen suomi ensimmäinen ensin kala asunto kukka seuraX- ruoka jalka kauan esimerkiksi viimeksi ulkomaalainen	happen hard head health healthy hear help, assist Hi; Bye high hill hire, rent hobby, interest hold; like (-stA) home(ward) hospital hot, warm hour; lesson house; building how how	kova pää terveys te terveQ kuule- autta- moi korkea mäki e vuokraX- harrastus kse pitä- kotiin sairaala kuuma tunti talo kuinka miten

harman hadan		Ta m	- * *
human being	ihminen	leg	sääri e
husband	mies (miehe-)	letter (of alphabet)	kirjain ime
		letter (postal)	kirjeQ
1		life	elämä
ice	jää	like	tykkäX-
if 	jos	like, as	niinkuin
ill	sairaX	like that	noin
important	tärkeä	like this, in this way	näin
in general	yleensä	likely, be	taita-
ink	musteQ	line	viiva
inside	sisällä	listen	kuuntele-
inside, to	sisään	little	pikku
instead of X	X∣n sijaan	live, reside	asu-
intend	aiko-	long	pitkä
interest	kiinnosta-	look at	katso-
interesting	mielenkiintoinen	lose	kadotta-
international	kansainvälinen	lots, many	paljo∣n
introduce	esittele-		
invitation	kutsu	M	
		machine	koneQ
J		mail; post	posti
journey, trip	matka	man	mies (miehe-)
just	just, juuri	many	moni e
		map	kartta
K		mark	merkki
knee	polvi e	market	tori, markkinat
know (facts)	tietä-	married	naimisissa
know (person)	tunte-	married woman, Mrs	rouva
know how (to X)	osaX-	matter, affair	asia
		maybe, perhaps	kai, ehkä
L		mean, signify	merkiTSE-
lake	järvi e	mean (to), intend	meinaX-,
land	maa		tarkoitta-
landscape	maisema	means (to an end)	keino
language	kieli e	meat	liha
last	kestä-	meet	tapaX-
last (= final)	viimeinen	mention	mainiTSE-
last (= most recent)	viimeQ	middle	keski e
laugh	naura-	milk	maito
leaf	lehti e	mind	mieli e
learn	opettele-	mine, my	minu n
learn, study	oppi-	mixed up, jumbled	sekaisin
leave (itr)	lähte-	model, pattern	malli
leave behind	jättä-	moment	hetki e, hetkinen
left, on the	vasemmalla	money	raha
left over	jäljellä	month	kuukausi te

moon	kuu	other (of two), the	toinen
more	enemmän	outside	ulkona
more, additional	lisää	over	yli
morning	aamu	own	oma
mother	äiti	OWIT	Oma
mouth	suu	Р	
myself	itseni	package	paketti
mysen	itaeiii	pair, a few	pari
N		paper	paperi
name	nimi e	paper	vanhemmat
nation, people	kansa	part	osa
near	lähellä	passport	passi
nearly	lähes	past X	Xin ohi
necessary, be	täyty-	pasty	piirakka
need; be necessary	tarviTSE-	' '	maksa-
•	ei koskaan	pay; cost	rauha
never	uusi te	peace	henkilö. ihminen
new	lehti e	person	kuva
newspaper	ensi	picture	
next	XIn vieressä	piece	pala
next to X	hauska	place	paikka kasvi
nice, pleasant		plant	
night	yö	plate, dish	lautanen
no	ei	play	soitta-
north(ern)	pohjoinen	pleasant	mukava
notice	huomaX-	poem	runo
now .	nyt	political party	puolueQ
nowadays	nykyään	pollute	säästä-
number	numero	popular	suosittu
_		potato	peruna
0		pour	kaata-
object	esineQ	power	valta
o'clock	kello	prepare, make	laitta-
of course	tietysti	probably	luultavasti
old	vanha	profession, trade	ammatti
on account of	takia	promise	lupaX-
once	kerra n	purpose	tarkoitus kse
one	yksi (yhte-)		
only	vain	Q	
only, sole	ainoa	question	kysymys kse
open	avaX-	quiet, peace	rauha
opposite	vastapäätä	quite	ihan
or	tai	quite; precisely	aivan
or (in questions)	vai		
originally from	X stA kotoisin	R	
other, different	muu	railroad, railway	rautatie
other, separate	eri	rain	sateQ

rain	sata-	snow	lumi e (sP lun ta)
rare	harva	so, therefore	siis
rarely	harvoin	sometime(s)	joskus
read	luke-	sore; ill	kipeä
ready; finished	valmiX	sound	kuulosta-
really, very	oikein	south	etelä
reason	syy	speak	puhu-
recommend	suosittele-	spirits	viina
red	punainen	sport	urheilu
region, area	alueQ	spring	kevät (kevää-)
relatives, kin	suku	stamp	postimerkki
remain, stay behind	jää-	start, get stuck in	rupeX-
remember	muista-	state	valtio
reside, inhabit, live	asu-	station	asema
rest (itr)	lepäX-	stay, not change	pysy-
restaurant	ravintola	stay, tarry	viipy-
ring, sound	soi-	still, yet	vielä
rise	nouse-	stone	kivi e
road	tie	storey	kerros kse
room	huoneQ	story	tarina
room, space	tila	story; matter, affair	juttu
run	juokse-	stranger; guest	vieraX
	(inf juos ta)	street	katu
		student	opiskelija
S		stuff	tavara
salary, wage, pay	palkka	subject (matter)	aineQ
same	sama	succeeds	onnistu-
say	sano-	sufficiently, enough	tarpeeksi
school	koulu	summer	kesä
sea, ocean	meri (sP mer ta)	sun	aurinko
see	näke- (inf näh dä)	supposedly	kuulemma
sell	myy-	sure, certain	varma
send	lähettä-	surely, really	kyllä
seriously	vakavasti	sweet	makea
settle in, fit in	sopeutu-		
ship	laiva	Т	
shop	kauppa	table	pöytä
shore, coast	ranta	take	otta-
show; look, appear	näyttä-	take (away)	vie-
side	puoli e	take care of	hoita-
similar	samanlainen	taste (good)	maistu-
sing	laula-	telephone	puhelin ime
sister	sisko	tell, recount	kerto-
sit	istu-	thank you	kiitos
sleep	nukku-	thanks	kiitti
small, little	pieni e, pikku	that (cj)	että

then (at that time)	silloin	war	sota
then (subsequently)	sitten	war warm	lämmin
think	aiattele-	waiii	(lämpimä-)
think over	mietti-	watch	katso-
think (that )	luule-	water	vesi te
throw	heittä-	way, custom	tapa
ticket	lippu	weak	heikko
time	aika (sG ajan)	weather	sää
time, have enough	ehti-	week	viikko
time, occasion	kerta	weekend	viikonloppu
today	tänään	well	hyvin
together	yhdessä	west	länsi te
tomorrow	huomenna	what?	mikä?
tongue	kieli e	what about ?	entä(s)?
too (much)	liian	what kind of?	millainen?
travel	matkusta-	when	kun
tree, wood	puu	when?	milloin?
true, truly	tosi te	where?	missä?
try	vrittä-	which? (of two)	kumpi?
two	kaksi (kahte-)	white	valkoinen
type, sort, kind	laji	who?	kuka?
1,00,0011,1	,.	whole, entire	koko
U		wife	vaimo
understand	ymmärtä-	win	voitta-
unfortunately	valitettavasti	wind	tuuli e
university	yliopisto	window	ikkuna
until	kunnes	wine	viini
use	käyttä-	winter	talvi e
usual, customary	tavallinen	without	ilman
acaai, caciomai,		wonder, miracle	ihmeQ
V		word	sana
various, different	eri	work	työ
vegetable	vihannes kse	work, function	toimi-
very	kovin	world	maailma
village	kylä	write	kirjoitta-
voice; sound	ääni e		,
,		Υ	
W		yeah	joo
wait for, expect	odotta-	year	vuosi te
want	haluX-	young	nuori e
		, 54119	

# Glossary of grammatical terms

abessive (case)

A case suffix (-ttA) meaning 'without', e.g. mitään sanoma|tta 'without saying anything'; see Unit 15.
A case suffix (-ltA) meaning '(away) from', e.g. kirje isä|ltä 'a letter from father'; see Unit 4.

ablative (case)

accusative

One of the cases which indicate the complete direct object of a sentence. Most words use the genitive suffix -n to mark the accusative, like the se|n of Se jätti se|n kotiin '(S)he left it at home', unless the verb has no explicit subject person, in which case the nominative is used instead: Jätä se kotiin! 'Leave it at home!', Se jätetään kotiin 'One leaves it at home, we/people leave it at home'. The personal pronouns ('me', 'you', etc.) have their own special accusative suffix -t: Se jätti minu|t kotiin '(S)he left me at home', Minu|t jätettiin kotiin 'They left me at home, I got left at home'. See Units 3 and 5.

adessive (case)

A case suffix (-IIA) meaning 'located at/on', e.g. asema|IIa 'at the station'; see Unit 4.

allative (case)

A case suffix (-IIe) meaning 'towards', e.g. asema|IIe 'to the station'; see Unit 4.

comitative (case)

A case suffix (-ne-) meaning 'in the company of', e.g. laps|i|ne|en 'with his/her children'; see Unit 15.

connegative

A verb form built with the suffix -Q, used with a negative verb to form negative statements or commands, e.g. Älä sulje|Q ovea! 'Don't close the door!'; see Unit 2.

consonant compression

The way in which Finnish consonants get 'squeezed' in certain contexts. For example, the long **kk** of **takki** 'jacket' gets squeezed to a short **k** when the genitive -**n** is added, as in **takin hinta** 'the price of the jacket'. The short **k** of **rikas** 'rich' is already compressed (by the **s** at the end of the word); it gets 'de-compressed' when this **s** is absent, as in the plural, **rikkaat** 'the rich'. *Note:* other books about Finnish call this 'consonant gradation'; in Finnish it's **astevaihtelu**.

derivation

Making one word out of another; Finnish does this by adding derivational suffixes, so adding *ellinen* to *ystävä* 'friend', giving *ystävä*=*llinen*, is like adding English '=ly' to 'friend', giving 'friend=ly'. The direct object of a sentence is the part that refers to the thing or person most saliently affected by what's going on, which has something done to it or at which the action is aimed. Examples of English direct objects are 'soup' in 'Edward heated up the soup', 'me' in 'She loves me' and 'bridge' in 'The engineer designed a bridge'. See Unit 5 for the various kinds of direct object which Finnish distinguishes.

direct object

elative (case)

enclitics

A case suffix (-stA) meaning 'out of', e.g. Mä otin lasin kaapi|sta 'I took a glass out of the cupboard', and 'about', e.g. Se puhui hinno|i|sta '(S)he talked about prices'; see Units 1 and 4.

These are little suffix-like elements (written in this book with prefixed double hyphen) which can attach to just about any word in a sentence, depending on what is being added (--kin), subtracted (--kAAn), queried (--kO), or stressed (--pA, --kin). In colloquial Finnish, enclitics often add emotional shadings to a sentence, such as --hAn in Et--hän polta 'You're not going to smoke, are you?' or --kO--hAn in Ei--kö--hän aloiteta 'Let's get started'. The enclitic --kin adds Jussi in the sentence Jussikin on säveltäjä 'Jussi is a composer, too (not just Pirjo)', but adds säveltäjä

'composer' in the sentence **Jussi on säveltäjäkin** 'Jussi is a composer, too (and not just a chartered accountant)'. In the sentence **Jussi onkin säveltäjä**, 'Jussi really *is* a composer' the amazing fact that Jussi actually is a composer is stressed (We thought Jussi might be, and do you know what?...).

essive (case)

A case suffix (-nA) meaning 'being X; (functioning) as; in the form of', e.g. Ulkomaalais|i|na meidän on hankittava viisumi 'As foreigners, we must secure a visa'; see Unit 8.

genitive (case)

A case which indicates the 'possessor', something like the apostrophe-plus 's' of English in 'Peter's friends' or the preposition 'of' in 'the end of the road'. Finnish uses the suffix -n for singular nouns, so we have **Peka**|n ystävät and tie|n loppu for these two phrases; for the genitive plural, see Unit 9. You'll find more on the genitive in Units 1 and 14.

illative (case)

A case suffix which means 'into'. This book uses a shorthand symbol, -#n, to refer to the illative suffix, because it has so many different forms. For example, it is -än in metsä|än 'into the forest', -hun in puu|hun 'into a tree', and -seen in huonee|seen 'into a room'. See Units 4 and 5 for the details.

inessive (case)

A case suffix (-ssA) meaning '(located) inside', e.g. sun huonee|ssa 'in your room'; see Unit 4. These are verb forms which act like nouns. Finnish distinguishes several; they correspond, roughly, to English forms such as 'I like to swim', 'I can swim', and 'I like swimming'; you'll find a list of the various kinds of Finnish infinitive in the index.

infinitives

instructive (case)

modals

A case suffix meaning 'by means of, with', as in om|i|n käs|i|n 'with one's own hands'; see Unit 15. Special verbs which modify the meaning of the main verb in a sentence, introducing elements of possibility, ability, necessity, doubt, and many

nominal

other shades. English examples are 'can', 'may', and 'must', as in 'I can swim' and 'You may be right'. For Finnish modals see Units 3 and 10.

This handy term is used in this book to refer to nouns, adjectives, and numerals, all of which have much in common in Finnish.

nominative (case)

This is the case form of Finnish dictionary entries. Its suffix is zero. Its most common roles are (1) subject of the sentence. like Jussi in Jussi asuu Turussa 'Jussi lives in Turku' or Eeva in Eeva söi hedelmän 'Eve ate the fruit', and (2) complete direct object of an imperative or indefinite verb form, like Jussi in Hae Jussi asemalta! 'Fetch Jussi from the station!'; see Unit 1.

Any group of words centred on a noun; the main noun is called the head noun. Thus 'bottle(s)' is the head noun in the noun phrases 'the bottle', 'a bottle', 'a glass bottle', 'in those green bottles'. In a Finnish noun phrase, adjectives have the same number (singular or plural) and case suffixes as the head noun; so the Finnish equivalent of the last example is no|i|ssa vihre|i|ssä pullo|i|ssa.

participles

These are verb forms that act like adjectives. Finnish distinguishes several; they correspond, very roughly, to English forms such as 'rising' and 'broken' in 'rising prices' and 'broken promises'. You'll find a list of the various kinds of Finnish participle in the index.

An extremely frequent case, used to indicate negation, partialness or incompleteness, or indefinite quantity. Both subjects and objects can stand in the partitive. The partitive of 'water', vet|tä, is used in all the following sentences: Se ei juonut vettä '(S)he didn't drink the/any water' (negation), Se joi vettä '(S)he drank some water' (incomplete amount) or '(S)he was drinking (the) water' (incomplete action), Eteisen lattialla oli vettä 'There was (some) water on the floor of the

noun phrase

partitive case

entranceway' (indefinite quantity). See Units 2 and 5.

postpositions

These are the mirror image of prepositions, i.e. they come *after* the words they go with, not before. Thus where English has 'in front of the church', Finnish has **kirko**|**n** ede|ssä, 'church|s front|in', i.e. 'of-the-church in-front'. See Unit 9 for more examples and discussion.

prolative (case)

A case suffix (-tse) meaning 'by way of; via', as in **puhelim**|i|tse 'by telephone'; see Unit 15.

transitive

and intransitive are verb categories which English is not particularly fussy about, but in Finnish the difference is usually vital. For example, we say that 'The door opened' and that 'Riitta opened the door', using one and the same verb, 'open', but Finnish uses different stems: intransitive avautuin Ovi avautui (no direct object: the door opened of itself, i.e. is the subject) but transitive avaX- in Riitta avasi oven (with transitive subject Riitta and complete direct object ove|n).

translative (case)

A case suffix (-ksi when final, -kse- when followed by a possessive suffix) which indicates a change of state, as in **Vesi muuttui viini|ksi** 'the water turned into wine', or the way in which someone or something is viewed or used, as in **Se Iuuli minut hullu|ksi** '(S)he thought I was a fool'; see Unit 8.

vowel harmony

This phrase refers to the way Finnish vowels have of adjusting to one another in a word. In English we do it with consonant sounds: the 's'-sound at the end of 'dogs' is really more of a 'z' than an 's', in 'harmony' with the 'g'-sound to its immediate left; contrast the 's'-sound at the end of 'cats'. Finnish vowels adjust in a similar way, but they don't have to be in immediate contact to feel the need to harmonize: so, for example, the suffix meaning 'in' is -ssa in Puola|ssa 'in Poland' but -ssä in Sveitsi|ssä 'in Switzerland'. For details see Units 1 and 10.

vowel lengthening (#)

Finnish short vowels become long in many contexts, e.g. \(\begin{align\*} \begin{align\*} \begin{a

abessive (case suffix) 124, 244, 345	colloquial pronunciation 1-6, 112, 126, 144-5, 250
ablative (case suffix) 70-1, 259, 276, 345	comitative (case suffix) 276-7, 345
accusative (case suffix) 345;	commands see imperative
see also direct objects	comparative: of adjectives
adessive (case suffix) 42-3,	150-2; of adverbs 213-14
67-9, 74, 98, 124, 163-4,	compass: points of the 247-8
174, 345	clauses: complement 226-9,
adverbs: comparative of 213-4;	232; relative 208-10, 250-1
superlative of 213-14;	computers 300-4
of intensity 109; of manner	conditional mood 191-3, 194,
108-9; of place 108	231, 247
agreement: within the noun	connegative 40, 145, 345;
phrase 19, 95-6; of verb with	conditional 192; and
subject person and	constituent order 127;
number 11, 28-30, 61	directive 293; indefinite 86;
all 219-20	potential 292; prohibitive 53
allative (case suffix) 71-3, 98,	consonant compression 20-3,
345	29, 31-33, 51, 58-60, 93n,
alternating stems 19-20,	113n, 123n, 136n, 161, 196,
23-25, 31-33	213, 346
animals 256-7	
	dental stems 36, 43, 103, 119,
be 11-12	165
body: parts of the 156-7	derivation 13-14, 103, 131,
	199–200, 345
citation form 18-19, 20, 23-4,	direct objects 34-5, 38, 50, 346;
32-3, 52, 55, 102, 103, 133,	and constituent order 46;
165–6, 191n	of directives 293;

of imperatives 51–3; with modals 194; overview of 93–5; of participles 251 directives 293–4 doctor 154–6

e-stems 23-5
economics 277-9
education 297-8
elative (case suffix) 26, 70-1, 346
emphasizing 127
enclitics 83n, 99n, 127, 177n, 196, 219n, 346
essive (case suffix) 164-5, 347
EU 269-71
every 219-20

family 76-7 foods 142-4, 207-8 foreign words 78n fractions 217-8

genitive (case suffix) 18–9, 347; uses of, overview 266–7 genitive plural 170–1 grammars: other Finnish 5–6 geography 254–5 greetings 8 gut feeling 62

have 42-4 history 290-1 how things seem see perception how you feel see submerged subjects

illative (case suffix) 71-3, 90-1, 347

iME-stems 102-3 imperative 50-52, 94, 145; negative (= prohibitive) 53-4 indefinite verb forms 84-7, 243; connegative 86; past 125; potential 292 indefinite pronouns 219-22, 285 - 7indifferent 286 inessive (case suffix) 67-9, 347 infinitive: first 58-60: second 242-4; third 123-4, 282 - 3instructive (case suffix) 276, 347 intentions 194 interrogative see questions intransitive subject 38

**KKAX**-stems 165–6 **KsE**-stems 103–4

I-cases 74 languages 39, 188-90 local cases 74-5

modals (= modal auxiliaries) 60-1, 194, 347 money 128-31 motion: verbs of 262-3 **mUKsE**-stems 103-4 music 238-40

nalle 191n nationalities 9, 12–13 necessity 246–7 negative verb 40–1 NeN-stems 20

no, not 40-1 plural: genitive 170-1; nominals 18, 348 nominative 88-9; other cases nominative (case form) 15, 18, of 89-91 348; plural 88-9 politeness 11 non-alternating stems 18-19 politics 214-15, 269-71 noun phrase 21, 348 possession 18-19, 42-4. nouns from verbs 199-200 195 - 8numerals: cardinal 41-2, 131-2; possessive suffixes 195-8 ordinal 216-7 postpositions 179-84, 349 potential mood 292-3 occupations 13-14 preferences 30-1 OKsE-stems 103-4 prepositions 179-84 order: constituent 46-7, 127; present tense 28-30 word 19 privative see without ordering: at a bar 78-9; prohibition 53-4, 61-2 in a restaurant 233-5 prolative (case suffix) 277, other 275 349 pronouns: demonstrative participial constructions 226-9, 106-7; interrogative 285-6; personal 10-11, 43, 52, 55, 299-300 participle: past active 119, 85, 94-5, 196-8; 138-40, 192-3, 227-8, 300; relative 208-10; zero subject past passive 135-7, 231-2, (generic) 87 300; present active 250-1, proverbs 249-50, 252-3 299; present passive 246-7, purpose 231 300 participles: as adjectives Q-stems 33 299-300; overview of questions: content 46-7, 54-6; 109-10, 250-1, 348 yes/no 16-18, 46-7 partitive (case suffix) 35-8, 348; plural 91-3 reciprocals 169n passport control 80-1 reflexives see self religion 188-90 past tense 115-18; requests 50 negative 119 perceptions 259-60 s-cases 74 perfect tense 137-40 permission 194, 267 sauna 168-70, 177-9, 184-5 personal suffixes 195-8 seasons 186-8 pitä- 261-2 self 275

sequence of events 231–2
sightseeing 240–1
simultaneity 242–3
slang 5
sisu 288–9
social security 283–5
some 221–2; see also indefinite pronouns
sport 158–60, 258–9
subject: intransitive 38;
submerged 260–1, 272
suggestions 85
superlative: of adjectives
160–4; of adverbs 213–14

taxi 141–2 **TE**-stems 24–5
telephone 97–102
'tight lid' 20–1
time expressions 172–6
trains 64–7
transitive (and intransitive) 349

translative (case suffix) 154, 349 Turku 272-4

**UKsE**-stems 103-4 uncertainty see potential mood universal 286 **(U)UTE**-stems 165-6

vagueness 260–1 verb classes 58–59 verbal noun 54, 200 verbs from nouns 199–200 vocabulary building 199–200 vowel harmony 16–17, 204, 349 vowel lengthening (#) 29, 350

without 132-4 writers 280-1

X-stems 31-3

yes 8-9, 17-18